

**A GRAMMAR AND DICTIONARY
OF THE GUDE LANGUAGE**

DISSERTATION

**Presented in Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements for
the Degree Doctor of Philosophy in the Graduate
School of The Ohio State University**

By

James Taylor Hoskison, B.A., M.A., M.S.

The Ohio State University

1983

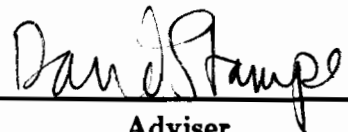
Reading committee:

David L. Stampe, Chairman

Catherine A. Callaghan

Arnold M. Zwicky

Approved By



Adviser

Department of Linguistics

Copyright by
James Taylor Hoskison
1983

To Peter Landerman,
whose enthusiasm for linguistics was contagious.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This study is based on five years of field work done in Nigeria between 1970 and 1976. During that time, my wife Nancy and I were working under a cooperative agreement between the Institute of Linguistics (a branch of the Summer Institute of Linguistics, Inc.) and Amadu Bello University. I wish to thank both of these institutions for making this field work possible.

It was our privilege to live during these years in Lamurde village near Mubi, in what is now Gongola State, Nigeria (formerly Northern Saradauna Province, North-Eastern State). We greatly appreciate the warm hospitality of the the Mubi Local Authority and of the Gude people.

In collecting and checking Gude language materials, I have benefited greatly from the help of Mr. David Dahiru Shala, my principal secretary and language teacher. I wish to acknowledge my gratitude to him and to the other men who have patiently tried to teach me their language: Amos Jali Njairi, Halilu Nyada, Mohammed Ahmadu Mashi, and Yusufu Alhaji Nwanwi.

At various times, members of the Summer Institute of Linguistics assisted me in the analysis of Gude phonology and syntax. I wish to especially thank Katy Barnwell, Joseph Grimes, and Roger Mohrlang.

I am indebted to Richard Rhodes for many of the insights into Gude phonology which are included in chapter I and in my previous M.A. thesis *Notes on the Phonology of Gude* (Hoskison 1975).

Examination of my bibliography will reveal the names of some of the many Chadic linguists who have influenced the style and content of my work. I am grateful for a brief but stimulating correspondence with Russell Schuh.

This study also benefited from the use of a concordance of Gude texts which was made by computer at the University of Oklahoma under NSF grant GS-1605.

I wish to thank OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc. for tuition assistance and for use of their word processing equipment. This dissertation has been printed on a Canon LBP-10 IMAGEN laser printer using the T_EX typesetting system.

I also wish to thank my OSU instructors for their generous assistance in the analysis of Gude and in the preparation of this grammar and dictionary, especially David Stampe, Ilse Lehiste, Catherine Callaghan, and Arnold Zwicky. Needless to say, any errors or oversights in these pages are my own responsibility.

Finally, I must acknowledge my wife Nancy, who has assisted more than anyone else in the creation of this grammar and dictionary.

VITA

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| May 23, 1945 | Born – Richmond, California |
| 1968 | B.A., Southern California College, Costa Mesa, California |
| 1970–1976 | Linguistic researcher and translator, the Institute of Linguistics, Nigeria |
| 1975 | M.A., The Ohio State University, Columbus, Ohio |
| 1976–1978 | Teaching Associate, Department of Linguistics, The Ohio State University, Columbus, Ohio |
| 1980 | M.S., The Ohio State University, Columbus, Ohio |
| 1979–Present | Systems Analyst, OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc., Dublin, Ohio |

PUBLICATIONS

- Hoskison, James T. 1974. 'Prosodies and verb stems in Gude'. *Linguistics* 141: 17–26.
- Hoskison, James T. 1975. 'Focus and topic in Gude'. *Proceedings of the Sixth Conference on African Linguistics. OSU Working Papers in Linguistics* 20: 227–233.
- Hoskison, James T. (forthcoming) 'Ideophones in Gude'. *Proceedings of the 12th West African Languages Congress (1976)*. Ife, Nigeria: University of Ife.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | |
|---------------------------|------|
| ACKNOWLEDGMENTS | iii |
| VITA | v |
| LIST OF TABLES | xii |
| LIST OF FIGURES | xiii |
| ABBREVIATIONS | xiv |
| KEY TO SIGNS | xvi |
| INTRODUCTION | 1 |

PART I

A GRAMMAR OF THE GUDE LANGUAGE

| | |
|---|----|
| Chapter 1. Phonology | 9 |
| 1.1 Consonants | 9 |
| 1.1.1 Plain consonants | 9 |
| 1.1.2 Labiovelarized consonants | 11 |
| 1.1.3 Palatalized consonants | 12 |
| 1.2 Vowels | 14 |
| 1.3 Tone | 17 |
| 1.4 The standard orthography | 17 |
| Chapter 2. Nouns and noun phrases | 22 |
| 2.1 Common nouns | 22 |
| 2.1.1 Basic nouns | 22 |
| 2.1.2 Derived nouns | 25 |

| | | |
|------------|---|----|
| 2.1.2.1 | Abstract nouns | 25 |
| 2.1.2.2 | Agentive and instrumental nouns | 27 |
| 2.1.2.3 | Compound nouns | 30 |
| 2.2 | Noun inflections | 34 |
| 2.2.1 | Plurality | 34 |
| 2.2.1.1 | Regular plurals | 34 |
| 2.2.1.2 | Irregular plurals | 35 |
| 2.2.2 | Possessive pronominal suffixes | 39 |
| 2.2.2.1 | Non-inherent possession | 39 |
| 2.2.2.2 | Inherent possession | 41 |
| 2.2.2.3 | Independent possessive pronominals | 44 |
| 2.2.3 | Demonstratives | 45 |
| 2.2.3.1 | Demonstrative suffixes | 45 |
| 2.2.3.2 | Independent demonstrative pronominals | 47 |
| 2.2.4 | Definiteness | 47 |
| 2.3 | Pronouns | 48 |
| 2.4 | Proper names | 49 |
| 2.5 | Numbers and quantifiers | 50 |
| 2.6 | Attributive adjectives | 53 |
| 2.6.1 | Simple adjectives | 53 |
| 2.6.2 | Participles | 55 |
| 2.6.3 | Adjectival nouns | 56 |
| 2.7 | Relative clauses | 57 |
| 2.8 | Modifying prepositional phrases | 63 |
| 2.9 | Conjoined noun phrases | 65 |
| Chapter 3. | Non-verbal sentences | 68 |
| 3.1 | The subject marker <i>nə</i> | 68 |
| 3.2 | Predicate nominals | 69 |

| | | |
|------------|---|----|
| 3.3 | Equational (identification) predicates | 69 |
| 3.4 | Predicate adjectives | 70 |
| 3.5 | Predicate quantifiers | 70 |
| 3.6 | Associative predicates | 70 |
| 3.7 | Existential sentences | 71 |
| 3.8 | Implicit existentials | 72 |
| 3.9 | Comparative predicates | 73 |
| 3.10 | Predicate locatives | 74 |
| 3.10.1 | Simple locative prepositions | 75 |
| 3.10.2 | Compound locative prepositions with a | 77 |
| 3.10.3 | Locative adverbs | 78 |
| 3.11 | Other non-verbal predicates | 78 |
| 3.12 | Negation in non-verbal sentences | 80 |
| 3.13 | Transforming non-verbal sentences into verbal sentences | 81 |
| Chapter 4. | Verbs and the verbal system | 82 |
| 4.1 | Aspect | 82 |
| 4.1.1 | Completive aspect | 82 |
| 4.1.2 | Continuous aspect | 85 |
| 4.1.3 | Potential aspect | 85 |
| 4.1.4 | Aspect in focus constructions | 86 |
| 4.2 | Neutral aspect (lack of aspect) | 88 |
| 4.2.1 | Sequential use of neutral aspect | 88 |
| 4.2.2 | Subjunctive use of neutral aspect | 89 |
| 4.3 | Habitual (past-continuous) | 89 |
| 4.4 | Negation | 90 |
| 4.4.1 | Simple negation | 90 |
| 4.4.2 | Alternative completive negation | 91 |

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| 4.4.3 | Negative of refusal | 91 |
| 4.5 | Imperatives | 91 |
| 4.6 | Hortatives | 93 |
| 4.7 | Verbal extensions | 94 |
| 4.7.1 | Iterative action | 96 |
| 4.7.2 | Motion to speaker | 97 |
| 4.7.3 | Combination of iterative action and motion to speaker | 98 |
| 4.7.4 | Locative extensions | 99 |
| 4.7.4.1 | -gərə 'motion down or in' | 99 |
| 4.7.4.2 | -gi 'motion up or out' | 99 |
| 4.7.4.3 | -və 'motion to a specific place' | 99 |
| 4.7.5 | -tə 'cause to happen' | 100 |
| 4.7.6 | -gi 'do completely' | 101 |
| 4.7.7 | -paa 'do completely (?)' | 101 |
| 4.7.8 | -shi 'do to each other' | 102 |
| 4.7.9 | -cii 'do a little' | 102 |
| 4.7.10 | (VV)-nə 'pause and do' | 103 |
| 4.7.11 | -ma '(take away) by theft' | 103 |
| 4.7.12 | -ee '(?)' | 103 |
| 4.9 | Other types of verbal derivation | 104 |
| Chapter 5. | Verbal sentences | 106 |
| 5.1 | Subjects | 106 |
| 5.1.1 | Conjoined subject postposing | 107 |
| 5.1.2 | Afterthought subjects | 108 |
| 5.1.3 | Omitted subjects | 108 |
| 5.2 | Direct objects | 108 |
| 5.3 | Indirect objects (and benefactives) | 109 |

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| 5.3.1 | Order of D.O. and I.O. | 109 |
| 5.3.2 | I.O. pronouns | 110 |
| 5.4 | Locative phrases | 111 |
| 5.5 | Instrumental phrases | 112 |
| 5.6 | Instrumental marking of the direct object | 112 |
| 5.7 | Reflexives | 112 |
| 5.8 | Sentence complements | 114 |
| 5.9 | 'da + VERBAL NOUN' constructions | 114 |
| Chapter 6. | Focus, questions, and topic | 116 |
| 6.1 | Focus constructions | 116 |
| 6.1.1 | Type-I focus constructions | 116 |
| 6.1.2 | Type-II focus constructions | 120 |
| 6.1.3 | Negation in focus constructions | 121 |
| 6.2 | Questions | 121 |
| 6.2.1 | Yes/no questions | 121 |
| 6.2.2 | Alternative questions | 124 |
| 6.2.3 | Word questions | 124 |
| 6.3 | Topics | 127 |
| Chapter 7. | Adverbs and adverbial phrases | 129 |
| 7.1 | Conditionals | 129 |
| 7.2 | Purpose | 131 |
| 7.3 | Temporal adverbs | 131 |
| 7.4 | Reason | 133 |
| APPENDIX A. | Sample Gude texts | 135 |
| APPENDIX B. | Body parts | 142 |
| APPENDIX C. | Kinship terms | 144 |
| APPENDIX D. | Inherently possessed nouns | 146 |

PART II
A DICTIONARY OF THE GUDE LANGUAGE

| | |
|--|-----|
| Introduction to the dictionary | 149 |
| DICTIONARY | 151 |
| BIBLIOGRAPHY | 299 |

LIST OF TABLES

| | | |
|----------|---|----|
| Table 1. | Plain (simple) consonants | 10 |
| Table 2. | Labiovelarized consonants | 11 |
| Table 3. | Palatalized consonants | 13 |
| Table 4. | Vowels | 14 |
| Table 5. | Short vowel phones | 15 |
| Table 6. | Possible extension combinations | 95 |

LIST OF FIGURES

| | |
|---|---|
| Figure 1. Map of the Gude language area | 4 |
| Figure 2. The position of Gude in the Afro-Asiatic family | 5 |

ABBREVIATIONS

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| abst. | abstract |
| adj. | adjective, adjectival |
| adj. id. | adjectival ideophone |
| adj. n. | adjectival noun |
| adv. | adverb |
| comp. | compound |
| conj. | conjunction |
| D.O. | direct object |
| esp. | especially |
| excl. | exclusive |
| ext. | extension |
| f. | feminine |
| F. | Fulani (Fula) |
| gr. form. | grammatical formative |
| H. | Hausa |
| id. | ideophone |
| I.O. | indirect object |
| incl. | inclusive |
| inher. | inherent |
| intr. | intransitive |
| IPA | International Phonetic Alphabet |
| irr. | irregular |
| iter. | iterative extension |
| kin. | kinship |
| lit. | literally |
| m. | masculine |
| n. | noun |
| NP | noun phrase |
| obl. | obligatory |
| opt. | optional |
| pers. | person |
| pl. | plural |
| poss. | possessive, possession |
| prep. | preposition |
| pron. | pronoun |

| | |
|-------|-------------------|
| reg. | regular |
| sing. | singular |
| subj. | subject |
| tr. | transitive |
| usu. | usually |
| v.i. | verb intransitive |
| vn. | verbal noun |
| v.t. | verb transitive |

KEY TO SIGNS

| | |
|----------|--|
| = | is the same as |
| < | comes from |
| → | changes into |
| -ə, (-ə) | indicates that the preceding word ends with an underlying high vowel |
| / / | used to enclose citations in phonemic transcription |
| [] | used to enclose citations in phonetic transcription |

INTRODUCTION

Scope of the present study

Gude is a previously undescribed Chadic language spoken in Nigeria and Cameroun. This dissertation consists of a short reference grammar of Gude and a Gude-English dictionary.

The grammar is essentially a synchronic one. The syntactic description is intended to capture the structure and organization of modern Gude. Nevertheless, the detailed information presented here should be of value to those who are engaged in comparative Chadic studies and to those studying linguistic universals.

The grammar is organized as a reference tool rather than as a pedagogical grammar. It is not meant to be read from start to finish, but rather in a "top down" fashion. Chapters and sections are organized by topic with some earlier sections necessarily presupposing material from later sections. I recommend that the reader first read the introduction, table of contents, chapter 1 (phónology), and the introduction to the dictionary before probing into those chapters which seem most interesting. *The reader will find section 1.4 on the standard orthography a prerequisite to understanding most of the examples, and therefore should not proceed without carefully reading that section.* Numerous cross-references have been given to reduce redundancy and to clarify obscure passages.

I am convinced that a good reference grammar should be accessible to as wide a variety of people as possible and not just to those who have mastered the arcane notation of some current theoretical school. For that reason, I have tried to present the syntactic structure of Gude in a clear and theoretically neutral way. If I have succeeded, the reader should have no trouble translating the rules and generalizations presented here into the format of his favorite theoretical model, and—unlike some contemporary works—this grammar should be just as readable 200 years from now as I trust it is today.

Typologically, Gude differs from most Chadic languages in being a VSO language—i.e., verbs and other predicates normally occur first in the sentence. Gude phonology has a number of unusual aspects. Among them are a linear vowel system which can be characterized by just two features—height and length—and a consonant system with palatalized, labiovelarized, and plain subsets. The vocalic

features of palatalization and labiovelarization which in most languages associate with vowels phonemically associate with consonants in Gude.

Example sentences in the grammar and entries in the Gude-English dictionary are given in a modified version of the standard Gude orthography. One should read the explanation of this orthography in section 1.4 carefully.

General information

The Gude language is spoken in Northern Nigeria by people living in and near the Mandara mountains to the south and east of Mubi in Gongola State (formerly this area was part of Northern Saradauna Province, North-Eastern State). The language is also spoken by people living in contiguous parts of Mokolo and Guider Provinces in the United Republic of Cameroun. Geographically, the Gude-speaking area forms a square 18 miles to a side with Mubi town at the north-west corner. See the map in Figure 1.

The number of speakers is difficult to determine. Reasonable estimates vary from 40,000 to 80,000 speakers. Approximately three quarters of the Gude speakers live in Nigeria.

In Nigeria, their villages include Cikərə (Njairi), Mərənyi, Dazələ (Dazal), Jidānga, Bajila, Gi'ima, Nwuvi (Lamurde), Muhudə (Muda), Mugurəvə, Ayuwa, Bula-deega, Bajaule, Kagə'i, Manəgya, Nagavahi, Madipi, Kaburə, Gərəgi, Jamtari, Kakyaba, Gyala (Gella), Gyadəkwarə, Kwadza (Koja), Dəvu (Duvu), Tsaba (Caba), Mugyara (Mujara), Tsahudə (Sahuda), Dərəbīsə (Dirbishi), Gandira, Madəguva, Faarə Nwuvi, Uudirə (Wadili), Mbələmə, Nwanwula, Moonəva, Tantila, Yawa, Ngwaba, Madanya, Gudēe, Tsaranyi, Tabəzee, Kəda, Tseema, Dəgələ, Yaaza, Soobore, Dəgələ (Digil).

In Cameroun, their villages include Bukəla (Boukoula), Mabizhi, Buutəzə, Gwalazə, Dzahurə, Ndəguzhi, Njerandi, Gərəviiza (Girviza), Muun (Mouna), and others.

In addition, many Gude speakers live in Mubi, Burha, and Doumo, although these are not to be considered "Gude" towns. A large settlement of Gude speakers has also grown recently at Little Gombi some 50 miles west of Mubi.

The neighboring languages are Kilba and South Margi to the west, the Fali languages to the north (for discussion of this language cluster, see below), Daba to the east, Fali of Dourbey to the south-east, and Nzangi to the south.

The name Gude [gudēe], seems to be of rather recent use. C.K. Meek (1931) used the name Cheke in his description of the Gudes. That name however is no longer known or used in the area. Some of the older men say they used to refer to themselves as mapu'inə (a plural form, the singular is mapufa). This older name has been almost completely replaced by the newer name Gude. Until recently there

was little sense of tribal identity and group loyalties did not extend beyond the local village. Growing tribal identity now seems to associate itself with the use of the term Gude. Gude is also the term used officially by the Nigerian Government (Goudé in Cameroun).

Classification

Gude has been classified as a Chadic language by Greenberg (1963), Hoffmann (1971) and Newman (1972, 1977). A synthesis of Hoffmann's and Newman's classifications is presented in Figure 2.

Gude is most closely related to the Fali languages spoken to the north of the Gude area—but not to Fali of Kiria, Fali of Mijilu or Fali of Gili which are Higi-Kapsiki dialects, and not to Fali of Dourbey in Cameroun which is an Adamawa Eastern language. The name *Fali* is a pejorative term first used by the Fulani conquerors to mean "hill savage." The Fali languages related to Gude are Fali of Vimtim (Uva) (= C.K. Meek's Fali of Mubi), Fali of Muchella (Dzara), Fali of Bahuli (Huli), Fali of Bagira (Bwagira), Fali of Burha, and Fali of Jilbu (Jilvu). (The exact situation is hard to determine since the Fali area is mountainous and most villages are relatively inaccessible.) C. Kraft (1981) gives wordlists for Fali of Kiria, Fali of Gili, Fali of Jilbu, Fali of Muchella, and Fali of Bwagira. Gude itself is a single dialect which one might wish to group together with some of these Fali languages—treating them as dialects of a larger language.

In spite of the fact that Gude is essentially a single dialect, there is some minor variation from village to village and particularly between the lower (or western) variety spoken in Lamurde and on the plain and the upper (or eastern) variety spoken in the mountains. Throughout the grammar and dictionary it has been useful to characterize these differences as "dialect" differences, but the reader should bear in mind that overall these differences are not great. This study is based on the speech of Lamurde (Nwuvi) village, the village where I lived for five and a half years and the home village of most of my language teachers.

Figure 1. Map of the Gude language area

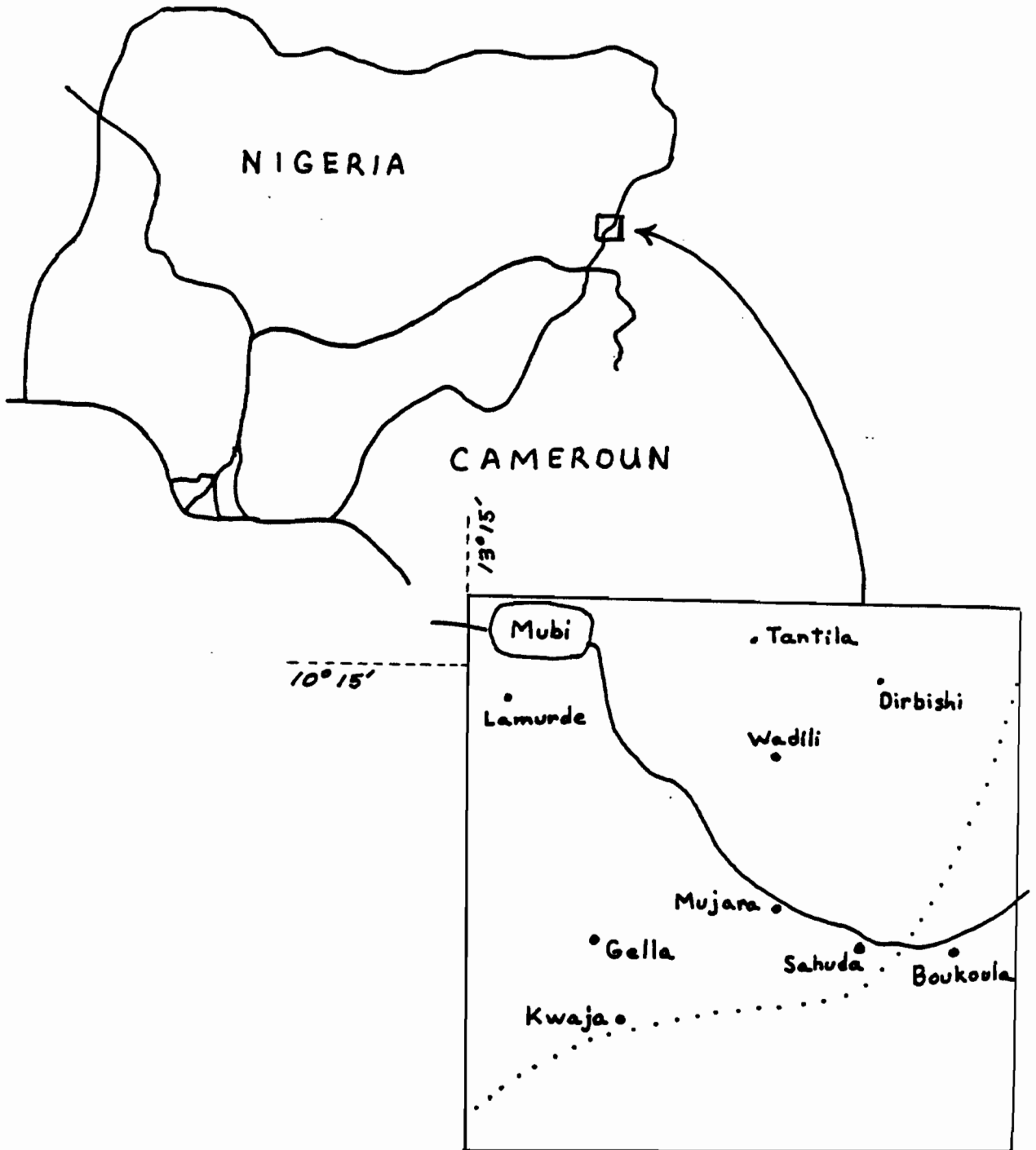
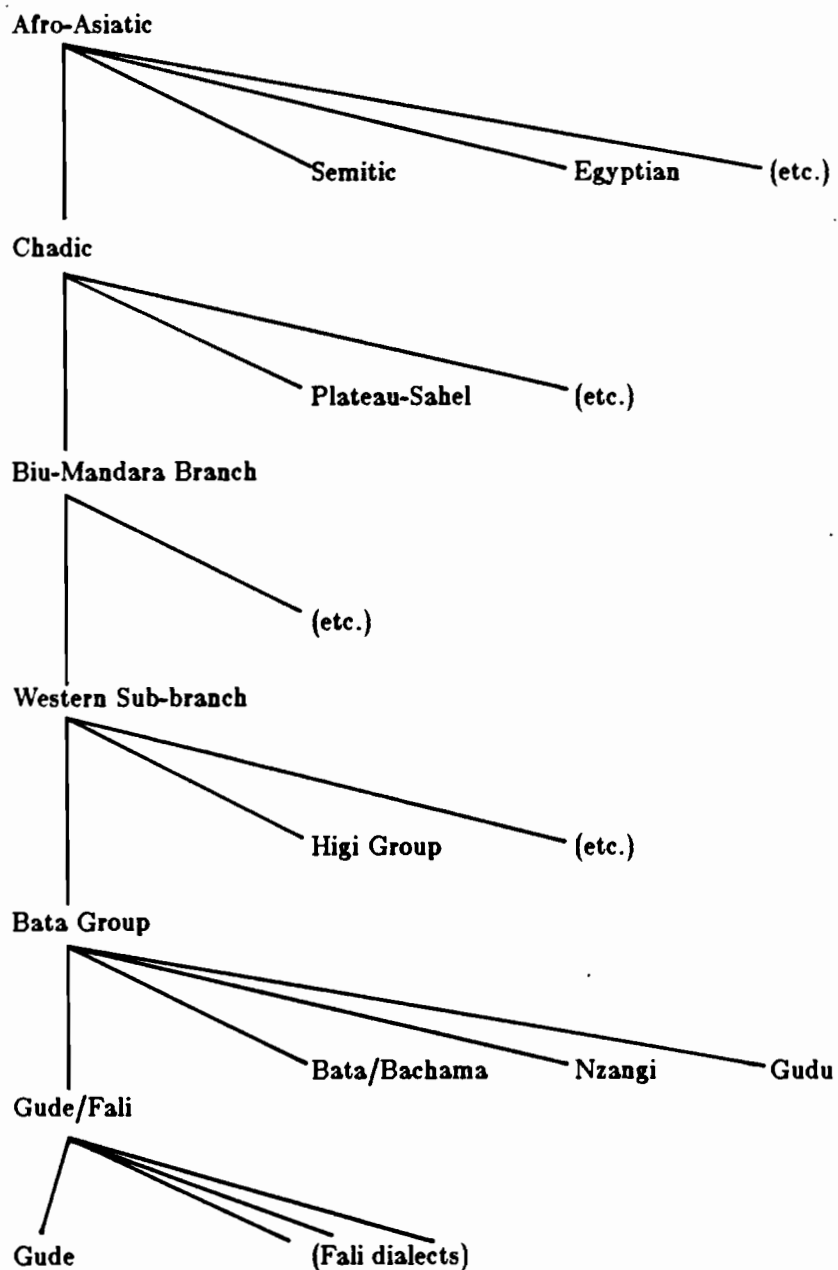


Figure 2. The position of Gude in the Afro-Asiatic family



History of the people

In about 1823, the Gude area was conquered in the Fulani Jihad and was ruled as a part of the Empire of Adamawa. (For an interesting account of Adamawa history, see Kirk-Greene 1958.) Prior to the conquest, most of the Gudes were organized under three kingdoms: Nwuvi (Lamurde) and Gella in the west, and Burha in the East. Conflicting traditions trace their origins to the north-east and to the west. Oral history would suggest that the Gudes have been living in their present location for at least 300 years and probably longer. Lamurde proudly preserves a list of 26 chiefs going back to their founder, Kanara, and Gella similarly has a list of 22 chiefs.

Under the colonial era, the Gude language area was ruled by the Germans from 1884 to 1915 and by the French from 1915 to 1920. In 1922, it was divided between the French and the English by League of Nations mandate. With Nigerian independence in 1960, the English portion of the area became part of Nigeria. The French portion became part of Cameroun when Cameroun received independence also in 1960.

Since the Fulani conquest, Fulani (Fula) has been an important trade language of the area. At present, all Gude men and most women are fluent in Fulani. Fulani is still used heavily in the market and in local government offices. There are a great many ethnic Fulanis in Mubi town, and Fulani enjoys the status of a holy language among Gudes that have converted to Islam. The Gude men boast that their Fulani is so good that when they visit Garuwa (a major Fulani speaking city in Cameroun), they can pass for ethnic Fulanis. The Fulani language and culture have had a great influence upon the Gudes to the extent that Fulani words have replaced many common Gude words. In Northern Cameroun, Fulani is still the major trade language and the language used in the Christian churches.

With the coming of English colonial administration, Hausa has become the major language of commerce and local administration. In Northern Nigeria, Hausa is the language used in the Christian churches and Bible schools. English is the official language of education beginning in the primary schools while Hausa has a large unofficial role. (In Cameroun, French is the language of education.) Gude is very much alive in this multilingual situation, but as one can well understand it is absorbing heavily both vocabulary and syntactic influence from the languages around it. Many of the Nigerian young men are making a permanent shift to Hausa language and culture.

Previous studies

Three word lists of Gude have been published: (1) that of Friedrich Strümpell (1922)—under the name 'Mubi'—(2) that of C.K. Meek (1931)—under the name 'Cheke'—and (3) that of C. Kraft (1981). C.K. Meek (1931) also gives a short ethnographic sketch which is amazingly accurate considering his short stay in the area.

H. Rosser (1979) gives an interesting account of traditional marriage and childbirth customs.

Publications in Gude consist of the following:

Anonymous. 1970. *Wanyana nga Gude (Gude Songbook)*. Kaélé, Cameroun: Église Fraternelle Luthérienne. (mimeo.)

Shala, [Dawuda] David S. 1972. *Ma shi uusha dii (Gude Folktales)*. Zaria, Nigeria: Institute of Linguistics. (mimeo.)

Shala, David S. (ed.). 1973. *Dareewalə nga Ma shi uusha dii (Gude Folktales)*. Mubi, Nigeria: Gude Literature Committee. (mimeo.)

Anonymous. 1974. *Dzəgunuu Janganə (Learn to Read in Gude)*, 3 books with teachers notes. Jos, Nigeria: Institute of Linguistics. (This series was the work of David S. Shala, Nancy L. Hoskison, and myself).

Anonymous. 1974. *Lingiila dacji Markus (The Gospel of Mark in Gude)*. Jos, Nigeria: Scriptures Unlimited and Wycliffe Bible Translators. (This translation was the work of David. S. Shala and myself).

As for linguistic studies, the first to come to my attention is a short paper by Carl Hoffmann, entitled 'Some Aspects of Palatalization in Mapuda' (Hoffmann 1972). The only other Gude linguistic studies that I am aware of are my own, 'Prosodies and Verb Stems in Gude' (Hoskison 1974), 'Focus and Topic in Gude' (Hoskison 1975a), 'Notes on the Phonology of Gude' (Hoskison 1975b), and 'Ideophones in Gude' (Hoskison, forthcoming).

PART I
A GRAMMAR OF THE GUDE LANGUAGE

Chapter 1. Phonology

Gude phonology has a number of unusual aspects. Among them are a linear vowel system which can be characterized by just two features—height and length—and a consonant system with palatalized, labiovelarized, and plain subsets. The vocalic features of palatalization and labiovelarization which in most languages associate with vowels phonemically associate with consonants in Gude. The analysis of Gude phonology presented in this chapter is a brief summary of that presented in Hoskison (1975). See that paper for more details, examples, and argumentation.

1.1 Consonants

The consonants of Gude may be conveniently divided into three sets: a set of plain (simple) consonants, a set of labiovelarized consonants, and a set of palatalized consonants. Palatalization rules which change plain consonants into palatalized consonants play an important role in the formation of plurals (see section 2.2.1), in marking verb stems for completive aspect (see section 4.1.1), and in the formation of the motion to speaker verbal extension (see section 4.7.2).

Most of these consonants also have phonetically geminate (long) variants, but consonant length in Gude is not phonemic. Phonetically long consonant “allophones” occur automatically—and only—after short vowels. (See the *Note on consonant length* in section 1.4.)

1.1.1 Plain consonants

The plain consonants are summarized in Table 1.

Note that the glottalic consonants /b/ and /d/ are voiced pre-glottalized stops which are phonetically the same as sounds occurring in other Chadic languages—such as Hausa. The consonant /ʔ/ is a glottal stop. The consonant /t/ is a voiceless lateral fricative. The voiced lateral fricative does not occur in Gude.

Table 1. Plain (simple) consonants

| | Bilabial | Labiodental | Alveolar | Veolar | Glottal |
|-------------------------|----------|-------------|----------|--------|---------|
| Stop, vl. | p | | t | k | |
| Stop, vd. | b | | d | g | |
| Stop, gl. | ɸ | | ʈ | | ʔ |
| Affricate, vl. | | | ts | | |
| Affricate, vd. | | | dz | | |
| Fricative, vl. | | f | s | x | |
| Fricative, vd. | | v | z | ɣ | |
| Nasal | m | | n | ŋ | |
| Lateral fricative (vl.) | | | ɬ | | |
| Lateral resonant | | | l | | |
| Tap | | | ɾ | | |

1.1.2 Labiovelarized consonants

In Gude, labiovelarization—simultaneous lip rounding and raising of the tongue back toward the velum—occurs as a secondary articulation with many consonants and as the primary articulation in the semi-vowel /w/. The labiovelarized consonants are summarized in Table 2, where a raised “^w” following a consonant symbolizes superimposed lip rounding and velarization. Labiovelarized alveolar (coronal) consonants rarely occur—although instances of /t^w/ and /d^w/ are found in a number of words, most of which are ideophonic. The labiovelarized voiced velar fricative does not occur.

Table 2. Labiovelarized consonants

| | Bilabial | Labiodental | Alveolar | Veolar | Glottal |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Stop, vl. | p ^w | | (t ^w) | k ^w | |
| Stop, vd. | b ^w | | (d ^w) | g ^w | |
| Stop, gl. | ʔ ^w | | | | ʔ ^w |
| Fricative, vl. | | f ^w | | x ^w | |
| Fricative, vd. | | v ^w | | | |
| Nasal | m ^w | | | ŋ ^w | |
| Semi-vowel | w | | | | |

1.1.3 Palatalized consonants

In Gude, palatalization—raising of the tongue body toward the hard palate—occurs as a secondary articulation with many consonants and as the primary articulation in the semi-vowel /y/.

The palatalized consonants are summarized in Table 3, where a raised “*y*” following a consonant symbolizes the feature of palatalization.

With labial consonants and glottal stop, palatalization is realized as simultaneous raising of the tongue body toward the hard palate.

With velar consonants, palatalization is realized as a change in point of articulation from velar to palatal. The palatalized voiced velar fricative does not occur.

With coronal affricates and fricatives, palatalization is realized by a change from the alveolar to the palato-alveolar point of articulation—/ts^y/ [tʃ], /dz^y/ [dʒ], /s^y/ [ʃ], /z^y/ [ʒ].

Laterals change to the palatal point of articulation, and the tap /r/ becomes a sequence of tap plus non-syllabic high front vowel [ry].

Palatalization rules which change plain consonants into palatalized consonants play an important role in the formation of plurals (see section 2.2.1), in marking verb stems for completive aspect (see section 4.1.1), and in the formation of the motion to speaker verbal extension (see section 4.7.2). It is interesting to note that when the plain consonants /t/, /d/, /d̥/, and /n/ are changed into palatalized consonants by these morphophonemic rules, the palatalization may be realized as a secondary articulation—resulting in the palatalized stops /t^y/, /d^y/, /d̥^y/, and /n^y/—but more usually the palatalization is accompanied by an additional optional shift to palatal (or glottal in the case of d̥) point of articulation—resulting in the palatalized stops /k^y/, /g^y/, /ʔ^y/ and /ŋ^y/ respectively.

Examples:

| verb root | | motion to speaker ext.(see section 4.7.2) | |
|-----------|--------------|---|-----------------------------|
| /ta/ | <i>burst</i> | /t ^y a/ or /k ^y a/ | <i>burst toward speaker</i> |
| /da/ | <i>cook</i> | /d ^y a/ or /g ^y a/ | <i>cook and come</i> |
| /d̥a/ | <i>do</i> | /d̥ ^y a/ or /ʔ ^y / | <i>do and come</i> |
| /na/ | <i>fill</i> | /n ^y a/ or /ŋ ^y / | <i>fill and come</i> |

Table 3. Palatalized consonants

| | Bilabial | Labiodental | Alveolar | Palatoalveolar | Palatal | Glottal |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Stop, vl. | p ^y | | t ^y | | k ^y | |
| Stop, vd. | b ^y | | d ^y | | g ^y | |
| stop, gl. | ɸ ^y | | ɖ ^y | | | ʔ ^y |
| Affricate, vl. | | | | ts ^y | | |
| Affricate, vd. | | | | dz ^y | | |
| Fricative, vl. | | f ^y | | s ^y | x ^y | |
| Fricative, vd. | | v ^y | | z ^y | | |
| Nasal | m ^y | | n ^y | | ɲ ^y | |
| Lateral fricative (vl.) | | | | | ɬ ^y | |
| Lateral resonant | | | | | ɮ ^y | |
| Tap | | | r ^y | | | |
| Semi-vowel | | | | | y | |

1.2 Vowels

The four vowels of Gude may be completely characterized by the features of height and length. The vowels are summarized in Table 4.

Table 4. Vowels

| | -LONG | +LONG |
|-------|-------|-------|
| +HIGH | ə | ə: |
| -HIGH | a | a: |

The high vs. non-high (low) contrast divides the upper one-third of the vowel space from the lower two-thirds.

As has become traditional in Chadic linguistic studies, the symbol “ə” is being used throughout this grammar and dictionary to represent the high central vowel. In a notation patterned after the conventions of the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), one would expect this high central vowel to be symbolized by “ɨ”.

Phonetic description of short vowels

In a narrow phonetic description of Gude short vowels, we find that a complete continuum of vowel timbre qualities (colors) occurs ranging from front unrounded to back rounded. The color of vowels is predictable, however. Short vowels tend to be labiovelarized—back and round—contiguous to labiovelarized consonants, palatalized—front and unrounded—contiguous to palatalized consonants, and central and unrounded elsewhere.

There is some free variation in that vowels in a palatalized or labiovelarized environment vary in successive pronunciations from normally colored to occasionally colorless.

When both preceding and following consonants are of the same coloring, the vowel usually receives a greater degree of color than if only one contiguous consonant is colored—i.e., vowels are higher, tenser, and more peripheral in this environment.

When the preceding and following consonants are of different coloring, the two influences (processes) tend to cancel one another. In such cases, the high short vowel may vary in successive pronunciations from being of the preceding color to being colorless to being of the following color. In this same environment, the low short vowel neutralizes to a colorless phone. Table 5 displays the phonetically short vowel phones as conditioned by environment.

This situation, which is paralleled in certain Caucasian languages, cf. Trubetzkoy (1969) and Miller (1978), may be summarized by saying that vowels are basically colorless but assimilate the coloring of contiguous consonants. See Hoskinson (1975) for more details, examples, and supporting argumentation.

Table 5. Short vowel phones

| | uncolored | with one contiguous palatalized consonant | with two contiguous palatalized consonants |
|----------------------|-----------|---|--|
| high short vowel | ɨ | ɪ | ɨ |
| non-high short vowel | ʌ | ɛ | e |
| | uncolored | with one contiguous labiovelarized consonant | with two contiguous labiovelarized consonants |
| high short vowel | ɨ | ʊ | u |
| non-high short vowel | ʌ | ɔ | ɔʷ |

Phonetic description of long vowels

When not contiguous to colored (palatalized or labiovelarized) consonants, long vowels are more peripheral and less variable than corresponding short vowels. The non-high (low) long vowel /a:/ tends to resist color assimilation. The high long vowel /ə:/ completely resists regressive color assimilation, but progressive color assimilation is obligatory and results in the tense phones, which are invariable:

$$\begin{array}{l} /C^wə:/ \rightarrow [C^wu:] \\ /C^yə:/ \rightarrow [C^yi:] \end{array}$$

Phonetic diphthongs

Certain instances of phonetic long vowels and of phonetic diphthongs arise from an underlying sequence of two syllables. These relationships are summarized as follows (where C represents any consonant):

$$\begin{array}{l} /Cəwə/ \rightarrow [Cu:] \\ /Cəyə/ \rightarrow [Ci:] \\ /Cawə/ \rightarrow [Cou] \\ /Cayə/ \rightarrow [Cei] \end{array}$$

See Hoskison (1975) for supporting argumentation.

Vowels before pause

Before pause, the non-high short vowel /a/ becomes long /a:/. As a result, non-high short vowels do not occur before pause.

Examples:

| before pause | elsewhere | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| /ba:/ | /ba/ | <i>leaf</i> |
| /dag ^w a:/ | /dag ^w a/ | <i>young man</i> |
| /g ^w əva:/ | /g ^w əva/ | <i>friend</i> |

Before pause, the high short vowel /ə/ deletes. This deletion results in phonetically closed syllables—i.e., final consonants—before pause.

Examples:

| before pause | elsewhere | |
|--------------|------------|---------|
| /mʲən/ | /mʲənə/ | woman |
| /dʲəz/ | /dʲəzə/ | red |
| /zab/ | /zabə/ | useless |
| /laŋəlaŋ/ | /laŋəlaŋə/ | loud |

(Some nouns, namely those free class nouns marked with “-ə” in the dictionary, regularly change the final vowel of the stem to /a:/ rather than delete it. See the section 2.1 for discussion of such nouns.)

1.3 Tone

There are two lexical tones in Gude: level high tone, and level low tone. These tones on the syllable serve to distinguish vocabulary items, but do not serve to distinguish the grammatical categories of the language. Tone sandhi phenomena have not been sufficiently investigated, and hence are not discussed in this grammar. Tone marking occurs on most main entries in the dictionary, but is only rarely indicated in the grammar. High tone is indicated by acute accent “ ´ ” and low tone is indicated by grave accent “ ` ”.

Examples:

| | | |
|---------|---------|--------------------------|
| /àyèwá/ | ayuwa | grasshopper |
| /áyéwà/ | ayuwa | name of a town |
| /sʲèwá/ | shiwa | stirring stick |
| /sʲéwà/ | shiwa | come (imperative sing.) |
| /bá'à/ | ba'a | and |
| /bà'á/ | ba'a | back |
| /tá:tà/ | lhaalha | cattle egret |
| /tá:tá/ | lhaalha | prickly fuzz (on plants) |

1.4 The standard orthography

At a meeting of prominent Gude community leaders in February of 1972, a standard orthography was agreed upon for all publications and literacy instruction in the language. The orthographic conventions were chosen in an attempt to please Gude speakers who were already literate in one or more of the following languages:

Hausa, Fulani (Fula), English, and French. Most examples in the following chapters are presented in a modified version of this standard orthography.

As with any set of arbitrary conventions, this orthography is not “perfect”, in that any reviewer will undoubtedly find something he wishes were done differently.

Consonants

The plain consonants are written as follows:

| | | | | | |
|-----|---|------|----|------|--------------------|
| /p/ | p | /ts/ | ts | /m/ | m |
| /t/ | t | /dz/ | dz | /n/ | n |
| /k/ | k | /f/ | f | /ŋ/ | n (before k, g, h) |
| /b/ | b | /s/ | s | | ŋ (elsewhere) |
| /d/ | d | /x/ | h | /t̥/ | lh |
| /g/ | g | /v/ | v | /l/ | l |
| /ɓ/ | ɓ | /z/ | z | /r/ | r |
| /ɗ/ | ɗ | /ɣ/ | gh | | |
| /ʔ/ | ʔ | | | | |

Note that in the standard orthography, both /ŋ/ and /ŋg/ are written as ‘ng.’ The orthography used in this grammar and the accompanying dictionary differs from the standard orthography in spelling /ŋ/ as ‘ŋ’ when not followed by a homorganic consonant.

Labiovelarized consonants are indicated by writing a following high vowel as ‘u’ and by writing ‘w’ before a following low vowel.

Examples:

| | | |
|------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------|
| /k ^w əla/ | kula | <i>fall</i> |
| /k ^w ə:la/ | kuula | <i>fall repeatedly</i> |
| /k ^w alaka/ | kwalaka | <i>small calabash</i> |
| /k ^w a:la/ | kwaala | <i>fall repeatedly toward speaker</i> |

The labiovelarized consonant /ŋ^w/ is written ‘nw.’

Examples:

| | | |
|--------------------|-----|---------------|
| /ŋ ^w ə/ | nwu | <i>answer</i> |
| /ŋ ^w a/ | nwa | <i>hip</i> |

Palatalized consonants are indicated by writing a following high vowel as ‘i’ and by writing ‘y’ before a following low vowel.

Examples:

| | | |
|-----------|---------|-------------------------|
| /kʲəla/ | kila | <i>forked pole</i> |
| /bʲə:bʲə/ | biiBi | <i>break repeatedly</i> |
| /kʲaka/ | kyaka | <i>roof frame</i> |
| /pʲa:paʼ/ | pyaapaʼ | <i>tied well</i> |

Four palatalized consonants have special spellings:

| | | |
|-------|------|----|
| /tsʲ/ | [tʃ] | c |
| /dzʲ/ | [dʒ] | j |
| /sʲ/ | [ʃ] | sh |
| /zʲ/ | [ʒ] | zh |

By convention, 'y' is not written after the palatalized consonants 'c, j, sh, zh.'

Examples:

| phonemic | phonetic | orthographic | |
|------------|----------|--------------|-------------------|
| /tsʲatsʲa/ | [tʃatʃa] | caca | <i>indigo dye</i> |
| /dzʲəma/ | [dʒima] | jima | <i>come down</i> |
| /sʲə/ | [ʃi] | shi | <i>come</i> |
| /zʲatana/ | [ʒanata] | zhatana | <i>salt</i> |

The palatalized consonant /ŋʲ/ is written 'ny.'

Examples:

| | | |
|-------|-----|----------------------|
| /ŋʲə/ | nyi | <i>I</i> |
| /ŋʲa/ | nya | <i>fill and come</i> |

Vowels

The short high vowel /ə/ is written as 'i' after palatalized consonants, as 'u' after labiovelarized consonants and as 'ə' elsewhere. After colored consonants, transition glides /w/ and /y/ are not written before high vowels since the color of the consonant is indicated by the spelling of the vowel. Transition glides are written, however, before low vowels where they do serve to indicate the color of the consonants. (Exception: /y/ is not written after 'sh, zh, c, j.')

Vowel length is indicated by doubling the vowel symbol (V = short vowel, VV = long vowel).

Examples:

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------|
| /tsə:ra/ | tsəəra | hoe |
| /ḃ ^w ə:ḃu/ | ḃuḃu | fill mouth repeatedly |
| /p ^y ə:p ^y ə/ | piipi | breathe repeatedly |
| /fa:ra/ | faara | stone |
| /k ^w a:ra/ | kwaara | donkey |
| /ḃ ^y a:ḃ ^y a/ | ḃyaabya | break repeatedly and come |

However, by convention, vowel length is not indicated in the final syllable of nouns when the noun falls at the end of the sentence or before a pause where the alternation /a/ → /a:/ is an automatic process.

The phonetic diphthongs are written as follows (where C represents any consonant):

| | |
|--------|-----|
| /Cəwə/ | Cuu |
| /Cəyə/ | Cii |
| /Cawə/ | Coo |
| /Cayə/ | Cee |

Examples:

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------|-------------|
| /nəwə/ | nuu | follow |
| /səyə/ | sii | proliferate |
| /ts ^y awəna/ | coona | elephant |
| /nayə/ | nee | see |

Word final high vowels in Gude are not pronounced when the word falls at the end of a sentence or before a pause. (Some nouns, namely those free class nouns marked with “-ə” in the dictionary, regularly change the final vowel of the stem to /a:/ rather than delete it. See the section 2.1 for discussion of such nouns.)

By arbitrary convention, word final high vowels are always written even though the vowel is not pronounced when the word falls at the end of a sentence or before a pause. Thus, the spelling of many words is constant when in fact the pronunciation alternates in context. *I emphasize that this is an arbitrary spelling convention and does not necessarily reflect a misunderstanding of Gude phonology.*

Tone

The standard orthography does not indicate tone. In general, tone is not marked on examples in the grammar. Tone is marked, however, on main entries in the dictionary. Acute accent “ˊ” marks level high tone, and grave accent “ˋ” marks level low tone.

Note on consonant length

Consonant length in Gude is not phonemic in the classical sense. In other words, nowhere in native vocabulary does a difference in consonant length lead to a difference in meaning or syntactic function. In native vocabulary, phonetic geminate (long) consonants occur automatically—and only—after short vowels. This phonetic gemination is strongest in short, two-syllable words such as /əda/ [ədda:] 'dog,' but is much less pronounced as the number of syllables in the word increases. For this reason, the standard orthography does not write double consonants in native vocabulary.

Nearly all Gude speakers are also fluent in Fulani and/or Hausa. In these languages consonant length is contrastive. When borrowed words from these languages are used in Gude sentences—as they commonly are—it appears that many speakers retain the length contrasts of the source language. Educated Gude speakers who are fluent in the orthography of Fulani or Hausa often wish to spell Gude words with geminate consonants. These efforts usually end in inconsistency, disagreement, and frustration. Such difficulties would be expected given the non-contrastive—subphonemic, automatic—nature of consonant gemination in modern Gude.

Chapter 2. Nouns and noun phrases

This chapter contains a description of noun morphology and a survey of noun phrase syntax. In Gude, nouns are inflected for plurality, possessive pronominals, demonstratives, and definiteness. Relative clauses follow the head noun, as do associative phrases, prepositional phrases and numbers. Adjectival modifiers precede or follow the head noun depending on type. See the table of contents for an overview of the chapter.

2.1 Common nouns

Common nouns in Gude are either basic (monomorphemic) or derived (polymorphemic). Basic nouns are subclassified with respect to inflectional morphology (see section 2.1.1) and derived nouns with respect to formation (see section 2.1.2). Nominal inflectional morphology is discussed fully in section 2.2.

Lack of grammatical gender

Unlike the case in other Chadic languages, such as Hausa, there are no grammatical gender or concord distinctions in Gude. Semantic gender, however, is distinguished in the pronouns. The 3rd pers. f. sing. pronoun *ki* (possessive *-tə*) 'she' is used to refer to individuals—human or animal—which are of feminine sex, and the 3rd pers. m. sing. pronoun *ci* (possessive *-kii*) 'he/it' is used to refer to anything not of inherent feminine sex. Pronouns are discussed in section 2.3.

2.1.1 Basic nouns

All common nouns, basic and derived, belong to one of two arbitrary morphological form classes which I have chosen to label *free* stems and *captive* stems. (I hope that in the following pages these labels may be a little easier to remember than labels like "class I" and "class II.") Which form class a common noun belongs to determines how the word is pronounced in different contexts and what stem changes occur when suffixes—plurality, possessives, demonstratives, or definiteness—are added.

'Free' class nouns

Free class nouns do not occur with the special marker *-nə* which is suffixed to nouns of the captive class (see the discussion of captive class nouns below).

In underlying form, all free class nouns end in a short vowel—either /ə/ or /a/. However, when the free class noun is followed by a pause—as it is when cited in isolation—this final vowel is usually replaced by the long low vowel /a:/. In other contexts, the surface form of the final vowel is the same as the underlying form.

Examples:

| (1) | citation form (used before pause) | non-citation form (used elsewhere) | |
|-----|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|
| | <i>zəma</i> /zəma:/ | <i>zəmə</i> /zəmə/ | <i>food</i> |
| | <i>nwanwa</i> /nwanwa:/ | <i>nwanwu</i> /nwanwu/ | <i>chief</i> |
| | <i>ya</i> /ya:/ | <i>yi</i> /yi/ | <i>compound</i> |
| | <i>kuzəna</i> /kwəzəna:/ | <i>kuzənə</i> /kwəzənə/ | <i>grass</i> |
| | <i>bwada</i> /bwada:/ | <i>bwada</i> /bwada/ | <i>strongman</i> |
| | <i>ba</i> /ba:/ | <i>ba</i> /ba/ | <i>leaf</i> |

In the dictionary that accompanies this grammar, the main entries for free class nouns appear in citation form—i.e., all end with /a/. The fact that a given noun has a final high vowel in its underlying or non-citation form is indicated by *-ə* or *(-ə)* following the main entry. This same convention is used in various places throughout the grammar also.

By arbitrary convention, the standard orthography does not indicate length on final vowels such as those occurring in free class citation forms. Thus, the word meaning 'food,' pronounced [zəma:], is spelled *zəma*, not *zəmaa*.

There are a few irregular free class nouns which drop an underlying final short /ə/ before pause rather than replace it with a long /a:/. Many of these nouns are names for species of plants and animals.

Examples:

| | | |
|-----|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| (2) | <i>ciiciitə</i> | <i>type of bird</i> |
| | <i>kutərə</i> | <i>baby dog</i> |
| | <i>mədəmpiku</i> | <i>hedgehog</i> |
| | <i>mbəkəmbəkə</i> | <i>type of bird, saddle-bill</i> |
| | <i>maləmə</i> | <i>type of insect</i> |
| | <i>takujigwadaaku</i> | <i>type of bird</i> |
| | <i>taruletə</i> | <i>snail, snail shell</i> |
| | <i>uugə</i> | <i>foreign village</i> |
| | <i>wanjələbeetə</i> | <i>type of mythical animal</i> |

'Captive' class nouns

Captive class nouns, unlike free class nouns, occur in most contexts with a special semantically empty suffix *-nə*. The final vowel of this suffix is deleted before pause, rather than being replaced by /a:/ as in the case of final vowels of free class nouns. The entire suffix is deleted (does not occur) before suffixes indicating plurality, demonstratives and definiteness. It is retained, however, before possessive suffixes except where the noun is one of the inherently possessed nouns. This suffix is also deleted from inherently possessed nouns when they follow a preposition and are unmodified. (See section 2.2.2 for a discussion of inherent possession.)

Examples:

| | | | | |
|-----|----------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| (3) | <i>kumə-nə</i> | <i>feast</i> | <i>kuməə-ta</i> | <i>that feast</i> |
| | <i>mi-nə</i> | <i>woman</i> | <i>mii-ta</i> | <i>that woman</i> |
| | <i>gu-nə</i> | <i>fire</i> | <i>guu-ta</i> | <i>that fire</i> |
| | <i>tša-nə</i> | <i>fence</i> | <i>tšaa-ta</i> | <i>that fence</i> |
| | <i>'wa-nə</i> | <i>milk</i> | <i>'waa-ta</i> | <i>that milk</i> |

Note that in the examples in this section the captive class suffix is being set off by a hyphen for the purpose of illustration. In other sections, this morpheme break will not be indicated unless it is important to the topic at hand. In the dictionary accompanying this grammar, this morpheme break is not indicated in the main entry. Hence, any noun ending in the sequence ...*nə* is a captive class noun unless otherwise stated.

An appealing explanation for the existence and distribution of this special suffix is to consider it to be an instance of what J. Greenberg (1977) has called a "stage II article"—i.e., an affix that is in historical transition from being a definite article (at an earlier time) to being a noun-class marker. (I am indebted to Russell Schuh, personal communication, for this observation.) The complementary distribution of this suffix with the demonstrative and definite suffixes is a very strong argument in favor of this hypothesis. The interesting question yet to be answered is how the present captive class nouns of Gude came to be selected (since the syntactic class in modern Gude does not correspond to any obvious semantic class). Note that in Fali of Vintim—a closely related language—there is a similar captive class which does not correspond exactly to that of Gude—some cognate nouns belong and some do not. A similar situation exists in Fali of Bahuli. In Fali of Bwagira (see C. Kraft 1981), all nouns appear to belong to the captive class—i.e., all nouns occur with the suffix [-n].

2.1.2 Derived nouns

2.1.2.1 Abstract nouns

Abstract derived nouns in Gude may be formed by the use of a derivational suffix *-nə*. The resulting nouns belong to the captive class, and this suffix is indistinguishable from the captive class suffix *-nə*.

Nouns from verbs

Verbs may be nominalized by suffixing *-nə* to a simple verb root or to an extended verb stem. (See section 4.7 for discussion of verbal extension suffixes.)

Examples:

| (4) verb stem | | verbal noun | |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <i>dzə</i> | <i>go</i> | <i>dzə-nə</i> | <i>going</i> |
| <i>shi</i> | <i>come</i> | <i>shi-nə</i> | <i>coming</i> |
| <i>dəgə</i> | <i>hit</i> | <i>dəgə-nə</i> | <i>hitting</i> |
| <i>səba</i> | <i>drive</i> | <i>səba-nə</i> | <i>driving</i> |
| | | | |
| <i>dzə-gərə</i> | <i>go down</i> | <i>dzə-gərə-nə</i> | <i>going down</i> |
| <i>shi-gi</i> | <i>come out</i> | <i>shi-gi-nə</i> | <i>coming out</i> |
| <i>dəgə-paa</i> | <i>beat up</i> | <i>dəgə-paa-nə</i> | <i>beating up</i> |
| <i>shiba</i> | <i>drive here</i> | <i>shiba-nə</i> | <i>driving here</i> |
| <i>shaaba</i> | <i>drive here</i> | <i>shaaba-nə</i> | <i>driving here</i> |
| | <i>repeatedly</i> | | <i>repeatedly</i> |

Certain of these verbal nouns formed from unextended roots have a unique citation form. For these verbal nouns, the nominalizing suffix changes to *-ná* /ná:/ (with high tone) when the noun is spoken in isolation or before pause. In this citation form, the tone pattern on the root also changes to low tone on all syllables of the root save for the high tone on the suffix.

Examples:

| (5) verb root | | noun in citation form (with tone pattern) |
|---------------|-------------|--|
| <i>və</i> | <i>give</i> | <i>və-ná</i> |
| <i>la</i> | <i>cut</i> | <i>là-ná</i> |
| <i>lhənə</i> | <i>work</i> | <i>lhənə-ná</i> |
| <i>əbu</i> | <i>boil</i> | <i>əbù-ná</i> |
| <i>tsa'a</i> | <i>hang</i> | <i>tsà'à-ná</i> |

The following few deverbal nouns (without nominalizing suffixes) occur in addition to the usual verbal nouns. Note their meanings which are also distinct from those of the corresponding verbal nouns.

| | | | | |
|-----|------------|--------------|-------------|---------------------|
| (6) | lhəna (-ə) | <i>work</i> | cf. lhənəna | <i>working</i> |
| | pawa (-ə) | <i>birth</i> | cf. pawuna | <i>giving birth</i> |
| | zəma (-ə) | <i>food</i> | cf. zəmənə | <i>eating</i> |

Nouns from adjectives

Adjectives may be nominalized by suffixing *-nə* to the adjective.

Examples:

| | | | | |
|-----|-----------|---------------|----------|----------------------|
| (7) | adjective | | noun | |
| | dizə | <i>red</i> | dizə-nə | <i>redness</i> |
| | bwəŋə | <i>wide</i> | bwəŋə-nə | <i>wideness</i> |
| | zhirə | <i>steep</i> | zhirə-nə | <i>steepness</i> |
| | ndalə | <i>strong</i> | ndalə-nə | <i>strength</i> |
| | iza'u | <i>hot</i> | iza'u-nə | <i>hotness, heat</i> |

Nouns from nouns

Abstract nouns may be formed from common nouns of the free class by suffixing *-nə* to the root (underlying form) and by lengthening the final vowel of that root.

Examples:

| | | | |
|-----|-------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| (8) | root noun | | abstract noun |
| | gawa (-ə) | <i>elder sibling</i> | gawuunə <i>seniority</i> |
| | nwanwa (-ə) | <i>chief</i> | nwanwuunə <i>chieftaincy</i> |
| | dagwa | <i>young man</i> | dagwaanə <i>youth</i> |
| | mətooya | <i>sorcerer</i> | mətooyaanə <i>sorcery</i> |

All of the examples found so far involve nouns of the free class. Apparently, the only way to nominalize a captive class noun, such as *minə* 'woman,' is by embedding it in a nominalized verb phrase, such as *ndzaanə ka minə* 'being a woman (= womanhood).'

2.1.2.2 Agentive and instrumental nouns

The prefix *ma-*

A great many nouns are formed by attaching the prefix *ma-* to a verb or a verb phrase. Although hundreds of these nouns exist, this prefix does not appear to be productive in modern Gude. Most of these nouns are “agentive”, in that the prefix derives a noun which means ‘one who (does)...’

Examples:

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| (9) <i>ma-gəra</i> | <i>shepherd</i> <i>(one who waits)</i> |
| <i>ma-həra (-ə)</i> | <i>thief</i> <i>(one who steals)</i> |
| <i>ma-jiraka (-ə)</i> | <i>liar</i> <i>(one who lies)</i> |
| <i>ma-sa-mbala (-ə)</i> | <i>drunkard</i> <i>(one who drinks beer)</i> |
| <i>ma-zəmə-ya (-ə)</i> | <i>heir</i> <i>(one who eats the house)</i> |
| <i>ma-aagha</i> | <i>poor person</i> <i>(one who lacks)</i> |
| <i>ma-burə-ənfwa (-ə)</i> | <i>type of bird (woodpecker?)</i> <i>(one who strikes tree)</i> |
| <i>ma-gəla</i> | <i>marksman, skilled bowman</i> <i>(one who aims)</i> |
| <i>ma-hə'wa (-ə)</i> | <i>person who likes to make people laugh</i> <i>(one who jests)</i> |
| <i>ma-lhə'wa</i> | <i>person who is unwilling to share</i> <i>with others</i> |
| <i>ma-nyadā (-ə)</i> | <i>lazy person</i> <i>(one who is lazy)</i> |

ma-tələ-gə'u-də-na (-ə) *type of fish*
(*one who drills hole with head*)

However, an examination of the dictionary reveals many of these words that are not agentive. Some are instrumental, in that they name tools used to perform actions. Others denote people or things that are more abstractly characterized by the action or quality of the root word.

Examples:

- (10) ma-əja (-ə) *instrument for making scars or scratches*
(*thing which makes marks*)
- ma-luu-ma'inə *container to catch rainwater from roof*
(*thing which receives water*)
- ma-'alhə'alha (-ə) *pimple, swelling*
(*< aalhə swell*)
- ma-ləgəḏa (-ə) *ground roasted tigernuts*
(*< ləgəḏa grind*)
- ma-ngərəkikinə *person who has unpleasant personality*
(*< ngərəkiki (become) bitter*)

Some other words which appear to be agentive nouns may actually be frozen terms which consist of a head noun modified by a (completive) participle. Modifying participles also occur with a prefix ma-. (See the discussion of participle formation in section 2.6.2.)

Examples:

- (11) ma-burə-na (-ə) *headache*
(*< burə strike, na head*)
- ma-ədə-na (-ə) *retarded person*
(*< əḏə grind, na head*)
- ma-dza-ənja (-ə) *crowd of people*
(*< dza gather, ənja people*)
- ma-fəḏə-na (-ə) *turban*
(*< fəḏə wrap, na head*)
- ma-əntə-faara *soft or crumbly rock*
(*< əntə die, faara rock*)

A few of the nouns formed by the prefix *mə-* are agentive in character.

- (14) *mə-zəmaka* (-ə) *hunter*
 (< *zəmaka* *hunt*)
- mə-za* *bungler, useless person*
 (< *za* *lose, make mistake*)
- mə-ədərə* (-ə) *lame person, cripple*
 (< *ədərə* *be lame*)

Often it is difficult to identify with certainty nouns formed from the prefixes *ma-* and *mə-* since the root forms from which they are derived may no longer be used in modern Gude. The symbol “†” is used in the dictionary to indicate some of these nouns. Many of the words which are not marked by “†” may well belong to this set also.

2.1.2.3 Compound nouns

Some complex noun phrases behave as if they were simple lexical items. These “compound nouns” may be indentified by the fact that the various nominal suffixes—plurality, possessives, demonstratives, and definiteness (these topics are discussed in later sections of this chapter)—attach themselves to the end of the complex phrase rather than attaching to the head noun where one would expect.

Examples:

- (15) *sə-nga-sa-də-uushi'ina*
 thing-of-drink-with-things *cup*
- sə-nga-sa-də-uushi'ii-ta*
 [thing-of-drink-with-things]-that *that cup*
- guva-manjeevina*
 friend-children *monkey*
- guva-manjeevi-nyina*
 [friend-children]-plural *monkeys*
- kuvə'u-tə-bwaya*
 skin-of-leopard *leopard skin*
- kuvə'u-tə-bwayaa-kii*
 [skin-of-leopard]-his *his leopard skin*

Most of the compound nouns found so far have the overt structure of a head noun followed by a modifying associative phrase. (See sections 2.8 and 3.6 for discussion of associative phrases.) The associative phrase consists of one or more words connected to the head noun by the morphemes *nga* 'of,' or *tə* 'of (?),' or by nothing at all.

Examples with *nga*:

| | | |
|------|-----------------------|--|
| (16) | <i>dzanə-nga-vəna</i> | |
| | pounding-of-rain | <i>thunder</i> |
| | <i>ha-nga-baana</i> | |
| | place-of-sleeping | <i>bed</i> |
| | <i>pawu-nga-ənfwa</i> | |
| | offspring-of-tree | <i>fruit</i> |
| | <i>sə-nga-ha'unə</i> | |
| | thing-of-laughing | <i>joke</i> |
| | <i>sə-nga-aadənə</i> | |
| | thing-of-eating | <i>soft food (see aadə in dict.)</i> |
| | <i>sə-nga-tsəbənə</i> | |
| | thing-of-eating | <i>hard food (see tsəbə in dict.)</i> |
| | <i>shoota-nga-ya</i> | |
| | slide-of-compound | <i>person who forgets easily</i> <i>(lit. home of slipping)</i> |

Note that the unusual morpheme *sə-* 'thing' occurs only in such compounds and in the following forms:

| | | | |
|------|---------------|------|---|
| (17) | <i>səna</i> | (-ə) | <i>this thing</i> |
| | <i>sətsa</i> | (-ə) | <i>that (close) thing</i> |
| | <i>səta</i> | (-ə) | <i>that (far) thing</i> |
| | <i>səkii</i> | | <i>the thing</i> |
| | <i>sə-ndə</i> | | <i>that (which)... (relative clause introducer)</i> |

The morpheme *tə* used in compounds resembles the homophonous demonstrative *-tə* (see section 2.2.3), but differs from it in that the *tə* used in compound nouns never lengthens the final vowel of captive nouns as the demonstrative does. Hence, from *uuzənə* 'child' we get *uuzə-tə-minə* 'female child,' not **uuzəə-tə-minə*. (Compare *uuzəə-tə* 'that child.')

Semantically the *tə* used in compounds encodes an

associative relationship—i.e., ‘of’—rather than a demonstrative. Historically however, it may have its origin in the demonstrative. Note that the *-tə* used to introduce relative clauses (see section 2.7) often has the non-demonstrative meaning ‘*that (which)*.’

Examples with *tə*:

| | | |
|------|---|---|
| (18) | <i>əmpu-tə-kəbənə</i> soft stuff-of-cotton | <i>cotton fiber</i> |
| | <i>əmpu-tə-ma</i> soft stuff-of-mouth | <i>lip(s)</i> |
| | <i>ənya-tə-saŋa</i> peanut-of-original | <i>bambara groundnut</i> |
| | <i>ɖafə-tə-kəra</i> mush-of-calabash | <i>buttocks (lit. calabash-shaped lump of mush)</i> |
| | <i>harəbə-tə-gəəra</i> dove-of-river | <i>type of dove</i> |
| | <i>jji-tə-ida</i> grandchild-of-knee | <i>youngest grandchild</i> |
| | <i>kəbə-tə-səka</i> cloth-of-stomach | <i>gift taken to berived family</i> |
| | <i>kwalhipi-tə-ginə</i> hull-of-eye | <i>eyelid</i> |
| | <i>mi-tə-livyara</i> woman-of-lion | <i>lioness</i> |
| | <i>pawu-tə-dagwaanə</i> offspring-of-handsomness | <i>male child</i> |
| | <i>pawu-tə-rəmaanə</i> offspring-of-beauty | <i>female child</i> |
| | <i>uuzə-tə-nwuvi</i> child-of-Lamura | <i>native of Lamurde village</i> |

A great many compound nouns are formed by the simple juxtaposition of a head noun with a modifying word or phrase. Often the modifying word or phrase

stands in an associative relationship to the head noun just as in those compounds which are formed with an overt nga or tə. In other cases the relationship is more abstract or idiomatic.

Examples:

- (19) əbu-ləganə
bottle gourd-planting *gourd used for carrying seeds*
- əndə-shinkinə
person-hair *human being (i.e., spirits are hairless)*
- avə-liminə
arrow-ear *barbed arrow*
- ayiwa-madəfəne
grasshopper-hunger *type of grasshopper (brings famine)*
- baa'wata
leaf-bean *bean leaf*
- cii-wa
hand-death *cramp in hand*
- dəhə-uudə
thorn-white *type of thorn tree*
- dələ-ka-nwa
beads-for-hips *beads worn around waist*
- guva-ya
friend-compound *neighbor*
- guva-ləma
friend-name *person with same name as one's own*
- ngila-kunwa
knife-calabash *type of knife used cut calabash*
- shaarə-də-uugə
hawk-from-far-country *type of hawk*
- uushi-a-nwa
thing-at-hips *back ache*

uushi-a-səkə
thing-at-stomach

stomach ache

uuza-nvwa
hoeing-beer

*communal farming (done for a neighbor in
exchange for an invitation to a feast)*

Finally, a few compound nouns exist in which there is no “head noun.” Consider the following which are all nominalized predicate phrases:

(20) da-dzəgudə
cook-sause *type of pot used for cooking sause*

dza-də-na
gather-with-head(s) *meeting, gathering (of people)*

ya-vəna
without-rain *person with power to make rain*

2.2 Noun inflections

2.2.1 Plurality

Plural noun stems are formed from singular noun stems by adding a palatalized suffix (-nyi-, -ii-, -gi-, -shi'i-) and/or by palatalizing one or more syllables. The final vowel in the plural stem is always a short high vowel, and in all but two cases the final syllable is palatalized (see discussion of ngwiirənə and mahiirənə in section 2.2.3.1).

In nearly all cases, the plural noun behaves like a captive class noun—i.e., the derived plural stem takes the -nə suffix and is inflected like a basic noun of the captive stem class (see section 2.1.1). The only exception to this generalization is the word ənja (-ə) ‘people, persons,’ singular: ənda (-ə), which behaves like a free class noun. Interestingly, this noun is often used as a pronoun, which may explain its anomolous morphology.

Following is a discussion of regular and irregular plural formation.

2.2.1.1 Regular plurals

Captive stem class singular nouns regularly form the plural by adding the suffix -nyi- to the stem. This suffix is followed by the -nə suffix required by captive stems.

Examples:

| (21) | singular | | plural |
|------|-----------|--------------------|---------------|
| | gu-nə | <i>fire</i> | gu-nyi-nə |
| | tša-nə | <i>fence</i> | tša-nyi-nə |
| | kuku'u-nə | <i>beobab tree</i> | kuku'u-nyi-nə |
| | bibi-nə | <i>feather</i> | bibi-nyi-nə |

Free stem class singular nouns regularly form the plural using one of two suffixes, *-nyi-* or *-ii-*. Which Plural noun stems are formed from singular noun stems suffix is used depends on the final vowel of the stem.

Free class *-ə* final singular stems form the plural by using the suffix *-nyi-*.

Free class *-a* final singular stems, on the other hand, regularly form the plural by deleting the final stem vowel and suffixing *-ii-* /əyə/. These stems may also form the plural by using the suffix *-nyi-* as well, although such forms seem to be used only to emphasize the plurality and are much less common than the *-ii-* forms.

Examples:

| (22) | singular | | plural | alternate plural |
|------|-------------|---------------|------------|------------------|
| | la | <i>cow</i> | lii-nə | la-nyi-nə |
| | ɖəva (-ə) | <i>basket</i> | ɖəvii-nə | ɖəvə-nyi-nə |
| | gwanda | <i>frog</i> | gwandii-nə | gwanda-nyi-nə |
| | tsəəra (-ə) | <i>hoe</i> | tsəərii-nə | tsəərə-nyi-nə |

Loan words used in Gude generally form plurals by using the *-nyi-* suffix.

Examples:

| (23) | singular | | plural |
|------|----------|-------------------|---------------|
| | pasto | <i>pastor</i> | pasto-nyi-nə |
| | mota | <i>automobile</i> | mota-nyi-nə |
| | keekya | <i>bicycle</i> | keekya-nyi-nə |
| | gora | <i>kolanut</i> | gora-nyi-nə |

2.2.1.2 Irregular plurals

The following words form their plurals by adding the suffix *-gi-*:

| (24) | singular | | plural |
|------|------------|-----------------------|-------------|
| | ənfwa (-ə) | <i>tree</i> | ənfu-gi-nə |
| | nwuya (-ə) | <i>non-blacksmith</i> | nwuyi-gi-nə |
| | uya (-ə) | <i>sore, wound</i> | uyi-gi-nə |
| | nwudə-nə | <i>new mother</i> | nwugi-gi-nə |

Perhaps *uushiginə* 'firewood,' which is now a mass term, belongs to this set also.

The following words form their plurals by adding the suffix *-shii-*:

| (25) | singular | | plural |
|------|--------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| | ndzəkənwu-nə | <i>sibling</i> | ndzəkənwu-shii-nə |
| | dzədzə-nə | <i>grandfather</i> | dzədzə-shii-nə |
| | kəkə-nə | <i>grandmother</i> | kəkə-shii-nə |

Perhaps *uushii'nə* 'things,' singular: *uushi*, belongs to this set also.

The following set of nouns form their plurals by palatalizing the final syllable and occasionally another syllable also.

Free class nouns (*-ə* final stems):

| (26) | singular | | plural |
|------|----------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| | ənfwala (-ə) | <i>Fali tribesman</i> | ənfwalinə |
| | ənshara (-ə) | <i>prince</i> | ənsharinə |
| | ənshibā (-ə) | <i>coney</i> | ənshibinə (?) |
| | gudəra (-ə) | <i>civet cat</i> | gudirinə |
| | hurəba (-ə) | <i>baboon</i> | hurəbinə |
| | jida (-ə) | <i>fly</i> | ji'inə |
| | kəzəka (-ə) | <i>orphan</i> | kəzhikinə |
| | kuzəka (-ə) | <i>medicine</i> | kuzhikinə |
| | kwatama (-ə) | <i>princess</i> | kwatyaminə |
| | lawara (-ə) | <i>adult man</i> | lyawarinə |
| | mədəra (-ə) | <i>cripple</i> | midirinə / migirinə |
| | məndzəŋa (-ə) | <i>Nzanyi tribesman</i> | mənjanya |
| | məzəməka (-ə) | <i>hunter</i> | məzhimakinə |
| | madzəga (-ə) | <i>younger sibling</i> | majiginə |
| | majiraka (-ə) | <i>liar</i> | majirakinə |
| | maladzəŋa (-ə) | <i>circumcised man</i> | malajanyinə |
| | mangurəma (-ə) | <i>type of wasp</i> | manguriminə |
| | manyada (-ə) | <i>lazy person</i> | manya'inə |

| | | | |
|----------|------|---------------|------------|
| murəmura | (-ə) | <i>crumb</i> | murəmurinə |
| mu'uma | (-ə) | <i>guest</i> | mu'uminə |
| uuləma | (-ə) | <i>fetish</i> | uuliminə |

Free class nouns (-a final stems):

| | | | |
|------|-----------|-------------------------|------------|
| (27) | singular | | plural |
| | əgina | <i>bird</i> | əginyinə |
| | gundira | <i>village official</i> | gundirinə |
| | kamba | <i>royal clansman</i> | kambinə |
| | kanshagya | <i>ant</i> | kanshaginə |
| | mapuda | <i>Gude tribesman</i> | mapu'inə |
| | maroofa | <i>widow</i> | maroofinə |

Captive class nouns:

| | | | |
|------|----------|-------------------|----------|
| (28) | moombəne | <i>bridesmaid</i> | moombinə |
| | rəmənə | <i>young girl</i> | riminə |

Finally, there is the following set of irregular plurals that differ from the others in various ways. Note again that palatalization always occurs.

| | | | |
|------|------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| (29) | singular | | plural |
| | əhwa | (-ə) <i>goat</i> | uuhinə |
| | ənhya | (-ə) <i>blacksmith</i> | mihinə |
| | dənə | <i>father</i> | dəsənyinə |
| | gawa | (-ə) <i>elder sibling</i> | gayinə |
| | hima | (-ə) <i>mouse</i> | hiiminə |
| | kunwa | (-ə) <i>calabash</i> | kwiiminə |
| | maɖanə | <i>bride</i> | maɖaɖiinə |
| | maɖuuna | (-ə) <i>important person</i> | maɖiigərinə |
| | mahəra | (-ə) <i>thief</i> | mahiirənə |
| | minə | <i>woman</i> | makinə |
| | nwanwa | (-ə) <i>chief</i> | myaminə |
| | ngura | (-ə) <i>man</i> | ngwiirənə |
| | sərəhwa | (-ə) <i>parent-in-law</i> | shirəhinə |
| | təhwa | (-ə) <i>horse</i> | tihinə |
| | uuzənə | <i>child</i> | manjeevinə |
| | ənda | (-ə) <i>person</i> | ənja(-ə) |
| | mənə | <i>mother</i> | məsənyinə |
| | lhandaya | <i>master of house</i> | lhanjiinyinə |
| | uncitəminə | <i>little girl</i> | uujī makinə (two words) |

There are a number of plural nouns derived from free class nouns which denote the people of a given village or tribe. In these derivations, *-a* final stems form the plural with *-ii-* (never *-nyi-*), and *-ə* final stems form the plural by palatalizing the final syllable. These plurals are listed here for reference:

| (30) | singular | | plural |
|------|----------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| | əndzərə | <i>Northern Fali person</i> | əndzəriinə |
| | madzərə | <i>Muchella person</i> | madzəriinə |
| | nasaara | <i>European person</i> | nasaariinə |
| | nwuda | <i>Kilba person</i> | nwudiinə |
| | pərəsana | <i>Fulani person</i> | pərəsaniinə |
| | uuva | <i>Kanuri person</i> | uuviiinə |

Body parts do not have separate plural forms. The same form is singular or plural depending on its use in context.

Examples:

| | | |
|------|---------|---------------------|
| (31) | ciiinə | <i>hand, hands</i> |
| | ginə | <i>eye, eyes</i> |
| | linyinə | <i>tooth, teeth</i> |
| | səfa | <i>foot, feet</i> |

Dead plurals

Many Gude nouns appear to be “dead” plurals. These words are either mass nouns or count nouns that are so seldom used in the singular that separate singular forms no longer exist. Most of the singular nouns in modern Gude which have palatalization in the final syllable of the root appear to derive historically from plural forms. A few of these nouns are listed below. Many more may be found in the dictionary.

| | | |
|------|-------------|---|
| (32) | əntətədiinə | <i>fire fly</i> |
| | ənvwiinə | <i>feces</i> |
| | cici'iinə | <i>gnat</i> |
| | hanyinə | <i>soil, land</i> |
| | ivənyinə | <i>charcoal</i> |
| | kəzha'iinə | <i>wrinkles in skin</i> |
| | kiinə | <i>tears</i> |
| | moodiina | <i>part of root crop left after harvest</i> |
| | shashi'iina | <i>type of firewood</i> |
| | uujinə | <i>bee larva</i> |
| | 'wa'wiina | <i>small bell</i> |

2.2.2 Possessive pronominal suffixes

Common nouns may be inflected by adding the following possessive pronominal suffixes:

| | | | |
|------|--------|---------|---------------------|
| (33) | -ki | /kyə/ | 1st pers. sing. |
| | -ku | /kwə/ | 2nd pers. sing. |
| | -kii | /kəyə/ | 3rd pers. m. sing. |
| | -tə | /tə/ | 3rd pers. f. sing. |
| | -aamə | /a:mə/ | 1st pers. pl. incl. |
| | -inə | /yənə/ | 1st pers. pl. excl. |
| | -aanwu | /a:nwə/ | 1st pers. dual |
| | -unə | /wənə/ | 2nd pers. pl. |
| | -tii | /təyə/ | 3rd pers. pl. |

How these suffixes are joined to the noun stem varies depending on (1) whether or not the stem is inherently possessed, (2) the particular suffix used, and (3) the form class of the stem.

2.2.2.1 Non-inherent possession

Possessive pronominal suffixes are joined to non-inherently possessed noun stems according to the following patterns:

Free class stems (with underlying final low vowel)

| | | |
|------|-----------|-------------------------|
| (34) | la | cow |
| | laa-ki | <i>my cow</i> |
| | laa-ku | <i>your (sing.) cow</i> |
| | laa-kii | <i>his cow</i> |
| | la-tə | <i>her cow</i> |
| | la-gaamə | <i>our (incl.) cow</i> |
| | la-geenə | <i>our (excl.) cow</i> |
| | la-gaanwu | <i>our (dual) cow</i> |
| | la-goona | <i>your (pl.) cow</i> |
| | la-tii | <i>their cow</i> |

Free class stems (with underlying final high vowel)

(35) ra (-ə) *farm* (underlying final high vowel)

| | |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| raa-ki | <i>my farm</i> |
| raa-ku | <i>your (sing.) farm</i> |
| raa-kii | <i>his farm</i> |
| ra-tə | <i>her farm</i> |
| ra-gaamə | <i>our (incl.) farm</i> |
| ra-geenə | <i>our (excl.) farm</i> |
| ra-gaanwu | <i>our (dual) farm</i> |
| ra-goonə | <i>your (dual) farm</i> |
| ra-tii | <i>their farm</i> |

Captive class stems

(36) tsa-nə *fence*

| | |
|-----------------|---------------------------|
| tsa-naa-ki | <i>my fence</i> |
| tsa-naa-ku | <i>your (sing.) fence</i> |
| tsa-naa-kii | <i>his fence</i> |
| tsa-na-tə | <i>her fence</i> |
| tsa-n(ə)-gaamə | <i>our (incl.) fence</i> |
| tsa-n(ə)-geenə | <i>our (excl.) fence</i> |
| tsa-n(ə)-gaanwu | <i>our (dual) fence</i> |
| tsa-n(ə)-goonə | <i>your (pl.) fence</i> |
| tsa-na-tii | <i>their fence</i> |

Note the following generalizations:

- The -nə suffix of captive noun stems is retained before the possessive suffixes and is not deleted as it is before plural or demonstrative suffixes.
- The 1st and 2nd pers. pl. suffixes (-amə, -inə, -anwu, -unə) are preceded by the morpheme ga. The resulting vowel elision is as expected from phonological rules discussed in section 1.2:

| | | | |
|----|------|---|-------|
| aa | [a:] | < | /aa/ |
| ee | [ei] | < | /ayə/ |
| oo | [ou] | < | /awə/ |

Historically, this ga may have been an independent preposition, as evidenced by the peculiarity that the captive stem suffix -nə does not change its final vowel to /a/ before it (see below), and that the suffix -nə often drops the final vowel entirely. There is also an obvious similarity between this particle and the preposition ga meaning 'at the place of.'

- The vowel before the possessive suffix becomes /a/ except when a captive noun suffix is followed by *ga* (see above). This vowel lengthens before the suffixes *-ki*, *-ku*, *-kii* and is short elsewhere.

2.2.2.2 Inherent possession

Possessive pronominal suffixes are joined to inherently (inalienably) possessed noun stems (see discussion below) according to the following patterns:

Free class stems (with underlying final low vowel)

| | | |
|------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| (37) | <i>ma</i> | <i>mouth(s)</i> |
| | <i>ma-ki</i> | <i>my mouth</i> |
| | <i>ma-ku</i> | <i>your (sing.) mouth</i> |
| | <i>ma-kii</i> | <i>his mouth</i> |
| | <i>ma-tə</i> | <i>her mouth</i> |
| | <i>maamə</i> | <i>our (incl.) mouth(s)</i> |
| | <i>meenə</i> | <i>our (excl.) mouth(s)</i> |
| | <i>maanwu</i> | <i>our (dual) mouth(s)</i> |
| | <i>moonə</i> | <i>your (pl.) mouth(s)</i> |
| | <i>ma-tii</i> | <i>their mouth(es)</i> |

Free class stems (with underlying final high vowel)

| | | |
|------|------------------|---------------------------------|
| (38) | <i>səɸa (-ə)</i> | <i>foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸə-ki</i> | <i>my foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸə-ku</i> | <i>your (sing.) foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸə-kii</i> | <i>his foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸə-tə</i> | <i>her foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸaamə</i> | <i>our (incl.) foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸiine</i> | <i>our (excl.) foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸaanwu</i> | <i>our (dual) foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸuunə</i> | <i>your (dual) foot (feet)</i> |
| | <i>səɸə-tii</i> | <i>their foot (feet)</i> |

Captive class stems

| | | |
|------|-------------|---------------------|
| (39) | gi-nə | eye(s) |
| | gi-n(ə)-ki | my eye(s) |
| | gi-n(ə)-ku | your (sing.) eye(s) |
| | gi-n(ə)-kii | his eye(s) |
| | gi-nə-tə | her eye(s) |
| | gi-naamə | our (incl.) eye(s) |
| | gi-niinə | our (excl.) eye(s) |
| | gi-naanwu | our (dual) eye(s) |
| | gi-nuunə | your (pl.) eye(s) |
| | gi-nə-tii | their eye(s) |

Note the following generalizations:

- The *-nə* suffix of captive noun stems is again retained before the possessive suffixes. (Note the optional elision: *nə + k* → *ŋk*.) Exception: The *-nə* suffix is not retained, however, before possessive suffixes when the inherently possessed noun follows the preposition *a* 'at, in, on,' as in *a gi-ki* 'in my eye,' *a cii-ki* 'in my hand.' (These phrases are few in number. See section 3.10.2.)
- The 1st and 2nd pers. pl. suffixes (*-amə, -inə, -anwu, -unə*) are in this case not preceded by *ga*, as they are for non-inherent possession. Again there is vowel elision in accord with the phonological rules discussed in section 1.2:

| | | | |
|----|------|---|-------|
| aa | [a:] | < | /əa/ |
| ii | [i:] | < | /əyə/ |
| uu | [u:] | < | /əwə/ |
| aa | [a:] | < | /aa/ |
| ee | [e:] | < | /əyə/ |
| oo | [ou] | < | /əwə/ |

- The vowel before the suffix is retained and is not replaced by /a/, as it is for non-inherent possession. There is also no vowel lengthening before the suffixes *-ki, -ku, -kii*.

The nouns which may be inherently possessed belong to a closed set. Those found so far are listed in Appendix D. Except for *ləma* (*-ə*) 'name,' these nouns are either external body parts or kinship terms. A noun's membership in this class is clearly arbitrary. Not all body parts or kinship terms are in the list. For example, *guva* 'friend' is included, but not *minə* 'wife' or *uzənə* 'child.'

These inherently possessed nouns may also be inflected as non-inherently possessed nouns but with an accompanying change of meaning. For example, *səfə-ki*

'my leg (*inherent*)' can only refer to part of my body, but səfəa-ki 'my leg (*non-inherent*)' may be used, for example, to refer to a goat's leg I just bought in the market.

Four words—dənə 'father,' mənə, 'mother' dzədzənə 'grandfather,' and kəkənə 'grandmother'—have irregular possessive forms. These are displayed in the following paradigms:

| | | | |
|------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|
| (40) | dənə 'father' | mənə 'mother' | |
| | daadə /daadi | yaayi | 1st pers. sing. |
| | duu | muu | 2nd pers. sing. |
| | dii | məci | 3rd pers. m. sing. |
| | dii | məci | 3rd pers. f. sing. |
| | dəsənaamə | məsənaamə | 1st pers. pl. incl. |
| | dəsəniinə | məsəniinə | 1st pers. pl. excl. |
| | dəsənaanwu | məsənaanwu | 1st pers. dual |
| | dəsənuunə | məsənuunə | 2nd pers. pl. |
| | dəsənətii | məsənətii | 3rd pers. pl. |

| | | | |
|------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| (41) | dzədzənə 'grandfather' | kəkənə 'grandmother' | |
| | dzədzə | kaakə/kaaka | 1st pers. sing. |
| | dzədzuu | kukuu | 2nd pers. sing. |
| | dzədzəci | kəkəci | 3rd pers. m. sing. |
| | dzədzətə | kəkənətə | 3rd pers. f. sing. |
| | dzədzəamə | kəkənəamə | 1st pers. pl. incl. |
| | dzədzəiinə | kəkəniinə | 1st pers. pl. excl. |
| | dzədzəaanwu | kəkənəaanwu | 1st pers. dual |
| | dzədzəuunə | kəkənuunə | 2nd pers. pl. |
| | dzədzə(nə)tii | kəkənətii | 3rd pers. pl. |

In addition, the inherently possessed noun ngura (-ə) 'man, husband' has an alternative possessive form in the first person singular only: ngurə-ki 'my husband' (regular) and ngurii 'my husband' (irregular).

2.2.2.3 Independent possessive pronominals

The following special forms function as independent possessive pronouns.

| | | | |
|------|---------|---------------------|----------------------|
| (42) | naa-ki | 1st pers. sing. | <i>mine</i> |
| | naa-ku | 2nd pers. sing. | <i>yours (sing.)</i> |
| | naa-kii | 3rd pers. m. sing. | <i>his, its</i> |
| | na-tə | 3rd pers. f. sing. | <i>hers</i> |
| | naamə | 1st pers. pl. incl. | <i>ours (incl.)</i> |
| | neenə | 1st pers. pl. excl. | <i>ours (excl.)</i> |
| | naanwu | 1st pers. dual | <i>ours (dual)</i> |
| | noonə | 2nd pers. pl. | <i>yours (pl.)</i> |
| | na-tii | 3rd pers. pl. | <i>theirs</i> |

In the above forms the possessive pronominal suffixes appear to be attached to an unidentifiable stem beginning in *n-* whose underlying vowel might be either high or low. In other Chadic languages the independent possessive pronominal is often formed by adding a possessive suffix to the word for 'head' (Note Hausa: *kai* 'head,' *kaina* 'my head, myself'). This practice may be the origin of the Gude forms as well, but synchronically the Gude independent possessive pronominals are distinct from inflected forms of *na* 'head.' Compare the following:

(43) inherently possessed non-inherently possessed

| | | |
|--------|-----------|----------------------|
| nə-ki | naa-ki | <i>my head, etc.</i> |
| nə-ku | naa-ku | |
| nə-kii | naa-kii | |
| nə-tə | na-tə | |
| naamə | nə-gaamə | |
| neenə | nə-geenə | |
| naanwu | nə-gaanwu | |
| noonə | nə-goona | |
| nə-tii | na-tii | |

These independent possessive pronominals may also be used in place of the possessive suffixes described earlier to indicate non-inherent possession. When used in this way, they precede the noun they modify. This use of the pronominal forms is very rare however.

Examples:

| | | |
|------|-------------|-------------------|
| (44) | naaki ya | <i>my command</i> |
| | naaku kwaɓa | <i>your money</i> |
| | naakii kuva | <i>his hut</i> |

Note also the use of these independent possessive pronominals in reflexive forms (see section 5.7).

2.2.3 Demonstratives

2.2.3.1 Demonstrative suffixes

Common nouns may be inflected by adding the following demonstrative suffixes:

- (45) -na (-nə) *this*
 -tsa (-tsə) *that (close)*
 -ta (-tə) *that (far)*

Before pause the underlying final short high vowel /ə/ changes to a long low vowel /a:/.

With free class noun stems, the demonstrative suffix is added directly to the stem, as in the following examples:

- (46) zəma (-ə) *food*
 zəmə-na *this food*
 zəmə-tsa *that food (close)*
 zəmə-ta *that food (far)*
- nwanwa (-ə) *chief*
 nwanwu-na *this chief*
 nwanwu-tsa *that chief (close)*
 nwanwu-ta *that chief (far)*
- ba *leaf*
 ba-na *this leaf*
 ba-tsa *that leaf (close)*
 ba-ta *that leaf (far)*

With captive class noun stems, the special -nə suffix is dropped from the noun and the final vowel is lengthened before the demonstrative suffix, as in the following examples:

- (47) rə-nə *locustbean tree*
 rəə-na *this locustbean tree*
 rəə-tsa *that locustbean tree (close)*
 rəə-ta *that locustbean tree (far)*
- kula-nə *blacksmith's workroom*
 kulaa-na *this blacksmith's workroom*
 kulaa-tsa *that blacksmith's workroom (close)*
 kulaa-ta *that blacksmith's workroom (far)*

The demonstrative suffixes may be used with singular nouns, plural nouns, and possessed nouns. Note that plural nouns and all derived nouns with the *-nə* suffix undergo the changes described above for captive nouns. The order of the combined morphemes is NOUN + PLURAL + POSSESSIVE + DEMONSTRATIVE.

Examples:

| | | |
|------|---------------------------|--|
| (48) | <i>kuva (-ə)</i> | <i>hut</i> |
| | <i>kuvə-na</i> | <i>this hut</i> |
| | <i>kuvə-tə</i> | <i>her hut</i> |
| | <i>kuva-tə-na</i> | <i>this hut of hers</i> |
| | <i>kuvə-nyi-nə</i> | <i>huts</i> |
| | <i>kuvə-nyii-na</i> | <i>these huts</i> |
| | <i>kuvə-nyi-na-tə</i> | <i>her huts</i> |
| | <i>kuvə-nyi-na-tə-na</i> | <i>these huts of hers</i> |
| | <i>la</i> | <i>cow</i> |
| | <i>la-tsa</i> | <i>that (close) cow</i> |
| | <i>laa-ki</i> | <i>my cow</i> |
| | <i>laa-ki-tsa</i> | <i>that (close) cow of mine</i> |
| | <i>lii-nə</i> | <i>cows</i> |
| | <i>lii-tsa</i> | <i>those (close) cows</i> |
| | <i>lii-naa-ki</i> | <i>my cows</i> |
| | <i>lii-naa-ki-tsa</i> | <i>those (close) cows of mine</i> |
| | <i>gu-nə</i> | <i>fire</i> |
| | <i>guu-ta</i> | <i>that (far) fire</i> |
| | <i>gu-nə-gaamə</i> | <i>our (incl.) fire</i> |
| | <i>gu-nə-gaamə-ta</i> | <i>that (far) fire of ours (incl.)</i> |
| | <i>gu-nyi-nə</i> | <i>fires</i> |
| | <i>gu-nyii-ta</i> | <i>those (far) fires</i> |
| | <i>gu-nyi-nə-gaamə</i> | <i>our (incl.) fires</i> |
| | <i>gu-nyi-nə-gaamə-ta</i> | <i>those (far) fires of ours (incl.)</i> |

Some irregular forms

Note that the following few captive class nouns and plural forms undergo palatalization—as well as lengthening—of the final stem vowel before a demonstrative suffix. These words all have palatalization elsewhere in the stem which seems to “spread” to the lengthened vowel. They also share a common final (phonetically weak) syllable /rə/.

The plural forms in this list are also the only plural forms found to lack palatalization on the final stem vowel (see section 2.2.1).

| | | | |
|------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------|
| (49) | Without demonstrative | With demonstrative | |
| | kəjeerə-nə | <i>shirt</i> | kəjeerii-ta |
| | lhikərə-nə | <i>seed</i> | lhikării-ta |
| | ngeerə-nə | <i>strength</i> | ngeerii-ta |
| | mahiirə-nə | <i>thieves (pl.)</i> | mahiirii-ta |
| | ngwiirə-nə | <i>men (pl.)</i> | ngwiirii-ta |

2.2.3.2 Independent demonstrative pronominals

The following special forms function as independent demonstrative pronouns.

| | | |
|------|-------------|---------------------|
| (50) | əna (ənə) | <i>this</i> |
| | ətsa (ətsə) | <i>that (close)</i> |
| | əta (ətə) | <i>that (far)</i> |

2.2.4 Definiteness

Common nouns may be inflected to indicate definiteness by adding the suffix *-kii* /kəyə/. This definite suffix is not used with pronouns, proper names, possessive suffixes, or demonstrative suffixes, all of which are inherently definite and require no morphological marking.

With free class nouns, the definite suffix is added directly to the stem, as in the following examples:

| | | |
|------|-------------|------------------|
| (51) | zəma (-ə) | <i>food</i> |
| | zəmə-kii | <i>the food</i> |
| | nwanwa (-ə) | <i>chief</i> |
| | nwanwu-kii | <i>the chief</i> |
| | ba | <i>leaf</i> |
| | ba-kii | <i>the leaf</i> |

With captive class nouns and plural noun stems, the special *-nə* suffix is not dropped before the definite suffix is added. (Note that it is dropped before demonstrative suffixes.)

Examples:

| | | |
|------|-----------------|----------------------------|
| (52) | rə-nə | <i>locustbean tree</i> |
| | rə-nə-kii | <i>the locustbean tree</i> |
| | tsa-nə | <i>fence</i> |
| | tsa-nə-kii | <i>the fence</i> |
| | lii-nə | <i>cows (plural)</i> |
| | lii-nə-kii | <i>the cows</i> |
| | kuvə-nyi-nə | <i>huts (plural)</i> |
| | kuvə-nyi-nə-kii | <i>the huts</i> |

2.3 Pronouns

The independent pronouns (below) occur in the following contexts: (1) in isolation, (2) as subjects—usually preceded by the subject marking particle *nə* (see sections 3.1 section 5.1), (3) as direct objects—usually preceded by the direct object marking particle *tə* (see section 5.2), and (4) as indirect objects—usually preceded by the indirect object marking particle *ka* (see section 5.3).

| | | |
|------|----------|---------------------|
| (53) | nyi / ii | 1st pers. sing. |
| | hə | 2nd pers. sing. |
| | ci | 3rd pers. m. sing. |
| | ki | 3rd pers. f. sing. |
| | amə | 1st pers. pl. incl. |
| | inə | 1st pers. pl. excl. |
| | anwu | 1st pers. dual |
| | unə | 2nd pers. pl. |
| | (ə)tii | 3rd pers. pl. |

These pronouns normally devoice or lose their final vowel before pause and elide with any preceding syllable. The 1st pers. sing. pronoun *nyi* has an alternate form, *ii /əyə/*, which never occurs in isolation and always elides.

Separate pronoun sets are used for possessive pronouns (see section 2.2.2) and for incorporated indirect object pronouns (see section 5.3.2). See also section 5.7 for the formation of reflexives.

The word *ənja* (–ə) ‘people, persons,’ singular: *ənda* (–ə) ‘person,’ often serves as an impersonal subject, as in ‘they say..., it is said...’ (see section 5.1).

Interrogative pronouns (question words) are discussed in section 6.2.3.

The interrogative pronouns also combine with the particle *ta* (see discussion of the conjunction *ta* 'or' in section 2.9) to form the following set of universal pronouns:

| | | |
|------|--------------------|--|
| (54) | <i>ta wu</i> | <i>everyone, anyone, whoever</i> |
| | <i>ta guci</i> | <i>every time, anytime, whenever</i> |
| | <i>ta mi</i> | <i>everything, anything, whatever</i> |
| | <i>ta da ma</i> | <i>everywhere, anywhere, wherever</i> |
| | <i>ta ngutə...</i> | <i>every, any, whichever (= kala. See section 2.5)</i> |
| | <i>ta yitə</i> | <i>by whatever means, in whatever way, however</i> |

2.4 Proper names

As in any language, proper names occur as noun phrases. Proper names in Gude have none of the phonological alternations which are noted for common nouns (see section 2.1.1). In particular, they do not have final vowel changes before pause, and final consonants are common. (Except, final high vowels do devoice before pause by a general phonetic process.)

Examples:

| | | | |
|------|---------|---------|-----------|
| (55) | people | clans | places |
| | təkushi | gwaleem | kwatankir |
| | gaŋ | humbara | wudir |
| | kapuwa | mbaga | meeru |
| | wanja | malaŋac | mirinyi |
| | gərə'i | namash | ŋuvi |
| | məda | uufahya | gəreegəb |
| | abaawa | gəyig | bantala |

However, personal names do have special calling forms—i.e., forms used when calling to one from a distance. These are formed by adding a suffix *-oo* (with falling tone) to the name.

Examples:

| | |
|------|----------|
| (56) | təkushoo |
| | gaŋoo |
| | kapuwoo |
| | wanjoo |
| | gərə'yoo |
| | mədoo |
| | abawoo |

2.5 Numbers and quantifiers

The cardinal numbers

The cardinal numbers are listed below. The reader should remember that the final short high vowel /ə/ is not pronounced before pause—as when counting.

| | | |
|------|------|--------------------------|
| (57) | 1 | tenə / toonə (rənwu) |
| | 2 | bəra'i / bəroo'i |
| | 3 | makə |
| | 4 | ənfwadə |
| | 5 | tufə |
| | 6 | kuwa |
| | 7 | mədəfə |
| | 8 | təghəsə |
| | 9 | əliŋə |
| | 10 | pu'(u) |
| | 11 | pu' aməntəŋə |
| | 12 | pu' aji bəra'i |
| | 13 | pu' aji makə |
| | 14 | pu' aji nfwadə |
| | 15 | pu' aji tufə |
| | 16 | pu' aji kuwa |
| | 17 | pu' aji mədəfə |
| | 18 | pu' aji təghəsə |
| | 19 | pu' aji əliŋə |
| | 20 | pupusərə |
| | 21 | pupusər aməntəŋə |
| | 22 | pupusər aji bəra'i |
| | 23 | pupusər aji makə |
| | 30 | makəpu'unə |
| | 40 | ənfwadəpu'unə |
| | 50 | tufəpu'unə |
| | 60 | kuwapu'unə |
| | 70 | mədəfəpu'unə |
| | 80 | təghəsəpu'unə |
| | 90 | iliŋəpu'unə |
| | 100 | gya'(a) |
| | 101 | gya' da rənwu |
| | 102 | gya' da bəra'i |
| | 126 | gya' da pupusər aji kuwa |
| | 200 | gya' bəra'i |
| | 300 | gya' makə |
| | 1000 | dubu |

2000 dubu bəra'i

5555 dubu tufə da gya' tufə da tufəpu'un aji tufə

(Notes: The forms teenə or toonə 'one' are used when counting. The form rənwu 'one' is used as a noun or noun modifier. The forms toonə 'one' and bəroo'i 'two' are used by some upper dialect speakers. The particle aji is not used elsewhere in the language. The particle da occurs elsewhere as 'and'.')

Cardinal numbers may serve as noun phrases, as in (58), or they may modify nouns. Normally a modifying cardinal number follows the head noun and its other modifiers. However, the cardinal number may precede the demonstrative suffix (see section 2.2.3.1) in which case the suffix attaches to the number. Compare (59) and (60).

(58) kə zii rənwu *one was lost*
 kə zii tuf *five were lost*

(59) fəzə-tsə mak *those three years*

(60) fəzə makə-tsa *those three years*

With cardinal numbers greater than one, the singular form of the noun is usually used instead of the plural.

Examples:

(61) kə irə ci mbusə pu'
 COMPLETIVE buy he pumpkin ten
 kə irə ci mbusənyinə pu' (less acceptable?)
 COMPLETIVE buy he pumpkins ten
 he bought ten pumpkins

iirə makinə nga nwanwu bəra'i
 old wives of chief two
 two old wives of the chief

iirə makinə nga meminə bəra'i
 old wives of chiefs two
 two old wives of chiefs
 or *old wives of two chiefs*

The ordinal numbers

The ordinal numbers are adjectival nouns (see section 2.6.3 for a discussion of adjectival nouns) which are formed from the cardinal numbers by adding the nominalizing suffix -nə (see section 2.1.2.1 for other uses of this suffix).

| | | |
|------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (62) | teena | <i>first</i> |
| | bəra'inə | <i>second</i> |
| | makəna | <i>third</i> |
| | ənfwadəna | <i>fourth</i> |
| | tufəna | <i>fifth</i> |
| | kuwana | <i>sixth</i> |
| | mədəfəna | <i>seventh</i> |
| | təghəsəna | <i>eighth</i> |
| | əliḡəna | <i>ninth</i> |
| | pu'unə | <i>tenth</i> |
| | pu' aməntaḡəna | <i>eleventh</i> |
| | pu' aji bəra'inə | <i>twelfth</i> |
| | pu' aji makəna | <i>thirteenth</i> |
| | pu' aji nfwadəna | <i>fourteenth</i> |
| | pupusəra | <i>twentieth</i> |
| | pupusə aməntaḡəna | <i>twenty first</i> |
| | pupusə aji bəra'inə | <i>twenty second</i> |
| | makəpu'unəna | <i>thirtieth</i> |
| | gya'anə | <i>one hundredth</i> |
| | gya' da rənwuna | <i>one hundred and first</i> |
| | gya' da pupusə aji kuwana | <i>one hundred and twenty sixth</i> |
| | gya' bəra'inə | <i>two hundredth</i> |

Examples:

| | | |
|------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| (63) | bəra'inə nga ngwiirəna | <i>second man</i> |
| | tufəna nga tihina | <i>fifth horse</i> |
| | pu' aji makəna nga manjeevina | <i>thirteenth child</i> |

Quantifiers

The following other quantifiers may modify noun phrases. The positions in which they occur are illustrated in the examples below.

| | | |
|------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| (64) | laḡə | <i>much, many</i> |
| | ḡi'u | <i>little, few</i> |
| | patə, patəna | <i>all</i> |
| | kala | <i>every (See section 2.3)</i> |
| | əndə'i | <i>a certain, another</i> |
| | hara | <i>other(s) (pl.)</i> |

Examples:

| | | |
|------|-------------------|---|
| (65) | ma'inə laŋə | <i>much water</i> |
| | əŋji laŋə | <i>many people</i> |
| | ma'inə gi'u | <i>little water</i> |
| | əŋji gi'u | <i>few people</i> |
| | ma'inə patə | <i>all (of) the water</i> |
| | əŋji patə | <i>all (of) the people</i> |
| | patənə nga ma'inə | <i>all (of) the water</i> |
| | patənə nga əŋji | <i>all (of) the people</i> |
| | kala əndə | <i>every person</i> |
| | əndə'i əndə | <i>a certain person, another person</i> |
| | hara əŋji | <i>other people</i> |

2.6 Attributive adjectives

Attributive adjectival modifiers in Gude are of three types: (1) simple adjectives, (2) participles, and (3) adjectival nouns. These types are discussed in the following sections.

2.6.1 Simple adjectives

Pre-nominal constructions

Attributive simple adjectives normally precede the noun they modify. In this position, they occur with a prefix *ma-*.

Examples:

| | | |
|------|---------------|----------------------|
| (66) | ma-gusə minə | <i>short woman</i> |
| | ma-dizə dara | <i>red hat</i> |
| | ma-ndalə ənda | <i>strong person</i> |

Post-nominal constructions

Attributive simple adjectives may also follow the noun—but rarely do. In this position, they occur with both the prefix *ma-* and a suffix *-kii*. (This suffix has an obvious resemblance to the definiteness marker. See section 2.2.4.)

Examples:

| | | |
|------|-------------------|----------------------|
| (67) | minə ma-gusə-kii | <i>short woman</i> |
| | dara ma-dizə-kii | <i>red hat</i> |
| | ənda ma-ndalə-kii | <i>strong person</i> |

These post-nominal forms might be viewed as a special case of the reduced relative clause since these forms also occur in predicate position. (See section 2.7 for a discussion of reduced relative clauses.)

Predicate position

In predicate position in non-verbal sentences (see section 3.4), the simple adjectives occur either without affixes or with both *ma-* and *-kii* as in post-nominal constructions.

Examples:

| | | |
|------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (68) | <i>gusə nə minə</i> | <i>the woman is short</i> |
| | <i>ma-gusə-kii nə minə</i> | <i>the woman is short</i> |
| | <i>dizə nə dara</i> | <i>the hat is red</i> |
| | <i>ma-dizə-kii nə dara</i> | <i>the hat is red</i> |
| | <i>ndalə nə ənda</i> | <i>the person is strong</i> |
| | <i>ma-ndalə-kii nə ənda</i> | <i>the person is strong</i> |

Irregular simple adjectives

The following 11 words are exceptions. They do not occur with the *ma-* prefix in either pre-nominal or post-nominal constructions. The *-kii* suffix is used in post-nominal and predicate positions. The simple stem does not occur in predicate position.

| | | |
|------|--------------------|------------------------|
| (69) | <i>bwaya</i> | <i>bad</i> |
| | <i>bwayidagwa</i> | <i>ugly (male)</i> |
| | <i>bwayarəmənə</i> | <i>ugly (female)</i> |
| | <i>ḃəzə</i> | <i>much, many</i> |
| | <i>dagwa</i> | <i>handsome (male)</i> |
| | <i>iirə</i> | <i>old</i> |
| | <i>katə'wa</i> | <i>raw, uncooked</i> |
| | <i>kura</i> | <i>young, new</i> |
| | <i>ngwaarə</i> | <i>big, huge</i> |
| | <i>nwu'i</i> | <i>good</i> |
| | <i>undzə</i> | <i>small</i> |

Examples:

| | | |
|------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| (70) | ḃəzə ənji | <i>many people</i> |
| | ənji ḃəzə-kii | <i>many people</i> |
| | ḃəzə-kii nə ənji | <i>the people are many</i> |
| | iirə la | <i>old cow</i> |
| | la irə-kii | <i>old cow</i> |
| | iirə-kii nə la | <i>the cow is old</i> |
| | katə'wa kudakwa | <i>raw potato</i> |
| | kudakwa katə'wa-kii | <i>raw potato</i> |
| | katə'wa-kii nə kudakwa | <i>the potato is raw</i> |

There are only two adjectival modifiers which must agree with their head noun in number. These are the irregular words *undzə* (pl. *uui*) 'small' and *maḃuunə* (pl. *maḃiigərə*) 'large.' The first is an irregular simple adjective (see above) and the second is an irregular participle (see next section).

| | | |
|------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| (71) | undzə gyaagya | <i>small chicken</i> |
| | uui gyaagyiinə | <i>small chickens</i> |
| | maḃuunə gyaagya | <i>large chicken</i> |
| | maḃiigərə gyaagyiinə | <i>large chickens</i> |

2.6.2 Participles

Participles are adjectival modifiers which derive from lexical verbs. These participles often denote final states resulting from the action or process denoted by the root verb. Like the regular simple adjectives, participles occur with the *ma-* prefix in pre-nominal constructions and with both the prefix *ma-* and suffix *-kii* in post-nominal constructions. Only the post-nominal form is used in predicate position.

Examples:

| | | | |
|------|-------------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| (72) | əntə | <i>die</i> | (verb) |
| | ma-ntə la | <i>dead cow</i> | (pre-nominal) |
| | la ma-ntə-kii | <i>dead cow</i> | (post-nominal) |
| | ma-ntə-kii nə la | <i>the cow is dead</i> | (predicate) |
| | ḃi | <i>break, snap</i> | (verb) |
| | ma-ḃi kada | <i>broken stick</i> | (pre-nominal) |
| | kada ma-ḃi-kii | <i>broken stick</i> | (post-nominal) |
| | ma-ḃi-kii nə kada | <i>the stick is broken</i> | (predicate) |

Note that some English adjectives do not have simple adjective counterparts in Gude, but must be translated by participles.

Examples:

| (73) | participle | | verb | |
|------|---------------|-------------|--------|--------------------|
| | ma-ɖuunə-kii | <i>big</i> | ɖuunə | <i>become big</i> |
| | ma-gərə-kii | <i>tall</i> | gərə | <i>become tall</i> |
| | ma-rəbə-kii | <i>wet</i> | rəbə | <i>become wet</i> |
| | ma-səbərə-kii | <i>fat</i> | səbərə | <i>become fat</i> |

2.6.3 Adjectival nouns

Certain nouns serve as adjectival modifiers. These adjectival nouns precede the noun they modify and are linked to it by the preposition *nga* 'of.' Simple adjectival nouns are few in number—less than 30 are listed in the dictionary. However, some are quite commonly used.

Examples:

| | | |
|------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| (74) | nduudā nga la | <i>white cow</i> |
| | nduudā nə la | <i>the cow is white</i> |
| | gərəsə nga hanyinə | <i>damp soil</i> |
| | gərəsə nə hanyinə | <i>the soil is damp</i> |
| | buuta nga dara | <i>cheap hat</i> |
| | buuta nə dara | <i>the hat is cheap</i> |
| | dzawu nga kəbənə | <i>expensive gown</i> |
| | dzawu nə kəbənə | <i>the gown is expensive</i> |

An interesting set of complex adjectival nouns are formed from a suffix *-a'(a)*. This suffix corresponds somewhat in meaning to the English suffix *-ish*. These words denote properties that are held "slightly" or "to some extent." The following ten words have been collected. Others, no doubt, exist.

| | | | |
|------|------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (75) | afutəhya'a | <i>light gray, tan, brown</i> | |
| | ɓəra'a | <i>warm</i> | |
| | dəfwa'a | <i>medium gray</i> | |
| | dənwa'a | <i>dark gray, blackish</i> | (< dənwa <i>black</i>) |
| | diza'a | <i>reddish</i> | (< dizə <i>red</i>) |
| | fuudəhya'a | <i>greenish</i> | (< fuudəfuuda <i>green</i>) |
| | ndəbəza'a | <i>reddish</i> | |
| | nduudə'a | <i>whitish</i> | (< nduudə <i>white</i>) |
| | pwaha'a | <i>light gray, tan, brown</i> | |
| | təkurəka'a | <i>roundish</i> | (< təkurərəkə <i>round</i>) |

Another interesting set of complex adjectival nouns are those formed by complete reduplication of an existing noun stem. The resulting adjectival noun denotes a characteristic property of the source noun. This lexical formation process is quite regular and productive. Only a few of these words are listed in the dictionary.

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (76) | adjectival noun | | source noun | |
| | ba-ba | <i>green, leaf-like</i> | ba | <i>leaf</i> |
| | ɓuka-ɓuka | <i>sticky, gum-like</i> | ɓuda | <i>gum</i> |
| | maarə-maarə | <i>oily</i> | maara | <i>oil</i> |
| | ma'i-ma'i | <i>watery</i> | ma'inə | <i>water</i> |
| | mandzə-mandzə | <i>sandy</i> | mandzəmə | <i>sand</i> |
| | təamba-təamba | <i>kepok-like</i> | təamba | <i>kepok</i> |

2.7 Relative clauses

Noun phrases may be modified by relative clauses. In Gude, relative clauses occur embedded to the right of the head noun and its other modifiers. Usually, a demonstrative suffix is used to link the head noun to the relative clause. If the head noun does not already contain a demonstrative suffix (-nə, -tsə, -tə) or the definite suffix (-kii), then a semantically empty -tə suffix or ətə pronoun is used.

Examples:

- (77) əndə-tə nee nyi a rəgwa
 person-that saw I on road
person that I saw on the road
 (= *he who I saw on the road*)

ngila-tə cii ku a dəra
 knife-that CONTINUOUS you-sing. NEUTRAL buy
knife that you are buying

uuzəə-tsə da'asə ga-dəvə
 child-that(close) seated there
that child (that is) seated over there

kada-nə a cii-ki
 stick-this in hand-my
this stick (that is) in my hand

ətə ci tə a nee
 that CONTINUOUS she NEUTRAL see
that which she sees

As with probably all languages, one noun phrase (the “equi-NP”) in the embedded relative clause must be identical to the head noun in the matrix sentence. In Gude the equi-NP is either pronominalized or deleted. If it is deleted, any accompanying preposition is deleted as well. Preference seems to be to delete the equi-NP in most cases unless it is necessary to retain the accompanying preposition to avoid losing information that cannot be inferred from the context.

- (78) əndə-tə pwayi ənji tə ci dəvə
 person-that bore people D.O.-MARKER him there
 əndə-tə pwayi ənji dəvə
 person-that bore people there
person that was born there
 lit. *person that people bore (him) there*

mii-tə vii ənji ka ki mara
 woman-that gave people to her oil
 mii-tə vii ənji mara
 woman-that gave people oil
woman to whom people gave oil
woman that people gave oil (to)

dəbu-tə umbee Musa də ba'a-kii
 grainery-that hid Musa at back-its
grainery that Musa hid behind

dəbu-tə umbee Musa a səkə-kii
 grainery-that hid Musa at stomach-its
grainery that Musa hid inside of

Note that the preposition which marks the role of the equi-NP in the embedded clause can never appear with the head noun, nor move, as it can in English, (cf. *the boy to whom I gave a book*). This is unlike the case in type-I focus constructions (see section 6.1.1) where such role-marking prepositions do appear on preposed focus elements.

Positive relative clauses

The syntax of the relative clause differs depending on whether the clause is positive or negative. Positive relative clauses have the same structure as the type-I focus constructions (see section 6.1.1 for a discussion of the complex syntax of type-I focus constructions). In the relative clause, however, the equi-NP—which corresponds to the focus element—is deleted from the normal focus position—the beginning of the clause. In most cases, this leaves an incomplete focus construction in the resulting relative clause. The following examples show how a focus construction is altered when it is embedded to form a relative clause.

- (79) *kə nee nyi ka dagəla*
 COMPLETIVE see I to pig
I saw the pig
 (declarative sentence)

dagəla cii ku a zəmakə
 pig CONTINUOUS you-sing. NEUTRAL hunt
it is the pig that you are hunting
 (focus construction)

kə nee nyi ka dagəla-tə cii ku a zəmakə
 COMPLETIVE see I to pig-that CONTINUOUS you-sing. NEUTRAL hunt
I saw the pig that you are hunting
 (embedded relative clause)

kə nəngəpaa Ada tə minə
 COMPLETIVE greet Ada D.O.-MARKER woman
Ada greeted the woman
 (declarative sentence)

minə ənlhəgi uuda
 woman broke pot
it was the woman that broke a pot
 (focus construction)

kə nəngəpaa Ada tə mii-tə ənlhəgi uuda
 COMPLETIVE greet Ada D.O.-MARKER woman-that broke pot
Ada greeted the woman that broke a pot
 (embedded relative clause)

As mentioned above, positive relative clauses also differ from type-I focus constructions in allowing the equi-NP to be pronominalized. Thus the following sentences are also possible:

- (80) *kə nee nyi ka dagəla-tə cii ku a zəmakə tə ci*
 COMPLETIVE see I to pig-that CONTINUOUS you-sing.
 NEUTRAL hunt D.O.-MARKER him
I saw the pig that you are hunting (it)

kə nəngəpaa Ada tə mii-tə ənlhəgi ki uuda
 COMPLETIVE greet Ada D.O.-MARKER woman-that broke she pot
Ada greeted the woman that (she) broke a pot

Negative relative clauses

Negative relative clauses differ from positive relative clauses in that they have the syntactic structure of declarative sentences rather than that of focus constructions. Contrast the following negative relative clauses with the positive examples given above. Note that in the negative clauses the equi-NP must still be pronominalized or deleted.

- (81) *kə nee nyi ka dagəla*
 COMPLETIVE see I to pig
I saw the pig
 (declarative sentence)

pooshi hə agi zəmakənə tə dagəla
 not you-sing. CONTINUOUS hunting D.O.-MARKER pig
you are not hunting the pig
 (declarative sentence)

kə nee nyi ka dagəla-tə pooshi hə agi zəmakənə (tə ci)
 COMPLETIVE see I to pig-that not you-sing. CONTINUOUS
 hunting (D.O.-MARKER him)
I saw the pig that you are not hunting
 (embedded relative clause)

kə nəngəpaa Ada tə minə
 COMPLETIVE greet Ada D.O.-MARKER woman
Ada greeted the woman
 (declarative sentence)

pooshi minə ənhəgi uuda
 not woman broke pot
the woman did not break a pot
 (declarative sentence)

kə nəngəpaa Ada tə mii-tə pooshi (ki) ənhəgi uuda
 COMPLETIVE greet Ada D.O.-MARKER woman-that not (she) broke pot
Ada greeted the woman that broke a pot
 (embedded relative clause)

Non-verbal predicates in relative clauses

Most non-verbal predicates may be used in relative clauses by expressing them as complements of the "helping" verbs *ɸa* 'do, make, become, be' or *ndzaa* 'sit, become, be.' (See section 3.13 for a discussion of the role of the helping verbs

with non-verbal predicates. Note that the complement of *ndzaa* is preceded by the preposition *ka*.) The verb *dā* (completive form: *dii*) may also be omitted, giving rise to a reduced relative construction.

Examples:

(82) *əndə-tə (dii) ma-gərə-kii*
 person-that (did) tall
person that is tall

əndə-tə ndzaa ka nwanwa
 person-that sat for chief
person that is a chief

ma'ii-tə (dii) a gərə
 water-that (did) at pot
water that is in the pot

əndə-tə pooshi (ci) (dii) ma-gərə-kii
 person-that not (he) (did) tall
person that is not tall

əndə-tə pooshi (ci) ndzaa ka nwanwa
 person-that not (he) sat for chief
person that is not a chief

ma'ii-tə pooshi (ci) (dii) a gərə
 water-that not (it) (did) at pot
water that is not in the pot

The existential predicates, *tə'i* and *pooshi*, (see section 3.7) and the comparative predicates, *bidə*, *gidə*, etc., (see section 3.9) occur in relative clauses with the syntax of embedded declarative sentences.

Examples:

- (83) əndə-tə tə'i minaa-kii
 person-that exists wife-his
person that has a wife
 lit. *person that there exists his wife*

əndə-tə gidə (ci) də ngyarəna
 person-that exceeds (he) with strength
person that is stronger

əndə-tə pooshi minaa-kii
 person-that not wife-his
person that does not have a wife
 lit. *person that there does not exist his wife*

əndə-tə pooshi (ci) gidə də ngyarəna
 person-that not (he) exceeds with strength
person that is not stronger

2.8 Modifying prepositional phrases

A noun phrase may be modified by a following prepositional phrase. Such modifiers may be thought of as reduced relative clauses since they are always equivalent to a corresponding relative clause in which the prepositional phrase is embedded as a predicate. (See section 2.7 for a discussion of relative clauses with embedded non-verbal predicates.)

Examples:

- (84) rəmənə a kuvə
 girl at hut
the girl in the hut

rəməə-tə d'ii a kuvə
 girl-that did at hut
the girl that is in the hut

maarə a gərə
 oil at pot
the oil in the pot

maarə-tə d'ii a gərə
 oil-that did at pot

the oil that is in the pot

uushi makə əna
 thing like this
thing like this (one)

uushi ətə d̄ii makə əna
 thing that did like this
thing that is like this (one)

To this class of constructions also belongs the modifying associative prepositional phrase (see section 3.6):

(85) minə nga Musa
 wife of Musa
wife of Musa

mii-tə d̄ii nga Musa
 wife-that did of Musa
wife that belongs to Musa

kuvə'unə nga asəngwəŋa
 skin of hyena
skin of a hyena

kuvə'uu-tə d̄ii nga asəngwəŋa
 skin-that did of hyena
skin that is of a hyena

mbəərə nga səkunwa
 bag of guinea-corn
bag of guinea-corn

mbəərə-tə d̄ii nga səkunwa
 bag-that did of guinea-corn
bag that has guinea-corn in it

Note that a special associative construction is used with inherently possessed nouns: the preposition is omitted—unless one wishes to express a non-inherent relationship—and captive class head nouns (see section 2.1.1) omit the special -nə suffix that normally occurs with such nouns.

Examples:

- (86) *ciinə* *hand*
 cii Yada *Yada's hand*
- na (-ə)* *head*
 nə Musa *Musa's head*
- gawa (-ə)* *elder sibling*
 gawu Mashi *Mashi's elder sibling*

2.9 Conjoined noun phrases

The conjunction *da*

The most commonly used noun phrase conjunction is *da* 'and.' For most Gude speakers, this conjunction is obligatorily preceded by a plural pronoun. If the first noun phrase in the pair is not already a pronoun then the pronoun *tii* 'they' is inserted before *da*. This insertion is not obligatory for some younger speakers who spend much of their time speaking Hausa—where a cognate conjunction *da* is used, but no such restriction applies.

Examples:

- (87) *Musa tii da Yada* *Musa and Yada*
 nwanwu tii da minaakii *the chief and his wife*
 ləwu tii da dafəna *meat and mush*

If the first noun phrase is a pronoun, then it must be plural. Hence pronouns lose singular-plural and gender distinctions in this position.

Examples:

- (88) *inə da Musa* *I and Musa*
 we (excl.) and Musa
- unə da nwanwu* *you (sing.) and the chief*
 you (pl.) and the chief
- tii da Yada* *he/it and Yada*
 she and Yada
 they and Yada

As with other Chadic languages (e.g., Tera and Kanakuru), the order of conjoined noun phrases is restricted: Pronouns must precede nouns, and among pronouns the order is always 1st pers., then 2nd pers., then 3rd pers.

The particle *i* may also be used preceding conjoined noun phrases where the conjunction is *da* or *ba'a*. In such cases *i* apparently adds no meaning to the conjoined noun phrases.

Examples:

- (93) *i* Musa tii da minaakii *Musa and his wife*
 i Musa ba'a minaakii *Musa and his wife*

Chapter 3. Non-verbal sentences

Many types of predicates in Gude may occur in “non-verbal” sentences. These are sentences in which there is no explicit aspect marking and no verb. Verbs and the aspectual system are discussed in chapter 4. Verbal sentences are discussed in chapter 5.

Word order

In non-verbal sentences the predicate usually precedes the subject. However, in a few cases where the predicate is complex by virtue of extra prepositional phrases or adverbials, these extra elements may optionally follow the subject. The general pattern for non-verbal sentences is as follows:

PREDICATE + SUBJECT + (optional predicate elements).

Example sentences occur throughout the following pages.

3.1 The subject marker *nə*

The subject of the non-verbal sentence is usually preceded by the special preposition *nə* which serves as a subject marker.

Examples:

- (1) *nwanwu nə Kwalii*
chief SUBJECT-MARKER Kwalii
Kwalii is a chief

Audu nə ləmә-kii
Audu SUBJECT-MARKER name-his
his name is Audu

magәrәkii nə ci
tall SUBJECT-MARKER he
he is tall

3.2 Predicate nominals

Classification (category membership) is indicated by a noun phrase in predicate position. The predicate nominal must agree with the subject in number and in semantic gender.

Examples:

- (2) nwunwu nə ci
 chief SUBJECT-MARKER he
he is a chief

meminə nə tii
 chief SUBJECT-MARKER they
they are chiefs

minə nga Musa nə ki
 wife of Musa SUBJECT-MARKER she
she is Musa's wife

makinə nga Musa nə tii
 wives of Musa SUBJECT-MARKER they
they are Musa's wives

gawaa-ki nə magərə əndə-tsa
 elder-brother-my SUBJECT-MARKER tall person-that
that tall person is my elder brother

3.3 Equational (identification) predicates

Identification is also indicated by a noun phrase in predicate position. Again the noun phrase must agree with the subject in number and in semantic gender. See section 6.1 for discussion of the role of this predicate in focus constructions.

- (3) ci nə nwanwa
 he SUBJECT-MARKER chief
It's he who is chief

(ə)tii nə meminə
 they SUBJECT-MARKER chiefs
It's they who are chiefs

magərə əndə-tsa nə gawaa-ki
 tall person-that SUBJECT-MARKER elder-brother-my
my elder brother is that tall person
 or *It's that tall person who is my elder brother*

3.4 Predicate adjectives

Simple adjectives, participles, and adjectival nouns may occur as predicates in non-verbal sentences (For more examples and further discussion see section 2.6).

Examples:

- | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (4) | <i>gusə nə minə</i> | <i>the woman is short</i> |
| | <i>mə-gusə-kii nə minə</i> | <i>the woman is short</i> |
| | <i>iirə-kii nə la</i> | <i>the cow is old</i> |
| | <i>katə'wə-kii nə kudakwa</i> | <i>the potato is raw</i> |
| | <i>undzə-kii nə gyaagya</i> | <i>the chicken is small</i> |
| | <i>uuj-kii nə gyaagyinə</i> | <i>the chickens are small</i> |
| | <i>mə-ntə-kii nə la</i> | <i>the cow is dead</i> |
| | <i>mə-bi-kii nə kada</i> | <i>the stick is broken</i> |
| | <i>nduudə nə la</i> | <i>the cow is white</i> |
| | <i>gərəsə nə hanyinə</i> | <i>the soil is damp</i> |
| | <i>buuta nə dara</i> | <i>the hat is cheap</i> |

3.5 Predicate quantifiers

Cardinal numbers and the quantifiers *laŋə* 'much, many' and *gi'u* 'little, few' may occur as predicates in non-verbal sentences (see section 2.5 for further discussion of quantifiers).

Examples:

- (5) *ənfwad nə makinə nga nwanwa*
 four SUBJECT-MARKER wives of chief
the wives of the chief are four (in number)

laŋə nə ənji də Kano
 many SUBJECT-MARKER people at Kano
the people at Kano are many

gi'u nə mara a gərə
 little SUBJECT-MARKER oil at pot
the oil in the pot is little (in quantity)

3.6 Associative predicates

Associative prepositional phrases, formed with *nga* 'of, possessed by, belonging to, part of, associated with,' may occur as predicates in non-verbal sentences (For a discussion of associative prepositional phrases as noun phrase modifiers see section 2.8).

Examples:

- (6) nga Musa nə mii-ta
 of Musa SUBJECT-MARKER woman-that
that woman (wife) is Musa's

nga asəngwəŋə nə kuvə'uu-tsə ashi ənfwa
 of hyena SUBJECT-MARKER skin-that against tree
that skin (there) on the tree is a hyena's

nga Abaawa nə rə-tə cii ku a nee
 of Abaawa SUBJECT-MARKER farm-that CONTINUOUS
 you(sing.) NEUTRAL see
that field which you see belongs to Abaawa

Note that pronouns may not occur following the preposition nga. The independent possessive pronouns (see section 2.2.2.3) are used to express the notions 'of him, belonging to him,' etc.

Examples:

- (7) naakii nə raha
 his SUBJECT-MARKER axe
the axe is his

naaki nə maɖuunə yi-tə cii ku a nee gadəvə
 mine SUBJECT-MARKER big compound-that CONTINUOUS
 you(sing.) NEUTRAL there
the big compound which you see there is mine

3.7 Existential sentences

Existential sentences are formed with the non-verbal predicates tə'i 'there is (are)...' and pooshi (or ooshi) 'there is (are) no....' These predicates always occur without aspectual marking and precede their subject noun phrases.

Examples:

- (8) tə'i nwanwu də Gyala
 EXIST chief at Gella
there is a chief at Gella

pooshi nwanwu də Gyala
 NOT-EXIST chief at Gella
there is no chief at Gella

Note that in Gude, the only way to express the English verb *have*—i.e., *possess*—is by use of the existential predicates.

Examples:

- (9) tə'i minə nga Kwalii
Kwalii has a wife
 lit. *there is a wife of Kwalii*

pooshi rə nga Yada
Yada has no farm
 lit. *there is no farm of Yada*

tə'i kuvaa-ki
I have a house
 lit. *There is a house of mine*

pooshi kwaba-tə
she has no money
 lit. *There is no money of hers*

3.8 Implicit existentials

There is a small set of commonly used existential sentences from which the existential tə'i is usually omitted. These sentences consist of a pronoun subject occurring with one of the following nouns. Examples below are given in 1st pers. sing. :

- (10) (tə'i) meegiriiki
I am thirsty
 lit. *there is my thirst*

(tə'i) madafiiki
I am hungry
 lit. *there is my hunger*

(tə'i) nwunyiiki
I am sleepy
 lit. *there is my sleep*

(tə'i) biiriiki
I need to urinate
 lit. *there is my urine*

(tə'i) ənvwiiki
I need to defecate
 lit. *there is my feces*

(tə'i) ayiiki
I am ashamed
 lit. *there is my shame*

(tə'i) gwangaaki
I am telling the truth
 lit. *there is my truth*

(tə'i) jirakənaaki
I am lying
 lit. *there is my lie*

(tə'i) da'waaki
I am lying
 lit. *there is my lie*

The first six in the above list are unusual in that they do not exhibit expected nominal morphology (see section 2.2.2). Compare the normal morphology shown in the following possessed nouns:

- (11) meegirənaaki *my thirst*
 maɖafənaaki *my hunger*
 nwnyinaaki *my sleep*
 ɖiirənaaki *my urine*
 ənvwiinaaki *my feces*
 ayiinaaki *my shame*

3.9 Comparative predicates

Comparisons may be formed either by use of the non-verbal predicates *bidə*, *gidə* (gəɖə) and *guji* or by use of the verb *palee*. These words are equivalent and mean literally to 'surpass' or 'exceed.'

bidə, *gidə* (gəɖə), and *guji* always occur in sentences without aspectual marking and precede their subjects. The object of the comparison is preceded by the preposition *acii* and the quality being compared is an abstract noun preceded by the preposition *də*, 'by means of.' The object of the comparison and/or the quality being compared may be omitted.

Examples:

- (12) bidə Kwalii acii Yada də gərənə
 gidə Kwalii acii Yada də gərənə
 guji Kwalii acii Yada də gərənə
Kwalii is taller than Yada

The word *palee*, on the other hand, is a full verb. It is an extension of the verb *palə* 'go, leave' (see discussion in section 4.7.12) and occurs with the aspectual marking common to verbs. With *palee*, the object of the comparison is preceded by *ka* rather than *acii*. (*ka* is the direct object marker occurring with the *-ee* extension.) As with the non-verbal predicates discussed above, the quality being compared is preceded by *də* and the object of the comparison and/or the quality being compared may be omitted.

Examples:

- (13) bidə Kwalii acii Yada də gərənə
 kə palee Kwalii ka Yada də gərənə
Kwalii is taller than Yada

bidə naaki acii naaku
 kə palee naaki ka naaku
mine is better than yours

gidə ndzaanə kəda'a acii jirakənə
 kə palee ndzaanə kəda'a ka jirakənə
sitting quietly is better than lying

bidə Kwalii də gərənə acii ənji Mubi patə
 kə palee Kwalii ka ənji Mubi patə də gərənə
Kwalii is the tallest person in Mubi

mərəməərə nə gərənə nga Kwalii tii da Yada
 makə nga Yada nə gərənə nga Kwalii.
 kə ndzaa gərənə nga Kwalii makə nga Yada
Kwalii is as tall as Yada

3.10 Predicate locatives

Locative phrases may occur as predicates in non-verbal sentences. Locative phrases consist of (locative) prepositional phrases and (locative) adverbials.

3.10.1 Simple locative prepositions

The locative prepositions are either simple or compound. There are only three simple (monomorphemic) locative prepositions, namely, *ga*, *də*, and *a*.

The preposition *ga*

The preposition *ga* means 'at the place of' and is similar in use to the French *chez*.

Example:

- (14) *ga Musa nə tsəəraaki*
 at-the-place-of Musa SUBJECT-MARKER hoe-my
my hoe is at Musa's place

Pronominal objects of this preposition occur as simple possessive suffixes rather than as independent pronouns (see section 2.2.2).

Examples:

- (15) *gaki* *at my place*
geenə *at our (excl.) place*
gatii *at their place*

ga phrases often occur together with an additional locative phrase.

Examples:

- (16) *asii ga Musa*
at Musa's compound
 lit. *at home at Musa's*
- gatii də vərə*
at/in their village
 lit. *at their place at the village*
- gaaki a kuvə*
in my hut
 lit. *at my place in the hut*

The preposition *də*

The preposition *də* means 'at' or 'in' and is used (in this sense) only with proper names of places.

Examples:

- (17) *də* Gwaleemə nə nwanwu nga Nwuvi
 at Gwalem SUBJECT-MARKER chief of Lamurde
the chief of Lamurde is at Gwaleem

də Məriɲya nə raakii
 at Mirinya SUBJECT-MARKER farm-his
his farm is at Mirinya

The only exceptions to the above rule are the common phrases *də bili* ‘*in the bush (wilderness)*’ and *də vərə* ‘*in the (particular) area/region.*’ Note that the final *-nə* suffixes of these captive class nouns, *bilinə* ‘*bush*’ and *vəranə* ‘*village*’ (see section 2.1.1), are dropped following this preposition. (See section 5.4 for discussion of *də* with verbs of motion.)

The preposition *a*

The preposition *a* means ‘*at, in, or on*’ as indicated by context, and occurs with a wide range of common nouns denoting “places.” It is never used with proper place names in this static locative sense—*də* is used instead, see above—and it is never used with pronominal objects. Note in the examples below that when the object of this preposition is a single unmodified noun the underlying root form occurs rather than the citation form—i.e., free class nouns do not have their final vowels changed to /a:/ and captive class nouns occur without their final *-nə* suffixes (see section 2.1.1).

Examples:

- | | | |
|------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (18) | <i>a</i> kuvə | <i>in the hut</i> |
| | <i>a</i> ginwu | <i>on the mountain</i> |
| | <i>a</i> babara | <i>on the plain, out in the open</i> |
| | <i>a</i> (ə)nfu | <i>in the tree</i> |
| | <i>a</i> gərə | <i>at the water hole</i> |
| | <i>a</i> luuma | <i>at market</i> |
| | <i>a</i> rəgwa | <i>on the road</i> |
| | <i>a</i> gu’u | <i>in the hole</i> |
| | <i>a</i> gwama | <i>in the corral</i> |
| | <i>a</i> yinwu | <i>in the cave</i> |
| | <i>a</i> ha | <i>in/at the place</i> |
| | <i>a</i> vərə | <i>in the region</i> |
| | <i>a</i> nguurə | <i>in the (big) town</i> |
| | <i>a</i> uuda [ooda] | <i>in the pot</i> |

3.10.2 Compound locative prepositions with a

Other locative prepositions are formed by compounding the simple preposition *a* with certain nouns—mostly body parts. The following is a list of these compound prepositions: (Note the forms *tsa*, *ḡii*, *tangala* do not occur independently.)

| (19) | locative noun | | preposition | |
|------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|---|
| | <i>ba'a</i> | <i>back</i> | <i>aba'a</i> | <i>in back of</i> |
| | <i>ḡii</i> | (?) | <i>aḡii</i> | <i>near, close to</i> |
| | <i>ciinə</i> | <i>hand</i> | <i>acii</i> | <i>in the possession of, because of</i> |
| | <i>ḡinə</i> | <i>eye</i> | <i>agi</i> | <i>in the midst of, among</i> |
| | <i>ha</i> | <i>place</i> | <i>ahadahada</i> | <i>between</i> |
| | <i>kunwaciinə</i> | <i>forehead</i> | <i>akunwacii</i> | <i>in front of</i> |
| | <i>ma</i> | <i>mouth</i> | <i>ama</i> | <i>at the edge of</i> |
| | <i>na</i> | <i>head</i> | <i>anə</i> | <i>on top of</i> |
| | <i>purəḡa</i> | <i>side</i> | <i>apurəḡa</i> | <i>beside</i> |
| | <i>səka (-ə)</i> | <i>stomach</i> | <i>asəkə</i> | <i>in, inside of</i> |
| | <i>shishinə</i> | <i>body</i> | <i>ashi</i> | <i>against</i> |
| | <i>tangala</i> | (?) | <i>atangala</i> | <i>across from</i> |
| | <i>tsa</i> | (?) | <i>atsa</i> | <i>under</i> |
| | <i>uura</i> | <i>neck</i> | <i>oora</i> | <i>at the entrance to</i> |

Note that, as with other single noun objects of the preposition *a* (see section 3.10.1), the underlying root form of the noun occurs rather than the citation form—i.e., free class nouns do not have their final vowels changed to /a:/ and captive class nouns occur without their final *-nə* suffixes (see section 2.1.1).

Pronominal objects of these compound prepositions occur as simple possessive suffixes rather than as independent pronouns (see section 2.2.2).

Examples:

| | | |
|------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| (20) | <i>aba'aki</i> | <i>in back of me</i> |
| | <i>aḡiiku</i> | <i>near you</i> |
| | <i>aciikii</i> | <i>because of him</i> |
| | <i>anatə</i> | <i>on (top of) her</i> |
| | <i>agyaamə</i> | <i>among us (incl.)</i> |
| | <i>agyiinə</i> | <i>among us (excl.)</i> |
| | <i>agyaanwu</i> | <i>among us (dual)</i> |
| | <i>agyuunə</i> | <i>among you (pl.)</i> |
| | <i>agitii</i> | <i>among them</i> |

The only stem modification noted is a shortening of the final vowel in *aḡii*, *acii*, and *akunwacii* before *-tə* and *-tii*, as in the following paradigm:

| | | |
|------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| (21) | aciiki | <i>because of me</i> |
| | aciiku | <i>because of you (sing.)</i> |
| | aciikii | <i>because of him</i> |
| | acitə | <i>because of her</i> |
| | acii'amə | <i>because of us (incl.)</i> |
| | acii'inə | <i>because of us (excl.)</i> |
| | acii'anwu | <i>because of us (dual)</i> |
| | acii'unə | <i>because of you (pl.)</i> |
| | acitii | <i>because of them</i> |

3.10.3 Locative adverbs

The following locative adverbs may occur in predicate position:

| | | |
|------|-------------|----------------------|
| (22) | ganə | <i>here</i> |
| | gatə | <i>there</i> |
| | davə | <i>there</i> |
| | ga dəvə | <i>there</i> |
| | (da) dagərə | <i>below</i> |
| | (da) dagi | <i>above</i> |
| | agi | <i>outside</i> |
| | asək(ə) | <i>inside</i> |
| | apaa | <i>on the ground</i> |
| | asii | <i>at home</i> |
| | də ciizəmə | <i>on the right</i> |
| | də madzəna | <i>on the left</i> |

3.11 Other non-verbal predicates

The deictic forms waa-, wii-, and wu-

The special deictic forms waa-, wii-, and wu- occur in structurally unique non-verbal constructions. They combine with the demonstrative suffixes -nə (-na) 'this,' -tsə (-tsa) 'that (near),' and -tə (-ta) 'that (far)' (see section 2.2.3.1) to form predicates meaning 'here is...,' 'there (near) is...,' and 'there (far) is...,' respectively. waa- tends to be used more with animate subjects, and wii- tends to be used more with inanimate subjects. wu- is used freely with both. The subject marker nə does not occur with these special predicates. (See section 6.2.3 for a discussion of the structurally similar question form maa- 'where is')

Examples:

- (23) waa-nə Musa *here is Musa*
 waa-tsə Musa *there (near) is Musa*
 waa-tə Musa *there (far) is Musa*
- wii-nə kada *here is a stick*
 wii-tsə kada *there (near) is a stick*
 wii-tə kada *there (far) is a stick*
- wu-nə zhiina *here is a squirrel*
 wu-tsə zhiina *there (near) is a squirrel*
 wu-tə zhiina *there (far) is a squirrel*

Only waa- occurs with pronouns. Note that pronoun subjects precede the demonstrative, but other subjects follow it.

Examples:

- (24) waa-nyi-na *here I am*
 waa-hə-na *here you (sing.) are*
 waa-ci-na *here he is*
 waa-ki-na *here she is*
 waamə-na *here we (incl.) are*
 weenə-na *here we (excl.) are*
 waanwu-na *here we (dual) are*
 woonə-na *here you (pl.) are*
 waa-tii-na *here they are*

The subject may also be omitted if it can be supplied from context.

- (25) waa-na *here (he is)*
 wii-tsa *there (near) (it is)*
 wu-ta *there (far) (it is)*

When the demonstrative occurs at the end of the sentence, it may be reduplicated without changing the meaning.

Examples:

- (26) waa-nyi-nə-na *here I am*
 waa-hə-tsə-tsa *there (near) you (sing.) are*
 waa-ci-tə-ta *there (far) he is*
- waa-nə-na *here (he is)*
 wii-tsə-tsa *there (near) (it is)*
 wu-tə-ta *there (far) (it is)*

3.12 Negation in non-verbal sentences

The negation of a non-verbal sentence is formed by adding the negative marker *pooshi* to the front the sentence and by moving the subject into position immediately after the negative marker. Note that the subject marker *nə* is not used after the negative marker. See section 3.7 for discussion of negation with existential predicates, section 4.4 for discussion of negation in verbal sentences, and section 6.1.3 for discussion of negation in focus constructions.

(27) *nwanwu nə Musa*
 chief SUBJECT-MARKER Musa
Musa is a chief

pooshi Musa nwanwa
 NEGATIVE Musa chief
Musa is not a chief

tufə nə tii
 five SUBJECT-MARKER they
they are five (in number)

pooshi tii tufə
 NEGATIVE they five
they are not five (in number)

dizə nə kəbənə nga dagwa
 red SUBJECT-MARKER gown of young-man
the young man's gown is red

pooshi kəbənə nga dagwa dizə
 NEGATIVE gown of young-man red
the young man's gown is not red

a gu'u nə zhiina
 at hole SUBJECT-MARKER squirrel
the squirrel is in the hole

pooshi zhiina a gu'u
 NEGATIVE squirrel at hole
the squirrel is not in the hole
 (= *there is no squirrel in the hole*)

3.13 Transforming non-verbal sentences into verbal sentences

Non-verbal sentences may be transformed into verbal sentences by expressing the non-verbal predicates as complements of the “helping” verbs *dā* ‘do, make, become, be’ or *ndzaa* ‘sit, become, be.’ Such verbal sentences formed from these helping verbs occur with the full range of verbal aspects discussed in sections 4.1 and 4.2. The existential predicate, *tə’i* (see section 3.7), is omitted when a helping verb is used, and the comparative predicates (see section 3.9) may not be used with helping verbs at all. (Note that a nominal complement of *ndzaa* is preceded by the preposition *ka*.)

Examples:

- (28) *gawaaki nə Kwalii*
kə d’ii Kwalii gawaaki
kə ndzaa Kwalii ka gawaaki
Kwalii is my brother

agi kuzənə nə rəhunə
kə d’ii rəhunə agi kuzənə
kə ndzaa rəhunə agi kuzənə
the snake is in the grass

tə’i ma’inə a gərə
kə d’ii ma’inə a gərə
kə ndzaa ma’inə a gərə
there is water at the river

(See section 2.7 for a discussion of the role of the helping verbs with non-verbal predicates in relative clauses.)

Chapter 4. Verbs and the verbal system

4.1 Aspect

Gude does not have a system of tense marking as is found in English. When needed, the time reference (setting) of a sentence may be indicated by a temporal adverb. Gude does mark, however, three aspects: completive, continuous, and potential. Aspect marking for non-focus constructions is discussed in sections 4.1.1 through 4.1.3. For a discussion of aspect marking in focus constructions, see section 4.1.4.

4.1.1 Completive aspect

Completive (perfective) aspect indicates that the action of the sentence has been completed or accomplished as of the moment under consideration. The actual time used for the point of reference varies according to the context. For example, (1) could be translated into English as any of the following:

- (1) *kə kii Musa faara*
COMPLETIVE throw Musa stone
Musa has thrown a stone
Musa had thrown a stone
Musa threw a stone

When the main verb of the sentence denotes a state rather than an action, completive aspect may also be used to indicate that the state holds at the moment under consideration. Thus, (2) has the various possible translations indicated below:

- (2) *kə nee Musa ka faara*
COMPLETIVE see Musa D.O.-MARKER stone
Musa sees a stone
Musa has seen a stone
Musa had seen a stone
Musa saw a stone

In positive non-focus constructions, completive aspect is indicated by the particle *kə* which occurs as the initial element in the sentence and immediately precedes the verb, as in the following sentence:

- (3) *kə kii Musa kada*
 COMPLETIVE throw Musa stick
Musa threw/has thrown a stick

If the verb is a simple unextended root, i.e., does not have attached to it one of the derivational extension suffixes (see section 4.7), then the verb is redundantly marked to indicate completive aspect. The form that this marking takes depends on the final vowel of the verb root in accordance with the rules below.

Completive marking for /a/ final roots

Verb roots ending in a final short low vowel /a/ are marked for completive aspect by replacing the final vowel by /ii/, underlying /əyə/.

Examples:

| | | | |
|-----|-------|-----------------|----------------|
| (4) | root | completive form | |
| | ka | kii | <i>throw</i> |
| | naana | naanii | <i>refuse</i> |
| | tala | talii | <i>sharpen</i> |
| | baana | baanii | <i>count</i> |

Completive marking for /ə/ final roots

Verb roots ending in a final short high vowel /ə/ are marked for completive aspect by palatalizing one or more syllables of the root.

Which syllables will be palatalized is determined by the following set of rules:

1. Palatalization is obligatory for all sibilants (ts, dz, s, z), glottalized coronals (dʰ), and coronal nasals (n) everywhere in the root.
2. If none of those consonants are in the root, then palatalization is optional for one other coronal consonant (t, d, or r). (The final one is preferred).
3. If there are no coronal consonants in the root, then palatalization is optional for one other consonant. (The final one is preferred).
4. Optionally, a second consonant may be palatalized. (Again the final one is preferred).
5. Palatalization never applies to the voiced velar continuant (gh) or the glottal stop (ʔ).

(See section 4.7.2 for the description of a similar strategy used to form the motion to speaker extension. In that strategy, rules 2 and 3 are obl. rather than opt.)

Examples:

| | | | |
|-----|--------|-----------------|-------------------|
| (5) | root | completive form | |
| | alə | ali | <i>search for</i> |
| | dəbarə | dəbyari | <i>crawl</i> |
| | dəgə | digə | <i>hit</i> |
| | sərə | shirə | <i>fry</i> |

Completive marking for /a'a/ final roots

Verb roots ending in -a'a /a'a/ do not add -ii as one might expect, but rather undergo internal palatalization.

| | | | |
|-----|--------|-----------------|--------------------|
| (6) | root | completive form | |
| | dza'a | ja'a | <i>close eyes</i> |
| | na'a | nya'a | <i>lick</i> |
| | paka'a | pakya'a | <i>try hard</i> |
| | təba'a | təbya'a | <i>press flat</i> |
| | tša'a | ca'a | <i>tie tightly</i> |

Completive marking for /a:/ final roots

There are only two verb roots ending in a long low vowel, /a:/. These roots are not marked for completive at all:

| | | | |
|-----|-------|-----------------|--------------------|
| (7) | root | completive form | |
| | baa | baa | <i>sleep</i> |
| | ndzaa | ndzaa | <i>sit, become</i> |

Irregular completive marking

One verb has a suppletive form for the completive:

| | | | |
|-----|------|-----------------|-----------|
| (8) | root | completive form | |
| | dzə | gi | <i>go</i> |

Another verb, vii *give*, has no separate completive form (see discussion of və in the dictionary).

4.1.2 Continuous aspect

Continuous (imperfective) aspect indicates that the action of the sentence is (was or will be) in progress or has not been completed as of the moment under consideration.

Example:

- (9) *agi ka-nə nə Musa faara*
 CONTINUOUS throw SUBJ-MARKER Musa stone
Musa is (was, will be) throwing a stone
 lit. *Musa is in throwing a stone*

In non-focus constructions, continuous aspect is indicated by use of the verbal noun (which is formed from the simple verb root plus the nominalizing suffix *-nə*) preceded by the preposition *agi*, as the marker of continuous aspect. Elsewhere *agi* means *in* or *among*. (See section 2.1.2.1 for discussion of verbal nouns.)

In slow speech, the subject of the sentence is preceded by the subject marker *nə* (which elides with the preceding *-nə* in fast speech). This pattern suggests the same superficial sentence form as in non-verbal sentences (see section 3.1). One way in which this pattern differs from the pattern of pure non-verbal sentences is that the subject does not follow at the end after all of the elements of the logical predicate, but is rather the first item to follow the verbal noun—i.e., a VSO word order is manifested.

4.1.3 Potential aspect

Potential aspect indicates that the action or state described by the sentence can be potentially realized sometime in the future if the proper enabling conditions are met. Potential aspect is used to express future predictions, future possibilities, and generic statements.

Example:

- (10) *ka ka-nə nə Musa faara*
 POTENTIAL throw SUBJ-MARKER Musa stone
Musa will throw a stone
Musa may throw a stone
Musa is a potential stone thrower

In non-focus constructions, potential aspect is indicated by a construction which is parallel to that used for continuous aspect (see section 4.1.2 above). In this case however, the preposition *ka* precedes the verbal noun as the marker of potential aspect. Elsewhere the preposition *ka* means *to*, *for* or *at*.

Sometimes—but very rarely—a particle *də* follows *ka*. My teachers were never able to agree as to what meaning—if any—*də* added to the expression of potential aspect.

Example:

- (11) *ka (də) ka-nə nə Musa faara*
 POTENTIAL (?) throw SUBJ-MARKER Musa stone
Musa will (or may) throw a stone

Some constraints on verbal nouns

Interestingly, the verbal nouns used in the expression of continuous and potential aspects in non-focus constructions—i.e., the forms discussed in sections 4.1.2 and 4.1.3—may never incorporate a derivational extension suffix (see section 4.7). For example, *lhəba-nə sweeping* and *lhəba-gi-nə sweeping up (completely)* are both well-formed verbal nouns, but (12) is a well-formed sentence and (13) is not.

- (12) GOOD: *agi lhəba-nə nə Musa yaa-kii*
 CONTINUOUS sweeping SUBJ-MARKER Musa compound-his
Musa is sweeping his compound
- (13) BAD: *agi lhəba-gi-nə nə Musa yaa-kii*
Musa is sweeping up his compound

The ill-formedness of (13) does not derive from any prohibition against the use of extension suffixes per se with continuous or potential aspect. (I understand that such a prohibition may exist in other Chadic languages, such as Higi.) Extension suffixes are quite acceptable with continuous or potential aspect in focus constructions, in which verbal nouns are not used (see section 4.1.4).

Examples:

- (14) *Musa ci a lhəba-gi yaa-kii*
 Musa CONTINUOUS sweep up compound-his
It's Musa who is sweeping up his compound
- (15) *wu ci a lhəba-gi kwa*
 who CONTINUOUS sweep up Q
who is sweeping up?

4.1.4 Aspect in focus constructions

As in other Chadic languages, Gude has an aspect marking system for focus constructions that differs from that used in other non-focus sentences. This aspect

marking system is also used in relative clauses and in word (“wh”) questions. For a fuller discussion of focus constructions see section 6.1.

Completive

Completive aspect is marked in focus constructions without the use of any particle. The completive form of the verb is used however.

Examples:

- (16) əndə tə kii faara nə Musa
 person that threw stone SUBJ-MARKER Musa
Musa is the person who threw the stone
- (17) wu kii faara kwa?
 who throw stone Q
who threw the stone?

Continuous

Continuous aspect is marked by the particle *ci* preceding subject position and by a particle *a* (perhaps the neutral aspect marker?) preceding the verb.

Examples:

- (18) əndə tə ci a ka faara nə Musa
 person that CONTINUOUS NEUTRAL throw stone SUBJ-MARKER Musa
Musa is the person who is throwing the stone
- (19) wu ci a ka faara kwa?
 who CONTINUOUS NEUTRAL throw stone Q
who is throwing the stone?

Potential

Potential aspect is marked by the use of the particle *nə* preceding subject position and by the particle *a* preceding the verb. This construction is parallel in form to that of the continuous aspect illustrated above.

Examples:

- (20) əndə tə nə a ka faara nə Musa
 person that POTENTIAL NEUTRAL throw stone SUBJ-MARKER Musa
Musa is the person who will throw the stone

- (21) wu nə a ka faara kwa?
 who POTENTIAL NEUTRAL throw stone Q
who will throw the stone?

4.2 Neutral aspect (lack of aspect)

There is a category of sentence in Gude which for purposes of exposition I would like to refer to as displaying *neutral* aspect. This neutral aspect is actually lack of overt aspectual marking.

Example:

- (22) Musa a sa ma'inə
 Musa NEUTRAL drink water
(that) Musa drink water

Note that in the case of neutral aspect the subject precedes the aspect marker and the verb. Hence, SVO word order is manifested. The marker of neutral aspect (or more accurately, the marker of lack of aspect) is an *a* which usually (but not always) elides with the preceding vowel so as to be heard as [a:]. The verb form used with neutral aspect is an unmarked stem (with or without extension suffixes).

The translation of neutral aspect depends on the context in which it is used as explained in the following sections.

4.2.1 Sequential use of neutral aspect

In narrative discourse, the first sentence in a paragraph (logically coherent sequence of sentences) normally has explicit aspectual marking and sometimes temporal adverbs as well. This first sentence has the effect of establishing the temporal and aspectual setting for the whole paragraph. All of the subsequent sentences in that paragraph will be in the neutral aspect. These sentences in neutral aspect are understood as if they were marked for the same aspect as the lead sentence. This principle is illustrated in the following example paragraphs:

- (23) kə shi Musa.
 COMPLETIVE come Musa
 ci a sa ma'inə.
 he NEUTRAL drink water
 ci a palə.
 he NEUTRAL go
*Musa came. He drank some water.
 (Then) He went (off on his way).*

- (24) ka shi-nə nə Musa.
 POTENTIAL come SUBJ-MARKER Musa
 ci a sa ma'inə.
 he NEUTRAL drink water
 ci a palə.
 he NEUTRAL go
*Musa will come. (Then) he will drink some water.
 (And then) he will go (off on his way).*

4.2.2 Subjunctive use of neutral aspect

Neutral aspect is also used in some embedded clauses. In many of these cases, English uses a corresponding infinitive construction or a subjunctive.

Examples:

- (25) kə gi Musa ci a alə ma'inə
Musa went (in order) to find water
- (26) kə kira Musa ma'inə ka guvakii a sa
Musa brought water (in order) that his friend drink (it)
- (27) ka uudənə nə nyi ka Musa a shi
I want Musa to come
- (28) kə ngwali nyi acii bwaya a shi
I fear (am afraid) that a leopard (may) come

4.3 Habitual (past-continuous)

In addition to the primary aspects (completive, continuous, potential), Gude has a means of expressing past-habitual (or past-continuous) aspect. This is done by embedding a sentence with neutral aspect as the subject complement of a special verb, *nji*. This verb only occurs in the completive aspect, and has no corresponding verbal noun.

Examples:

- (29) kə *nji* Musa a zəmakə dagəla
 COMPLETIVE used-to Musa NEUTRAL hunt pig
It used to be the case that Musa hunted pigs
 or, more idiomatically, *Musa used to hunt pigs*
- (30) kə *nji* Musa a ndzaa də Kano
 COMPLETIVE used-to Musa NEUTRAL sit at Kano
Musa used to live in Kano

- (31) *kə nji tə'i minə nga Musa*
 COMPLETIVE used-to exist wife of Musa
Musa used to have a wife

4.4 Negation

4.4.1 Simple negation

The normal negation of an indicative sentence is formed by adding the negative marker *pooshi* to the front of the sentence and by moving the subject into the position following *pooshi*. (*ooshi* is more commonly used in the Lamurde dialect, *pa* in some upper dialect areas.) Note that *pooshi* also means 'nothing,' < *pa* 'NEGATIVE' + *uushi* 'thing.' *pooshi* is also used as a non-verbal predicate meaning 'there is (are) no....' (See section 3.7). A few other changes occur: (1) *kə*, the particle marking completive aspect, is not used, and (2) *nə*, the subject marker which precedes the subject in the continuous and potential aspects, is not used either. Below are examples of negation in verbal sentences. (See section 3.12 for examples of negation in non-verbal sentences and section 6.3.1 for examples of negation in focus constructions.)

Completive

- (32) *kə kii Musa faara*
 COMPLETIVE throw Musa stone
Musa threw a stone
- (33) *pooshi Musa kii faara*
 NEGATIVE Musa threw stone
Musa did not throw a stone

Continuous

- (34) *agi ka-nə nə Musa faara*
 CONTINUOUS throw SUBJ-MARKER Musa stone
Musa is throwing a stone
- (35) *pooshi Musa agi ka-nə faara*
 NEGATIVE Musa CONTINUOUS throw stone
Musa is not throwing a stone

Potential

- (36) *ka ka-nə nə Musa faara*
 POTENTIAL throw SUBJ-MARKER Musa stone
Musa will throw a stone

- (37) pooshi Musa ka ka-nə faara
 NEGATIVE Musa POTENTIAL throw stone
Musa will not throw a stone

4.4.2 Alternative completive negation

There is an alternative way of forming the negation of the completive aspect. This is done by prefixing *ma-* and suffixing *-mə* to the verb stem. The completive marker *kə* is not used and the verb stem undergoes no internal palatalization. This alternative form occurs very rarely. Compare the example (38) with the normal, more commonly used, (33) above.

Examples:

- (38) *ma-ka-mə* Musa faara
Musa did not throw a stone
- (39) *ma-dzə-mə* Musa
Musa did not go
- (40) *ma-lhəba-gi-mə* Musa
Musa did not sweep up

4.4.3 Negative of refusal

There is a special negation form which is used only to express or describe a refusal. In form this negation resembles a sentence in neutral aspect but is preceded by a special negative particle, *pə* (*ə* in the Lamurde dialect). Also, possible subjects are restricted to pronouns.

Examples:

- (41) *pə nyi a dzə*
 NEGATIVE I NEUTRAL go
I won't go! or I refuse to go!
- (42) *pə ci a vala*
 NEGATIVE he NEUTRAL help
he (absolutely) refuses to help

4.5 Imperatives

Positive requests may be expressed by imperative verb forms and by hortatives. Negative requests are only expressed by hortatives.

Singular imperatives

Singular imperatives are formed by suffixing *-wu* to the simple verb root.

Examples:

| (43) | root | singular imperative | |
|------|-------|---------------------|------------------------|
| | ka | ka-wu | <i>throw</i> |
| | baana | baana-wu | <i>count</i> |
| | adə | adə-wu | <i>eat (soft food)</i> |
| | hə | hə-wu | <i>shoot</i> |

However, if the verb stem is complex (consisting of a root plus derivational extension), then the stem itself is used for the singular imperative without *-wu*.

Examples:

| (44) | stem | singular imperative | |
|------|---------|---------------------|---------------------|
| | ka-gi | ka-gi | <i>throw away</i> |
| | ka-gərə | ka-gərə | <i>throw down</i> |
| | adə-cii | adə-cii | <i>eat a little</i> |
| | adə-gi | adə-gi | <i>eat (it) up</i> |

Plural imperatives

Plural imperatives are formed by suffixing *-mə* to the verb stem (whether simple or complex).

Examples:

| (45) | stem | plural imperative | |
|------|---------|-------------------|---------------------|
| | ka | ka-mə | <i>throw</i> |
| | baana | baana-mə | <i>count</i> |
| | adə | adə-mə | <i>eat</i> |
| | hə | hə-mə | <i>shoot</i> |
| | ka-gi | ka-gi-mə | <i>throw away</i> |
| | ka-gərə | ka-gərə-mə | <i>throw down</i> |
| | adə-cii | adə-cii-mə | <i>eat a little</i> |
| | adə-gi | adə-gi-mə | <i>eat (it) up</i> |

The following five verbs have been found to have irregular imperative forms:

| (46) stem | sing. imperative | pl. imperative | |
|-------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|
| dzə | də-wu | də-mə | <i>go</i> |
| shi | shi-wa | shoo-mə | <i>come</i> |
| dəla-gi | dəla-gi-wu | dəla-gi-mə | <i>push</i> |
| dərə-gi | dərə-gi-wu | dərə-gi-mə | <i>sell</i> |
| moomorii-gi | moomorii-gi-wu | moomorii-gi-mə | <i>tantalize</i> |

4.6 Hortatives

Hortatives are subjunctive requests. They are used extensively in Gude to give commands, make suggestions, express wishes, pronounce blessings, etc. The negative hortative is the only means of expressing a negative command.

Positive hortatives

The usual way of forming the positive hortative is to add *takwa*, *wa*, or *a* before a sentence in neutral aspect.

Examples:

- (47) *takwa nyi a dzə*
 HORTATIVE I NEUTRAL go
may it be the case that I go
 (used to inform your host that you are leaving now)
- (48) *wa əntanfu a vala tə hə*
 HORTATIVE God NEUTRAL help you
may God help you (a blessing)
- (49) *a hə a dzə əbii Musa*
 HORTATIVE you NEUTRAL go near Musa
go to Musa's place

Less commonly, the positive hortative can be formed from a plus a neutral aspect sentence in which the subject follows the verb. Compare (50) with (49) above.

- (50) *a dzə hə əbii Musa*
 HORTATIVE go you near Musa
go to Musa's place

Negative hortatives

The negative hortative is formed by adding the negative marker *ga* (*gə* in the Lamurde dialect) to a sentence in the neutral aspect.

Examples:

- (51) *ga hə a wazə ganə*
 NEGATIVE YOU NEUTRAL make-noise here
don't make noise here!
- (52) *ga tii a ka faariinə*
 NEGATIVE they NEUTRAL throw stones
may they not throw stones
- (53) *ga taakwa a ndzaa da hə*
 NEGATIVE trouble NEUTRAL sit with you
may trouble not be with you (a blessing)

4.7 Verbal extensions

In Gude, as in related Chadic languages, verbs may be derived from other verbs by the use of derivational modifications. In Chadic linguistic studies these derivational modifications have traditionally been called *extensional suffixes* or simply *extensions*.

Gude has 13 derivational extensions:

| Ref.no. | Form | Meaning |
|---------|---------------|---------------------------------|
| E1. | — | <i>iterative action</i> |
| E2. | — | <i>motion to speaker</i> |
| E3. | <i>gərə</i> | <i>motion downward</i> |
| E4. | <i>gi</i> | <i>motion upward</i> |
| E5. | <i>və</i> | <i>motion to specific place</i> |
| E6. | <i>tə</i> | <i>cause to happen</i> |
| E7. | <i>gi</i> | <i>do completely</i> |
| E8. | <i>paa</i> | <i>do completely (?)</i> |
| E9. | <i>shi</i> | <i>do to each other</i> |
| E10. | <i>cii</i> | <i>do a little</i> |
| E11. | <i>(VV)nə</i> | <i>pause and do</i> |
| E12. | <i>ma</i> | <i>take away by theft</i> |
| E13. | <i>ee</i> | <i>(?)</i> |

Two of these extensions (E1 and E2) involve internal changes in the verb root itself, and the rest (E3–E13) are simple suffixes.

Predictability of meaning

Some extensions alter the meaning of the verb in a predictable way, in which case the resulting derived verb need not be listed separately in the dictionary. Other extensions alter meaning in an unpredictable way, in which case the derived verb must be listed as a separate entry in the dictionary.

Predictability of occurrence (productivity)

Some extensions occur freely (are productive) with verbs of a given semantic class. Others do not occur freely (are non-productive). A full description of the language would require that verbs derived by non-productive extensions be listed in the dictionary. Productive extensions tend to alter the meaning of the verb in a predictable way. Non-productive extensions tend to alter meaning in a less predictable way.

4.7.1 Iterative action

This extension (ref. no. E1) is used to indicate that the action of the verb is performed more than once. Thus it is used with a plural subject, as in (54), or with a singular subject when the action of the verb is performed repeatedly, as in (55).

(54) *kə məətə tii* *they died*

(55) *kə dəəgə ci* *he beat him (repeatedly)*

The following four allomorphic rules describe how verbs are marked for this extension:

(R1) Reduplication of monosyllabic roots

$$\emptyset \rightarrow C_1V_1 / +_C_1V_1+ \quad (\text{obl.}), \text{ where } + \text{ is a morpheme boundary.}$$

(R2) Vowel lowering

$$V \rightarrow -HI / +C_CV \quad (\text{obl.})$$

-HI

(R3) Vowel lengthening

$$V \rightarrow +LONG / +C_CV \quad (\text{obl.})$$

(R4) Reduplication in polysyllabic roots

$$\emptyset \rightarrow \underset{-\text{LONG}}{C_1V_1} / + \underset{+\text{LONG}}{C_1V_1} C_2V_2 \quad (\text{opt., rarely applies})$$

Ordering: (R3) must follow (R1).

(R4) must follow (R2) and (R3).

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|--------------------|------------------|
| (56) | la | cut | laala | cut repeatedly |
| | səba | drive | saaba / sasaaba | drive repeatedly |
| | dzəbə | stab | dzəəbə / dzədzəbə | stab repeatedly |
| | kula | fall | kwaala / kwakwaala | fall repeatedly |

Verbs that begin with /ə/ are exceptions to the above rules. The following verbs have been found to have irregular iterative action extensions:

| | | | |
|------|--------|-----------|----------|
| (57) | əbu | bubble | həbu |
| | əburə | be full | həburə |
| | ədə | grind | hədə |
| | əji | pour | həji |
| | ələ | pull | ngələ |
| | ənə | repeat | mənə |
| | əncidə | spit | ngəcidə |
| | əndzə | scrape | ngəəndzə |
| | ənlhə | shatter | ngəəlhə |
| | ənsə | dig up | ngəəsə |
| | əntə | die | məntə |
| | əntə | pinch off | ngəəntə |
| | əsə | catch | kəəsə |
| | ətsa'u | strain | kəətsə'u |

4.7.2 Motion to speaker

This extension (ref. no. E2) is used with verbs of motion to indicate that the motion is directed toward the speaker. When used with non-motion verbs, the extension indicates that following the action of the verb root something or someone came to the location of the speaker.

The extension is manifested by (1) changing the final vowel of the root to /a/ and by (2) palatalizing one or more syllables of the root.

In monosyllabic roots, palatalization is obligatory—even for labiovelarized consonants.

In polysyllabic roots, one or more syllables will palatalize according to a strategy similar to the one outlined in section 4.1.1 which is used for completive aspect marking of /ə/ final verb roots. The only difference is that the motion to speaker extension requires that at least one syllable palatalize. Hence, rules 2 and 3 of section 4.1.1 are obligatory for motion to speaker marking.

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|------|---------|-------|----------------|
| (58) | la | cut | lya | cut and come |
| | hə | shoot | hya | shoot here |
| | səba | drive | shiba | drive here |
| | kula | fall | kulya | fall here |
| | pa'a | close | pya'a | close and come |
| | ləwu | receive | liwa | receive here |
| | təwu | cry | kiwa | cry and come |

The following verbs have been found to have irregular motion to speaker extensions:

| | | | |
|------|--------------|------|------------------------------|
| (59) | wii /wəyə/ | walk | waya |
| | hwii /hwəyə/ | run | hwaya |
| | kədə'i | beg | kəgya |
| | huwu | echo | huwya |
| | təmə | fish | kyaama (combined E1 and E2?) |

4.7.3 Combination of iterative action and motion to speaker

Extensions E1 and E2 may occur simultaneously. The allomorphic rules presented in sections 4.7.1 and 4.7.2 describe how verbs are marked for this combination.

Examples:

| | | |
|------|------------|-------------------------|
| (60) | la | cut |
| | laala | cut repeatedly |
| | lya | cut and come |
| | laalya | cut repeatedly and come |
| | saba | drive |
| | saaba | drive repeatedly |
| | sasaaba | drive repeatedly |
| | shiba | drive here |
| | shaaba | drive repeatedly here |
| | shashaaba | drive repeatedly here |
| | kula | fall |
| | kwaala | fall repeatedly |
| | kwakwaala | fall repeatedly |
| | kulya | fall here |
| | kwaalya | fall repeatedly here |
| | kwakwaalya | fall repeatedly here |

4.7.4 Locative extensions

4.7.4.1 -gərə 'motion down or in'

This extension (ref. no. E3) is used with verbs of motion to indicate that the motion is directed downward or inward.

4.7.4.2 -gi 'motion up or out'

This extension (ref. no. E4) is used with verbs of motion to indicate that the motion is directed upward or outward. This suffix is homophonous with the totality suffix (E7) discussed below.

4.7.4.3 -və 'motion to a specific place'

This extension (ref. no. E5) is used with verbs of motion to indicate that the motion is directed toward a definite specific place whose location is clear from the context.

The three suffixes *-gərə*, *-gi*, *-və* may occur with the motion to speaker extension (E2). The following examples show the range of possible combinations:

| | | |
|------|-------------------|--|
| (61) | <i>ndərə</i> | <i>climb</i> (verb root) |
| | <i>ndərə-gərə</i> | <i>climb down</i> |
| | <i>ndərə-gi</i> | <i>climb up</i> |
| | <i>ndərə-və</i> | <i>climb (to that place)</i> |
| | <i>ndira</i> | <i>climb (toward speaker)</i> |
| | <i>ndira-gərə</i> | <i>climb down (toward speaker)</i> |
| | <i>ndira-gi</i> | <i>climb up (toward speaker)</i> |
| | <i>ndira-və</i> | <i>climb (to that place, toward speaker)</i> |

| | | |
|--|------------------|---|
| | <i>dəmə</i> | <i>go in or out</i> (verb root) |
| | <i>dəmə-gərə</i> | <i>go in</i> |
| | <i>dəmə-gi</i> | <i>go out</i> |
| | <i>dəmə-və</i> | <i>go in or out (to that place)</i> |
| | <i>gima</i> | <i>come in or out (toward speaker)</i> |
| | <i>gima-gərə</i> | <i>come in (toward speaker)</i> |
| | <i>gima-gi</i> | <i>come out (toward speaker)</i> |
| | <i>gima-və</i> | <i>come in or out (to that place, toward speaker)</i> |

These three extensions (E3, E4, E5) also occur in combination with the iterative action extension (E1) and with both iterative action (E1) and motion to speaker (E2). Examples are omitted here.

These three extensions (E2, E4, E5) also occur in the following adverbs: *da-gərə downward*, *da-gi upward* and *da-və toward that place, to there*.

4.7.5 *-tə* 'cause to happen'

This extension (ref. no. E6) is used to derive a transitive causative verb from an intransitive verb.

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|-------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
| (62) | <i>kula</i> | <i>fall</i> | <i>kula-tə</i> | <i>make fall</i> |
| | <i>rəbə</i> | <i>become wet</i> | <i>rəbə-tə</i> | <i>make wet</i> |
| | <i>shii</i> | <i>know</i> | <i>shii-tə</i> | <i>make know</i> |
| | <i>gərə</i> | <i>grow</i> | <i>gərə-tə</i> | <i>make grow</i> |

This extension may also be used redundantly with causative roots, apparently to emphasize the deliberateness of the action.

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|-------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|
| (63) | maɖə | <i>stand up</i> | maɖə-tə | <i>stand up</i> |
| | fa | <i>listen</i> | fa-tə | <i>listen</i> |
| | əsə | <i>catch</i> | əsə-tə | <i>catch</i> |
| | alə | <i>look for</i> | alə-tə | <i>look for</i> |
| | ləgwa | <i>ask</i> | ləgwa-tə | <i>ask</i> |

4.7.6 -gi 'do completely'

This extension (ref. no. E7) is used to indicate that the action of the verb is performed to completion (totally). This suffix is homophonous with the directional suffix (E4) discussed above.

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|-------|--------------|----------|-------------------------|
| (64) | lhəba | <i>sweep</i> | lhəba-gi | <i>sweep up</i> |
| | adə | <i>eat</i> | adə-gi | <i>eat up</i> |
| | ɓə | <i>break</i> | ɓə-gi | <i>break completely</i> |
| | la | <i>cut</i> | la-gi | <i>cut off</i> |
| | ka | <i>throw</i> | ka-gi | <i>throw away</i> |

This suffix is the only suffix that may occur following other suffixes. It may occur following E6, E8, and E12.

Examples:

| | | |
|------|-------------|----------------------|
| (65) | hadʌ-tə-gi | <i>fix up</i> |
| | para-tə-gi | <i>figure out</i> |
| | ləbə-tə-gi | <i>join together</i> |
| | ənya-paa-gi | <i>bring back</i> |
| | hwii-paa-gi | <i>run away</i> |
| | ɖərə-ma-gi | <i>sell</i> |
| | hərə-ma-gi | <i>steal</i> |
| | za-ma-gi | <i>lose</i> |

4.7.7 -paa 'do completely (?)'

This extension (ref. no. E8) is not productive in modern Gude and occurs only with a few verbs. Where this suffix can be determined to have meaning it often seems to indicate, like -gi (E7) above, that the action of the verb is performed to completion.

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|--------|-----------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| (66) | dəgə | <i>hit</i> | dəgə-paa | <i>beat up</i> |
| | hwii | <i>run</i> | hwii-paa | <i>run away</i> |
| | hərə | <i>steal</i> | hərə-paa | <i>steal</i> |
| | luu | <i>receive</i> | luu-paa | <i>save, rescue</i> |
| | nəngə | <i>watch</i> | nəngə-paa | <i>greet</i> |
| | ka | <i>put</i> | ka-paa | <i>put down</i> |
| | uurə | <i>throw</i> | uurə-paa | <i>throw down</i> |
| | pəra | <i>exchange</i> | pəra-paa | <i>redeem, pay ransom</i> |
| | (none) | | u-paa | <i>get, obtain</i> |

There is possibly some historical connection between this extension and the morpheme occurring in the adverb a-paa *on the ground*. (Compare the noun pana *floor, ground*.) In this regard, note that hwii-paa *run away* has the occasionally used variant hwii-panə.

4.7.8 -shi 'do to each other'

This extension (ref. no. E9) is used to indicate that the subjects stand in a reciprocal relationship with respect to the action or state denoted by the verb. This suffix transforms a transitive verb into an intransitive verb. It usually occurs in combination with the iterative action extension (E1). It never combines with incorporated indirect object pronouns (see section 5.3.2).

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|-------|----------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| (67) | ngərə | <i>marry</i> | ngərə-shi | <i>marry each other</i> |
| | fa | <i>hear</i> | fa-shi | <i>hear/understand each other</i> |
| | uudə | <i>love</i> | uudə-shi | <i>love each other</i> |
| | luu | <i>receive</i> | luu-shi | <i>contend with each other</i> |

4.7.9 -cii 'do a little'

This extension (ref. no. E10) is used to indicate that the action of the verb is performed in small amounts (incompletely) or that the object is of small amount.

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|-------|--------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| (68) | bə | <i>break</i> | bə-cii | <i>break off a little</i> |
| | gəra | <i>wait</i> | gəra-cii | <i>wait a little</i> |
| | gya | <i>fetch</i> | gya-cii | <i>fetch a little (water)</i> |
| | tsəbə | <i>eat</i> | tsəbə-cii | <i>eat a little</i> |

4.7.10 (VV)-nə 'pause and do'

This extension (ref. no. E11) indicates that some other contextually specified action is temporarily suspended before the action of the verb is performed. The final vowel of the verb root is always lengthened before this suffix. It never combines with any other extension nor with incorporated indirect object pronouns (see section 5.3.2). It is completely productive.

Examples:

- | | | | |
|------|----------------|--|--|
| (69) | sa | | <i>drink</i> |
| | saanə | | <i>pause and drink</i> |
| | kə saanə ci | | <i>he stopped what he was doing, drank, and then continued</i> |
| | tsəbə | | <i>eat</i> |
| | tsəbəənə | | <i>pause and eat</i> |
| | kə tsəbəənə ci | | <i>he stopped what he was doing, ate something, and then continued</i> |

A possible variant of this extension (or possibly a completely different extension) is found in the following three words (note that the root vowel changes):

- | | | | | |
|------|--------|-----------------|------------|------------------------|
| (70) | gərə'u | <i>kneel</i> | gərə'waanə | <i>kneel</i> |
| | kəŋə | <i>stand</i> | kəŋaanə | <i>stand</i> |
| | mbədə | <i>get well</i> | mbədəanə | <i>remain, be left</i> |

4.7.11 -ma '(take away) by theft'

This non-productive extension (ref. no. E12) is used with only a handful of verbs. In each case, it indicates that something is taken away—usually by theft.

Examples:

- | | | | | |
|------|-------|----------------|----------|--|
| (71) | hərə | <i>steal</i> | hərə-ma | <i>steal</i> |
| | luu | <i>take</i> | luuma | <i>take by theft, steal</i> |
| | ngərə | <i>pick up</i> | ngərə-ma | <i>pick up and take away by theft, steal</i> |
| | fədə | <i>gather</i> | fədə-ma | <i>gather up and take away by theft, steal</i> |
| | dərə | <i>sell</i> | dərə-ma | <i>get rid of by selling off (no theft involved)</i> |

4.7.12 -ee '(?)'

This non-productive extension (ref. no. E13) does not appear to alter the meaning of the verb root in a predictable way. Often the verb root itself is no longer used as an independent form in modern Gude.

An important peculiarity of this suffix is that the direct object of the verb must be preceded by the preposition *ka* in all cases. Thus, the definite direct object marker *tə* is never used when the verb has this suffix (see section 5.2).

This suffix never combines with any other extension nor with incorporated indirect object pronouns (see section 5.3.2).

Examples:

| | | | | |
|------|-------------|----------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| (72) | <i>palə</i> | <i>go</i> | <i>palee</i> | <i>exceed</i> |
| | <i>kəŋə</i> | <i>stand (intr.)</i> | <i>kəŋee</i> | <i>stand (tr.)</i> |
| | <i>kərə</i> | <i>carry</i> | <i>kəree</i> | <i>escort</i> |
| | <i>mbə</i> | <i>hide</i> | <i>mbee</i> | <i>hide</i> |
| | (none) | | <i>nee</i> | <i>see</i> |
| | (none) | | <i>karee</i> | <i>refuse</i> |
| | (none) | | <i>mbee</i> | <i>be able</i> |
| | (none) | | <i>bwasee</i> | <i>leave</i> |

4.9 Other types of verbal derivation

Verbs from adjectives

Some simple adjective stems may be used as verbs. The resulting verbs have an inchoative meaning—‘*become, come to be*’—or a causitive inchoative meaning—‘*cause to become to be, make to be.*’

Examples:

(73) *dizə red (adj.)*

kə dəzhi usəra
the sun became red (inchoative)

kə dəzhi Yada tə kəbənaakii
Yada made his shirt red (causitive inchoative)

ndalə strong (adj.)

kə ndyalə sədə-kii
my foot became strong (inchoative)

kə ndyalə ənhi tə ma nga raha
the blacksmith strengthened the blade
of the axe (causitive inchoative)

Verbs from ideophones

Many stems occur both as ideophones and as verbs. Some of these stems appear to be primarily ideophones which are only occasionally used as main verbs. Other stems appear to function routinely as verbs and are only occasionally used as ideophones. The following are examples of stems that may be used as verbs but appear to be primarily ideophones:

| | | |
|------|----------|-----------------------------------|
| (74) | baḅ | <i>pound flat</i> |
| | ḍangəraŋ | <i>roll over repeatedly</i> |
| | gugud | <i>bounce around</i> |
| | kudap | <i>come to a boil</i> |
| | mirik | <i>blink</i> |
| | pats | <i>chop through with one blow</i> |
| | shawud | <i>wag tail</i> |
| | zərək | <i>throb with pain</i> |

Verbs from nouns

Denominal verbs are very rare in Gude. Only the following few denominal verbs have been found.

| | | | |
|------|--------------|----|--|
| (75) | fəza (-ə) | n. | <i>year</i> |
| | fəzə | v. | <i>spend year(s)</i> |
| | gudəza (-ə) | n. | <i>flower, bloom, blossom</i> |
| | gudəzə | v. | <i>flower, bloom</i> |
| | guna (-ə) | n. | <i>bad omen</i> |
| | gunə | v. | <i>experience a bad omen</i> |
| | ləngura (-ə) | n. | <i>hole in tree</i> |
| | langurə | v. | <i>make hole</i> (note difference in first vowel) |
| | shina (-ə) | n. | <i>nose</i> |
| | shinə | v. | <i>blow nose</i> |

Chapter 5. Verbal sentences

In Gude, sentences containing verbal predicates differ from sentences containing non-verbal predicates. Verbal sentences contain verbs and non-verbal sentences do not. Only verbal sentences contain explicit aspectual markers. Non-verbal sentences are discussed in chapter 3. The aspectual system is discussed in chapter 4.

Word order

In verbal sentences, the basic word order depends on the particular aspect selected. For completive, continuous and potential aspects the basic word order of verbal sentences is as follows:

ASPECT + VERB + SUBJECT + D.O. + I.O. + ADVERB

Where D.O. = optional direct object
I.O. = optional indirect object
ADVERB = one or more optional adverbs or adverbial phrases

For neutral aspect, the basic word order is the following:

SUBJECT + ASPECT + VERB + D.O. + I.O. + ADVERB

Example sentences occur throughout the following pages.

5.1 Subjects

Normally, a verbal sentence in Gude contains a noun phrase subject. With continuous and potential aspects the subject is preceded by the subject marker *nə* (see sections 4.1.2 and 4.1.3). With completive and neutral aspects there is no subject marker (see sections 4.1.1 and 4.2).

Examples:

- (1) *agi adənə nə Musa dafəna*
CONTINUOUS eating SUBJECT-MARKER Musa mush
Musa is eating mush

ka adənə nə Musa dafəna
 POTENTIAL eating SUBJECT-MARKER Musa mush
Musa will (can) eat mush

kə agi Musa dafəna
 COMPLETIVE eat Musa mush
Musa ate (has eaten) mush

Musa a adə dafəna
 Musa NEUTRAL eat mush
(that) Musa eat mush

Gude is not an ergative language. There are no morphological distinctions between subjects of transitive sentences and subjects of intransitive sentences.

There is no passive voice in Gude. English passives must be translated in Gude using an impersonal subject. This impersonal subject is usually expressed by the word ənji 'persons, people,' but occasionally by ənda 'person' or uushi 'thing.'

Examples:

(2) kə digə ənji tə ci
he was beaten up, lit. people beat him up

kə digə əndə tə ci
he was beaten up, lit. a person beat him up

kə digə uushi tə ci
he was hit by something, lit. a thing hit him

5.1.1 Conjoined subject postposing

When the subject consists of two noun phrases conjoined by "PRONOUN + dā" (as discussed in section 2.9), the "PRONOUN + dā" together with the second noun phrase may optionally be postposed to the end of the sentence. If the first noun phrase is itself a pronoun, a copy of the pronoun remains in subject position.

Examples:

(3) kə gi Musa tii da Yada a Gyala mbudə
Musa and Yada went to Gyala yesterday

⇒ kə gi Musa a Gyala mbudə tii da Yada
Musa went to Gyala yesterday with Yada

- (4) *kə wabi inə da Musa a luuma*
I and Musa spoke in the market

⇒ *kə wabi inə a luuma inə da Musa*
I spoke in the market with Musa

5.1.2 Afterthought subjects

Often in conversation or narration, the speaker may use a pronoun subject, but by the end of the sentence decide to add further identification of the subject. This afterthought subject is attached to the sentence by preceding it with the subject marker *nə*. Sometimes the afterthought subject seems to be added to repair a poorly planned sentence. Othertimes it seems to be used as a deliberate stylistic device. In either case Gude speakers accept these sentences as well-formed.

Examples:

- (5) *kə jima ci a ginwu, nə məzəməka*
 COMPLETIVE descend he at mountain, SUBJECT-MARKER hunter
he descended from the mountain, the hunter (that is)

kə gunwu tii a rəgwa, nə Musa tii da hurəba
 COMPLETIVE meet they at road, SUBJECT-MARKER Musa they
 and baboon
they met on the road, Musa and the baboon (that is)

5.1.3 Omitted subjects

Occasionally, in conversation or narration the speaker will omit the subject of the sentence if it is obvious from the context. Subject omission seems to be restricted to very short sentences. It is less acceptable in longer sentences. Most examples noted have been in completive aspect.

Examples:

- (6) *kə uugi (it) is finished*
kə ənki (he/she) died
kə zii (it) is lost

5.2 Direct objects

Normally, transitive verbs require a direct object (D.O.) noun phrase. A definite (specific) D.O. must be preceded by the definite direct object marker *tə*. (This Gude

marker has roughly the same meaning and use as the Hebrew particle *et*.) A pronoun D.O. is by definition definite and is always preceded by *tə*.

Examples:

- (7) *kə nəŋəpaa ci tə Musa*
 COMPLETIVE greet he D.O.-MARKER Musa
he greeted Musa.

kə nəŋəpaa ci tə nyi
 COMPLETIVE greet he D.O.-MARKER me
he greeted me

There is one exception to the above rule concerning the use of the definite D.O. marker *tə*. The exception is in the case where the verb contains the extension suffix *-ee* (see section 4.7.2). Following this extension the D.O. is obligatorily preceded by the preposition (marker) *ka* 'to, for' regardless of whether or not the D.O. is definite.

Examples:

- (8) *kə nee shaarə ka gyaagya*
 COMPLETIVE see hawk to chicken
the hawk saw (the/a) chicken

kə bwasee ci ka ki
 COMPLETIVE leave he to her
he left her

kə kəree Musa ka Yada
 COMPLETIVE escort Musa to Yada
Musa escorted Yada

5.3 Indirect objects (and benefactives)

Indirect object (I.O.) noun phrases and benefactive noun phrases are both preceded by the preposition *ka* 'to, for' and are treated alike syntactically. In the following discussion I will refer to both as indirect objects.

5.3.1 Order of D.O. and I.O.

The I.O. normally follows the direct object (D.O.) noun phrase. However, it may precede the D.O., especially when the D.O. is a complex "heavy" NP or when the I.O. is a pronoun.

Examples:

- (9) kə vii Musa kwaɓa ka Dawuda
 kə vii Musa ka Dawuda kwaɓa
Musa gave money to Dawuda

kə vii Musa kwaɓa ka ci
 kə vii Musa ka ci kwaɓa
Musa gave money to him

kə vii Musa ka Dawuda kwaɓa ətə upaa ci a luuma
Musa gave Dawuda money that he got in the market

5.3.2 I.O. pronouns

A pronoun indirect object (i.o.) is normally manifested as an independent pronoun (see section 2.3) preceded by the preposition ka.

Examples:

- (10) ka nyi / kayi 1st pers. sing.
 ka hə 2nd pers. sing.
 ka ci 3rd pers. m. sing.
 ka ki 3rd pers. f. sing.
 ka amə 1st pers. pl. incl.
 ka inə 1st pers. pl. excl.
 ka anwu 1st pers. dual
 ka unə 2nd pers. pl.
 ka tii 3rd pers. pl.

A pronoun i.o. may also be manifested as a special i.o. pronoun which is incorporated into the verb stem between the verb root and a following extension suffix. These special i.o. pronouns may not occur without a following extension suffix. They are infrequently used in the lower (western) dialect and speakers from Boukoula insist that the forms are not used at all in the upper (eastern) dialect. The incorporated i.o. pronouns are the following:

- (11) -yi- 1st pers. sing.
 -wu- 2nd pers. sing.
 -nə- 3rd pers. m. sing.
 -tə- 3rd pers. f. sing.
 -aamə- 1st pers. pl. incl.
 -yinə- 1st pers. pl. excl.
 -aawu- 1st pers. dual
 -wunə- 2nd pers. pl.
 -təyi- 3rd pers. pl.

Examples:

- (12) əs-ii-paa gyaagya
catch the chicken for me

kə haða-wu-tə ci ya
he prepared the compound for you

kə ka-nə-paa Musa buura
Musa set down the bag for him

ca da-tii-və a kunwu
he put in (some) into the calabash for them

Normally, the incorporated i.o. pronouns are not permitted within verbal nouns (see section 2.1.2.1), however the following single example was noted in a folktale:

- (13) ooshi nyi ka və-wu-nə
I will not give (it) to you

5.4 Locative phrases

A verbal sentence in Gude may optionally contain at most one locative adverb or locative prepositional phrase.

In locative prepositional phrases, the location to which (or into which) motion is directed is indicated by the preposition *a*, and the location from which (or out of which) motion is directed is indicated by the preposition *də*. The location at which (or in which) an event takes place is indicated by *a* in most cases, but by *də* with proper place names.

Examples:

- (14) kə shi Musa a Gyala
Musa came to Gella (town)

kə shi Musa a kuvə
Musa came into the hut

kə shi Musa də Gyala
Musa came from Gella (town)

kə shigi Musa də kuvə
Musa came out of the hut

kə ənki Musa də Gyala
Musa died at Gella (town)

kə ənki Musa a kuvə
Musa died in the hut

5.5 Instrumental phrases

Instrumental phrases consist of noun phrases preceded by the preposition də.

Examples:

(15) kə lii Musa ləwu də ngyala
Musa cut the meat with a knife

kə kii Musa hurəbə də faara
Musa threw-at the baboon with a stone

kə ənlhəgi Musa uuda də ci
Musa smashed the pot with it

5.6 Instrumental marking of the direct object

The instrumental phrase də ci 'with it' may optionally be deleted in which case the direct object must then be preceded by də—the particle which would otherwise have marked the instrumental phrase.

Examples:

(16) kə ngirə Musa tə ngyala ka lagi kunwa də ci
 kə ngirə Musa tə ngyala ka lagi də kunwa
Musa picked-up the knife to cut a calabash (with it)

kirawu kwəba ka dərə ləwu də ci
 kirawu kwəba ka dərə də ləwa
bring money to buy meat (with it)

5.7 Reflexives

Whenever the subject of the sentence has the same referent as the direct object (D.O.) or indirect object (I.O.), the D.O. or I.O. in question must be replaced by a

reflexive form. In Gude the reflexive form consists of the the word for 'head,' na (nə), preceded by the independent possessive pronominal (see section 2.2.2.3).

The reflexive paradigm is as follows:

| | | |
|------|-----------|---------------------|
| (17) | naaki na | 1st pers. sing. |
| | naaku na | 2nd pers. sing. |
| | naakii na | 3rd pers. m. sing. |
| | natə na | 3rd pers. f. sing. |
| | naamə na | 1st pers. pl. incl. |
| | neenə na | 1st pers. pl. excl. |
| | naanwu na | 1st pers. dual |
| | noonə na | 2nd pers. pl. |
| | natii na | 3rd pers. pl. |

Examples:

- (18) ca bəzhi naakii nə də maara
 he-NEUTRAL rub himself with oil
he rubbed himself with oil

kə nee ki ka natə na
 COMPLETIVE see she to herself
she saw herself

vii kwaɓatə ka naaku na
 give money-that to yourself
give that money to yourself

Reflexive forms are also used as emphatic pronouns. In such cases, they are usually preceded by an independent pronoun.

Examples:

- (19) wii-tsə kwaɓa nga nyi naaki na
 there-is money of me myself
here is my very own money

kə nee nyi ka Musa, nyi naaki na
 COMPLETIVE see I to Musa, I myself
I, myself, saw Musa

duu saaku, hə naaku na
 go (to) thing-your, you yourself
go away, you yourself

5.8 Sentence complements

Verbs of speaking and thinking take sentence complements that express quotations. These sentence complements are usually preceded by one of the following complementizer phrases: *oo'ya*, *tə uu'inə*, or *tə uu'inə oo'ya*. (*tə* is the definite D.O. marker. *uu'inə* 'saying' is a verbal noun. *oo'ya* is frozen form probably derived from *uu'inə*.)

Examples:

(20) *kə wabi ci (tə uu'inə) oo'ya nga'a nə zəma*
he spoke (saying) that the food is good

mashiimə ci (tə uu'inə) oo'ya mahərə nə Musa
he does not know that Musa is a thief

5.9 'da + VERBAL NOUN' constructions

In Gude, there are abstract nouns denoting actions whose roots never appear as the main verb of a sentence. Rather than appear as main verbs, these words appear as nominal direct objects of another main verb. This main verb is usually *da* 'do, make,' but in a few cases it is *la* 'cut' or *ka* 'throw.' Sentences containing these constructions often correspond to English sentences containing intransitive verbs. (These nouns have been marked in the dictionary with the label "action n.")

Some of these abstract nouns are the following:

| | | |
|------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (21) | <i>bələra (-ə)</i> | <i>coughing</i> |
| | <i>bərəda</i> | <i>hopping</i> |
| | <i>burəḡanə</i> | <i>fermenting</i> |
| | <i>bəma (-ə)</i> | <i>drawing blood from sore</i> |
| | <i>gala</i> | <i>wrestling</i> |
| | <i>gunwanə</i> | <i>judging</i> |
| | <i>gwaləḡa</i> | <i>tripping</i> |
| | <i>həḡəḡəmənə</i> | <i>hickuping</i> |
| | <i>habəkənə</i> | <i>yawning</i> |
| | <i>kələləḡənə</i> | <i>hopping</i> |
| | <i>kandamaanə</i> | <i>butting in, meddling</i> |
| | <i>kawawanə</i> | <i>yelling, shouting</i> |
| | <i>kiləkilənə</i> | <i>tickling</i> |
| | <i>kudəpəshinə</i> | <i>belching</i> |
| | <i>məbu'unə</i> | <i>picking up accidentally</i> |
| | <i>məḡaḡəḡaḡa (-ə)</i> | <i>somersaulting</i> |
| | <i>maaba (-ə)</i> | <i>lying in wait to ambush</i> |
| | <i>mabəzhinə</i> | <i>arguing, disputing</i> |

| | |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| malangaya | <i>ridiculing bed-wetting child</i> |
| matatahina | <i>whispering</i> |
| mbiina | <i>behaving cruelly</i> |
| nwanwuuna | <i>ruling</i> |
| shoota (-ə) | <i>sliding down inclined surface</i> |
| takurina | <i>resting chin on hand</i> |
| taabiɖiwa | <i>completing something</i> |
| taariiriina | <i>turning round and round</i> |
| taatya | <i>teaching child to walk</i> |
| vaava | <i>scrambling for something</i> |
| vurəna | <i>trilling</i> |
| vyawa (-ə) | <i>swinging</i> |
| wajihəmina | <i>(= wajihya) sneezing</i> |
| wakadəkina | <i>making mistake in ignorance</i> |

Examples:

(22) kə ɖii ci bələra
he coughed

kə ɖii ci kiləkiləna
he tickled (someone)

kə kii ci vurəna
he trilled loudly

kə lii ci gunwana
he passed judgement

Chapter 6. Focus, questions, and topic

6.1 Focus constructions

The term focus construction has been used to refer to English sentences like the following:

- (1) The one I saw was John. (pseudo-cleft)
- (2) It was John that I saw. (cleft)
- (3) I saw *John*. (emphatic stress)

Sentence (1) is a "pseudo-cleft" sentence, sentence (2) is a "cleft" sentence, and sentence (3) has emphatic stress on one of the constituents. Focus constructions have been referred to by various authors as focus, emphasis, and foregrounding. See Kuno (1972), Schachter (1973), Keenan and Hull (1973), and Gundel (1974).

It has often been noted that focus constructions have presuppositions associated with them. For example, the sentences (1-3) above each carries the presupposition that the speaker saw someone. The normal non-focus sentence (4) does not carry this presupposition.

- (4) I saw John. (without emphatic stress)

It has also been noted that focus constructions are appropriate answers to word ("wh") questions. For example, the sentences (1-3) are appropriate answers to a question like "who did you see?"

Focus constructions in Gude are those sentences which function as semantic equivalents of the English examples discussed above. There are two distinct types of focus constructions in Gude: type-I, which has a number of unique and interesting syntactic properties, and type-II, which is a special case of the non-verbal sentence.

6.1.1 Type-I focus constructions

Consider again the normal non-focus declarative verbal sentence as was presented in chapter 5. The normal word order (ASPECT + VERB + SUBJECT + D.O. + ADVERB) is displayed in the following examples:

Non-focus sentences

- (5) kə bɪlə Musa tə bwaya əndzii
 COMPLETIVE kill Musa D.O.-MARKER leopard now
Musa (has) killed the leopard now

agi bələ-nə nə Musa tə bwaya əndzii
 CONTINUOUS killing SUBJECT-MARKER Musa D.O.-MARKER leopard now
Musa is killing the leopard now

ka bələ-nə nə Musa tə bwaya əndzii
 POTENTIAL killing SUBJECT-MARKER Musa D.O.-MARKER leopard now
Musa will kill the leopard now

Candidates for focus element include any of the constituent items of the sentence, excluding the aspect particle, namely the verb, subject, direct object (D.O.), indirect object (I.O.), or any of the possible sentence adverbs. Examples of type-I focus constructions showing various possible focus elements are displayed below:

Completive aspect

- (6) bələ-nə bɪlə Musa tə bwaya əndzii
*Musa (has) **killed** the leopard now*

Musa bɪlə tə bwaya əndzii
***Musa** (has) killed the leopard now*

tə bwaya bɪlə Musa əndzii
*Musa (has) killed **the leopard** now*

əndzii bɪlə Musa tə bwaya
*Musa (has) killed the leopard **now***

Continuous aspect

- (7) bələ-nə ci Musa a bələ tə bwaya əndzii
*Musa is **killing** the leopard now*

Musa ci a bələ tə bwaya əndzii
***Musa** is killing the leopard now*

tə bwaya ci Musa a bələ əndzii
*Musa is killing **the leopard** now*

əndzii ci Musa a bələ tə bwaya
*Musa is killing the leopard **now***

Potential aspect

- (8) ɓələ-nə nə Musa a ɓələ tə bwaya əndzii
Musa will kill the leopard now

Musa nə a ɓələ tə bwaya əndzii
Musa will kill the leopard now

tə bwaya nə Musa a ɓələ əndzii
Musa will kill the leopard now

əndzii nə Musa a ɓələ tə bwaya
Musa will kill the leopard now

As can be seen from the examples above, the surface structures of type-I focus constructions contrast with those of simple non-focus sentences in a number of ways:

- The focus element is found in initial position in the focus construction, preceding the aspect marker.
- The aspect particle is represented by a distinct allomorph in the focus construction. (See section 4.1.4 for further discussion of aspect marking in focus constructions.)

| | Declarative | Focus |
|------------|-------------|--------|
| COMPLETIVE | kə | (none) |
| CONTINUOUS | agi | ci |
| POTENTIAL | ka | nə |

- With continuous and potential aspects, the verb is preceded by a particle a (perhaps the neutral aspect marker?) which elides with the preceding syllable.
- With continuous and potential aspects, there is a verb-subject inversion, such that the order of constituents in the focus construction is the following: the focus-element, the aspect-particle, then the subject (if it is not focus element) followed by the particle a (the neutral aspect marker?) and the verb.
- With continuous and potential aspects, subject pronouns are the forms used elsewhere as possessive suffixes (see section 2.2.2), rather than the usual independent pronouns which occur as subjects in non-focus sentences (see section 2.3). In addition, before the pronouns ki 'I,' ku 'you (sing.),' and kii 'he, it,' the continuous marker ci becomes cii and the potential marker nə becomes nii.

Examples:

(10) doorə cii ki a dzə
I am going tomorrow

doorə ci tə a dzə
she is going tomorrow

doorə nii kii a dzə
he will go tomorrow

doorə ci unə a dzə
you (pl.) will go tomorrow

- The focus element, in initial position, is preceded by the preposition (if any) appropriate to the constituent role it would hold in the corresponding non-focus sentence.
- Except when the focus element is the verb, there is no trace of the focus element—i.e., no pronoun copy—to be found in the position the element would hold in the corresponding non-focus sentence.

Potential aspect has further variations which occur occasionally in focus constructions, but are more common in word questions (see section 6.2.3.) Often the particle *ka*, which is the marker of potential aspect in non-focus sentences, will appear before the verb, and if it does, the verb may also be nominalized.

Examples:

(11) tə bwaya nə Musa a ka bələ-nə əndzii
Musa will kill the leopard now

əndzii nə Musa a ka bələ-nə tə bwaya
Musa will kill the leopard now

Another variation of potential aspect occurs with pronoun subjects. In this variation, there are no aspect markers, and the subject occurs as a possessive suffix on the nominalized verb.

Examples:

(12) tə bwaya bələ-n(ə)-ku əndzii
you will kill the leopard now

əndzii bələ-n(ə)-ki tə bwaya
I will kill the leopard now

6.1.2 Type-II focus constructions

Type-II focus constructions have the same surface structure as normal declarative non-verbal sentences, as presented in chapter 3. That order is PREDICATE + SUBJECT + (ADVERB). Type-II focus constructions are in fact equational (identification) sentences (see section 3.3) with embedded relative clauses (see section 2.7). The following examples of type-II focus constructions show various possible focus elements. These examples have been chosen so that they are semantically equivalent to the corresponding examples given for the type-I focus constructions above.

Completive aspect

- (13) ɓələ-nə nə sə-tə ɗii Musa tə bwaya əndzii
Musa (has) killed the leopard now

Musa nə əndə-tə ɓilə tə bwaya əndzii
Musa (has) killed the leopard now

bwaya nə sə-tə ɓilə Musa əndzii
Musa (has) killed the leopard now

əndzii nə saa'i-tə ɓilə Musa tə bwaya
Musa (has) killed the leopard now

Continuous aspect

- (14) ɓələ-nə sə-tə ci Musa a ɗa tə bwaya əndzii
Musa is killing the leopard now

Musa nə əndə-tə ci a ɓələ tə bwaya əndzii
Musa is killing the leopard now

bwaya nə sə-tə ci Musa a ɓələ əndzii
Musa is killing the leopard now

əndzii saa'i-tə ci Musa a ɓələ tə bwaya
Musa is killing the leopard now

Potential aspect

- (15) ɓələ-nə sə-tə nə Musa a ɗa tə bwaya əndzii
Musa will kill the leopard now

Musa nə əndə-tə nə a ɓələ tə bwaya əndzii
Musa will kill the leopard now

bwaya nə sə-tə nə Musa a bələ əndzii
*Musa will kill **the leopard** now*

əndzii saa'i-tə nə Musa a bələ tə bwaya
*Musa will kill **the leopard** now*

6.1.3 Negation in focus constructions

The negation of a focus construction is formed by adding a special negative marker *ənta* to the front of the focus construction. The focus construction undergoes no other syntactic changes.

Examples:

Type-I

(16) *ənta Musa bələ tə bwaya əndzii*
*It is not **Musa** who (has) killed the leopard now*

ənta tə bwaya ci Musa a bələ əndzii
*It is not **the leopard** that Musa is killing now*

ənta əndzii nə Musa a bələ tə bwaya
*It is not **now** that Musa will kill the leopard*

Type-II

(17) *ənta Musa nə əndə-tə bələ tə bwaya əndzii*
*It is not **Musa** who (has) killed the leopard now*

ənta bwaya nə sə-tə ci Musa a bələ əndzii
*It is not **the leopard** that Musa is killing now*

ənta əndzii saa'i-tə nə Musa a bələ tə bwaya
*It is not **now** that Musa will kill the leopard*

6.2 Questions

6.2.1 Yes/no questions

Yes/no questions in Gude are formed by adding one of the following question marking particles to the end of a normal verbal or non-verbal declarative sentence.

Question markers

| (18) | marker | tone | use |
|------|--------|------|--|
| | -a | ˊ | yes/no and word questions |
| | kwa | ˋ | yes/no and word questions |
| | nii | ˊ | yes/no questions only |
| | -ee | ˊ | yes/no questions only; expects positive answer |
| | kuna | ˋˋ | yes/no questions only |
| | ta'a | ˋˋ | yes/no questions only |

The marker -a elides with the preceding syllable and is the most commonly used question marker both in yes/no questions and in word questions. kwa is used in both yes/no questions and in word questions. nii is only used in yes/no questions. -ee is used when a positive answer is expected and often seems to add a playful or ironic flavor to the question. The markers kuna and ta'a are both used in yes/no questions. Their exact meaning has not been determined. They are often used when a negative answer is expected. ta'a often occurs in rhetorical questions where the speaker is expressing an opinion rather than asking for information.

Examples:

(19) ka dzə-nə nə hə ka təəmə-nə-a?
will you go fishing?

tə'i mbusaa-ku-a?
do you have a pumpkin?

kə gi Musa a luuma kwa?
did Musa go to market?

a kuvə nə ðiðinə kwa?
are the shoes in the hut?

kə uuzii hə raa-ku mbudə nii?
did you hoe your farm yesterday?

nduuda nə kəbənə nga nwanwu nii?
is the chief's gown white?

kə shi un-ee?
you (pl.) have come, have you?

gidə dafəna acii bərodi-ee?
(so) mush is better than bread, is it?

ka d̄awu-nə nə dii Dawuda kuna?
Dawuda's father isn't going to move away, is he?

ma'a ci a nwunyina kuna?
he isn't still asleep, is he?

ka hərə-nə nə hə ta'a?
surely you're not going to steal, are you?
(that would be a foolish thing to do!)

nwīikii nə aaghanə ta'a?
surely poverty isn't good, is it?
(it would be absurd to think so!)

Negation in yes/no questions

The negation marker of focus constructions, *ənta* (see section 6.1.3), may occur preceding a question which expects a positive answer.

Examples:

(20) *ənta hiila nə sə-tsə nii?*
isn't this thing amazing?

ənta kə mwayi hə tsəbənə tə ləwu-nə kwa?
don't you want to eat this meat?

ənta Musa uuzii rə nga nwanwu nii?
wasn't it Musa who hoed the chief's farm?

Note that the negative markers of normal declarative sentences, *pooshi* and *ma- ... -mə* (see section 4.4), do not presuppose either a positive or negative reply. Contrast the following examples with those above. (The English glosses are intended to convey neutral presupposition.)

- (21) pooshi sə-tsə hiila nii?
is this thing not amasing?

pooshi hə mwayi tsəbənə tə ləwu-nə kwa?
do you not want to eat this meat?

pooshi Musa uuzii rə nga nwanwu nii?
did Musa not hoe the chief's farm?

ma-shii-mə hə ləmə-ki nii?
do you not know my name?

ma-fa-mə ci uura-gaamə kwa?
does he not understand our language?

6.2.2 Alternative questions

Alternative (either... or...) questions are formed on the following pattern:

...? (a) nii...?

Examples:

- (22) Musa nə mahərə? nii Dawuda?
Musa nə mahərə nii? a nii Dawuda?
is the thief Musa? or is it Dawuda?

As we see from the examples, the first alternative is put into a normal yes/no question ending with one of the two question markers –a or nii. Then the second alternative is put into a second phrase beginning with either nii (when the first phrase ends with –a) or a nii (when the first phrase ends with nii). It may be possible to use question markers other than –a or nii in the first part of this pattern (see section 6.2.1 above). None have been observed.

6.2.3 Word questions

Word questions—which correspond to the so-called “wh” questions of English—are questions which contain one of the following question words (interrogative pronouns or phrases):

| | | |
|------|--------------------|----------------------|
| (23) | wu | who |
| | da | where |
| | a ma | (to) where |
| | guci | when |
| | mi | what |
| | acii mi | why, because of what |
| | ka mi | why, for what |
| | ngutə | which |
| | maanə, moonə | how much (how many) |
| | yi, yitə, yitiitə, | |
| | i, itə, itiitə | how, what |

Syntactically these words behave like focus elements, and word questions have all the syntactic properties of type-I focus constructions (see section 6.1). Of the sentence final particles used in yes/no questions (see section 6.2.1 above), only *-a* and *kwa* are used to mark word questions.

An optional particle *dà* (with low tone) may be used at the end of the noun phrase containing the question word. It is not acceptable, however, following the question word *da* 'where,' probably because of its phonological similarity. This particle has no effect on the meaning of the question.

Examples of the use of these question words are given below. Note that the notion of 'what' may be expressed by either *mi* or any of the variants of *yi* (*yitə* is the most commonly used variant). *mi* is used with non-inherently possessed nouns and *yi* (and its variants) are used with inherently possessed nouns. Note too that the properties of an object—height, weight, color, etc.—are treated as if inherently possessed. *maanə* (and its variant *moonə*) 'how much, how many' follows the head noun, and *ngutə* 'which' precedes the head noun.

(24) wu (da) mbee ka ngərə faara-tsa?
who can lift that stone?

da nə yi nga Yohana?
where is John's house?

a ma (da) cii ku a dza?
where are you going?

guci (da) ləgii ənji səkunu gunə kwa?
when did people plant guinea-corn here?

mi (da) nə uushi asəkə mbərə kwa?
what is the thing in the bag?

ka mi (da) cii kii a naanagi ha'a?
why does he refuse thus?

acii mi (da) nə tii a panə kwa?
why do they fight?

ngutə бага (da) nə nga Liiman kwa?
which sheep is Liiman's?

baanə maanə (da) ta'avə ci də Kano kwa?
how many days did you stay in Kano?

kwaḃa maanə (da) ki'i ci ka ha?
how much money did he pay you?

yitə (da) nə maagha a upaa ḃafəna, ma pooshi kwaba
how will a poor man obtain food if (he has) no money

yitə nii ki a ḃa?
 yitə ḃa-n(ə)-ki-a?
how (what) will I do?

yitə nə ləmə-ku-a?
what is your name?

yitə nə gərə-nə nga gawaa-ku-a?
how tall is your brother?
 lit. *what is the height of your brother?*

An alternative 'where' form

There is an alternative way of asking 'where is...?' without using the question word *da*. This alternative form is restricted to use with pronouns, proper names of people, and nouns referring to people. This form consists of an initial *maa-* in combination with the demonstrative *-nə* 'this.' (See section 3.11 for a discussion of the structurally similar deictic forms *waa-* and *wii-*.)

| | | |
|------|----------------|------------------------|
| (25) | maa-nyi-na? | where am I? |
| | maa-hə-na? | where are you (sing.)? |
| | maa-ci-na? | where is he? |
| | maa-ki-na? | where is she? |
| | maamə-na? | where are we (incl.)? |
| | meenə-na? | where are we (excl.)? |
| | maanwu-na? | where are we (dual)? |
| | moonə-na? | where are you (pl.)? |
| | maa-tii-na? | where are they? |
| | maa-nə Dawuda? | where is Dawuda? |
| | maa-nə nwanwa? | where is the chief? |

6.3 Topics

Topicalization is quite common in Gude and is syntactically and semantically distinct from focus. The syntactic differences are discussed in the sections below. The semantic difference is most easily understood if we consider the Prague School notions *theme* and *rheme*. The theme contains old discourse information, and the rheme contains new discourse information. What we are calling the topic corresponds to the theme and what we have called focus element corresponds to the rheme. The notions are not equivalent however. A sentence may have a theme without having an overt topic, and a sentence may have a rheme without having an overt focus element (cf. Gundel 1974).

Topicalization is a means of explicitly marking what the sentence is about. Consider the following two English sentences:

(26) As for John, he left early.

(27) It was John who left early.

In (26) the sentence is about John. John is the topic. Now compare (27). Sentence (27) is telling us who left early. This sentence has an implicit topic *the person who left early*. The focus element, John, is not the topic—i.e., not old discourse information—but rather is new discourse information.

The most common way of topicalizing an element in Gude is to premention it at the beginning of the sentence. The topic is usually bracketed from the rest of the sentence, which we will call the “comment,” by a pause. Usually, the topic is preceded by an initial particle *ma* and followed by prepause *-a*.

Examples:

- (28) (ma) Buulus (-a), ma-nee-mə ii ka ci
 (as for) *Buulus, I have not seen him*

(ma) məzəmakə (-a), kə gi ka alə ləwa
 (as for) *the hunter, he went to look for meat*

In the upper dialect area, topic may also be marked by a following particle *boo*, as in the following examples:

- (29) Buulus boo, ma-nee-mə ii ka ci
 (as for) *Buulus, I have not seen him*

məzəmakə boo, kə gi ka alə ləwa
 (as for) *the hunter, he went to look for meat*

The examples below show that the same constituent items that were candidates for focus element (see section 6.1) are also candidates for topic. Note that the second occurrence of the topic element—its “copy” in the comment portion of the sentence—is usually pronominalized when it is subject, direct object, indirect object, or object of a prepositional phrase. The second occurrence of an adverbial topic is usually omitted altogether. In non-verbal sentences, the second occurrence of a topicalized subject is usually omitted also.

- (30) ma səbanə -a, kə səbii Dawuda tə бага ənshinə
 (as for) *driving away, Dawuda drove away the sheep today*

ma Dawuda, kə səbii ci tə бага ənshinə
 (as for) *Dawuda, he drove away the sheep today*

ma бага, kə səbii Dawuda tə ci ənshinə
 (as for) *the sheep, Dawuda drove it away today*

ma ənshinə -a, kə səbii Dawuda tə бага
 (as for) *today, Dawuda drove the sheep away*

ma minaa-ki -a, kə səbii Dawuda tə бага ka ki ənshinə
 (as for) *my wife, Dawuda drove away the sheep for her today*

ma uuda-tsa, ka ka-gərə-nə (nə) ənji ma'inə asəkə-kii
 (as for) *that pot, people will put water in it*

ma Dawuda, magərəkii (nə ci)
 (as for) *Dawuda, he is tall*

Chapter 7. Adverbs and adverbial phrases

This chapter contains a discussion of sentence adverbials expressing time, purpose, reason, and conditionals. For a description of the structure and use of locative adverbials see also section 5.4. The general ordering of sentence adverbials is as follows:

CONDITIONAL + S + PURPOSE + TIME + REASON

| | | | |
|-------|-------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| Where | S | = | simple verbal or non-verbal sentence |
| | CONDITIONAL | = | optional conditional clause |
| | PURPOSE | = | optional purpose clause |
| | TIME | = | optional temporal adverbial |
| | REASON | = | optional reason clause |

7.1 Conditionals

General conditionals

In Gude, a general conditional clause is expressed by a preposed sentence preceded by the particle *ma*. This particle is indistinguishable from the particle which precedes most preposed topic elements (as discussed in section 6.3). Structurally the general conditional clause seems to be nothing more than a topicalized sentence.

The exact semantic relationship of this preposed clause to the main sentence—and, hence, the English translation—is dependent upon the context. In particular, the Gude general conditional fails to encode the relative uncertainty/certainty distinction that English expresses by use of the two conjunctions *if* and *when*.

Examples:

- (1) *ma kə upaa əda luutsa, ka tsəbənə nə ci*
if the dog finds that meat, he will eat (it)
when the dog finds that meat, he will eat (it)

ma kə hirə ənji kwaɓa nga Yada, ka bəzənə nə səkii
if people steal Yada's money, he will become angry
when people steal Yada's money, he will become angry

Note that just as the conditional clause in the example above fails to encode the relative certainty associated with the prediction or speculation being expressed, so also the Gude potential aspect fails to distinguish relative certainty, in that potential aspect is inherently vague with respect to the *will* vs. *may* distinction of English. (See section 4.1.3 a discussion of potential aspect.)

The inherent vagueness of the general conditional clause is seen also in the fact that it may be used in contexts where English would prefer to use a temporal *when* or *after* clause.

Examples:

- (2) ma kə mbu'i Musa asii, waatsə minaakii ka usə ɗafəna
when Musa arrived home, there was his wife cooking mush

ma nyi ma'a usənə, kə ənki daadə
when I was still a child, my father died

ma kə mbu'i Musa asii, kə əpi ci səka
when Musa had arrived home, he rested
after Musa arrived home, he rested

Counterfactual conditionals

Counterfactual conditions are expressed by a preposed sentence preceded by the particle *maci*. Perhaps this particle is a combination of two morphemes: *ma* + *ci*, where *ci* is of unknown meaning and origin.

Examples:

- (3) maci tə'i kwaɓaaki, ka iranə nə nyi masərə gyaagya
if I had money, I would buy a fried chicken.

maci ganə nə ci, ka valanə nə ci tə hə
if he were here, he would help you

7.2 Purpose

The notion of purpose is expressed by the particle *ka* followed by a verbal noun, a verb phrase, or a clause in neutral—i.e., subjunctive—aspect. Note that *ka* is the same particle that serves as the preposition marking indirect object or benefactive noun phrase (see section 5.3).

Examples:

- (4) *kə gi ci a bili ka uuzanə*
he went to the bush to farm (for farming)

kə gi mu'umə ka yiβənə
the guest went to bathe (for bathing)

a dzə nyi a luuma ka ira ləwa
I am going to market (in order) to buy meat

kə kədə'i Yada maarə acii Musa ka bəzə də shishinə
Yada begged oil from Musa to rub (on his) body

agi usənə nə ki dafəna ka ki a kərə ka dii
she is cooking mush (in order) that she might carry (it) to her father

kə ngərə Musa ngyila ka ca lagi də uura nga бага
Musa picked up the knife so that he might cut the neck of the sheep

7.3 Temporal adverbs

Time expressions may consist of one of the following simple time adverbs and adverbial phrases:

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| (5) <i>ənshinə</i> | <i>today</i> |
| <i>doorə</i> | <i>tomorrow, on the next day</i> |
| <i>cifə doorə</i> | <i>day after tomorrow</i> |
| <i>cifə gətə</i> | <i>three days from now</i> |
| <i>mbədə</i> | <i>yesterday</i> |
| <i>cifə mbədə</i> | <i>day before yesterday</i> |
| <i>kwakwata</i> | <i>a few days from now (in the future), a few days ago (in the past)</i> |
| | |
| <i>wanə</i> | <i>this year</i> |
| <i>inusərə</i> | <i>next year</i> |
| <i>inəfətə</i> | <i>two years from now</i> |
| <i>dənwukə / dunkə</i> | <i>last year</i> |

| | |
|------------------|--|
| dənwukəta | two years ago |
| nwukə | long ago |
| nwukənwukə | very long ago |
| dakədāha | about 4 a.m. (when roosters begin to crow) |
| pəkənə nga ha | about sunup |
| pədeerənə | early morning |
| deerənə | in the morning |
| doosərə | in the day |
| dakədawanə | in the evening |
| kədawanə | evening |
| pətəpəta | when the sun has just set |
| davədə | at night |
| vədəvədə | at night |
| vədə da uusərə | night and day |
| deevyanə | in the rainy season |
| daarənə | in the dry season |
| əndzii / indzii | now |
| matsə | a little while ago |
| shikuha'a | immediately |
| tumə | always (F.) |
| zəku'i / zəku'u | yet |
| ca'a əndzii | until now, up to the present time |
| kənaha'a (doorə) | at this time (tomorrow) |

Time expressions may also consist of a clause preceded by one of the conjunctions *taabu'u* (= *kaabu'u*) 'before,' *da ba'a* 'after' (lit. 'in back of),' or *see* 'only when, only after, not until.'

The conjunction *see* is probably a loan word. It occurs in both Hausa and Fulani and is heavily used in modern Gude by people of all ages. This complex word occurs with the same wide range of meanings ('only, then, etc.' as it does in Hausa.) See Abraham (1962), Newman and Newman (1977), and Taylor (1932).

Examples:

- (6) *kə kii ci jinata ənfwadə taabu'u hwaya tii asii*
he struck the flint four times before they ran home

ma taabu'u dzənə-unə dee minə-a, see unə aagi dafəna
before you go with your wife, (leave) only after you have eaten mush

ma dānə-ku, alə-wu uushī'inə ha'a gadəvə taabu'u ənyanə-ki.
(as for what) you will do, search out things there before I come

ma da ba'a-kii-a, nwanwu a shi
after that, the chief came

pooshi nyi ka pərə ma'yanə, see ci kə ənya dee kwabaa-ki
I cannot relax, until (only after) he returns my money

mi ci unə a wabə unə a shi a rəgwa
what were you (pl.) talking about when you were coming on the road

7.4 Reason

Explanatory reason clauses and phrases are formed by use of the conjunctions *acii* and compound preposition *putə nga*. The conjunction *acii* is identical to the compound preposition meaning 'in the hand of, in the possession of' (see section 3.10.2). *acii* may be followed by a noun phrase or a sentence. *putə nga* may be followed only by a noun phrase.

Examples:

- (7) ka ngwalənə nə nyi *acii* mahirənə
 ka ngwalənə nə nyi *putə nga* mahirənə
I am afraid (because) of thieves

nga'a ka nyi nə Mubi *acii* luuma
 nga'a ka nyi nə Mubi *putə nga* luuma
I like Mubi town because of (its) market

kə tsəbəgi asəngwanə baga *acii* madafənə
 kə tsəbəgi asəngwanə baga *putə nga* madafənə
the hyena ate up a sheep because of hunger

agi tuunə nə rəmənə *acii* kə hirəma ənji kəbənata
the girl is crying because someone has stolen her cloth

Negative purpose

The conjunction *acii* is used with a following negative marker *ga* (or *gə*) to express a negative purpose. (See section 4.6 for a discussion of the use of *ga* as a negative marker in hortatives.) The clause expressing the negative purpose is always in neutral (or subjunctive) aspect (see section 4.2).

Examples:

(8) *kə hwiipaa mahəra acii ga tii a əsətə tə ci*
the thief ran away so they would not catch him

ngərətə uuzənaaku acii ga ci a kulagi agi gunə
pick up your child lest he fall into the fire

kə ciβəgi əda ləwa acii ga hara ədiinə a vaavətə
the dog ate the meat so that the other dogs would not grab it

APPENDIX A. Sample Gude texts

STORY ONE —by Joel Wudəkæana

1. ma shi uushi a dīi, kə pwayi asəngwangə manjeevinaakii langə.
2. ca əjipaa tə tii asəkə burəha.
3. Amma pooshi dəsənətii ka ndzaanə abii tii.
4. see waata zəmə cii kəya kira ka tii.
5. ma ka əndə'i usərə, pitya a shi, ca lapaa təuuji asəngwangənyiitə asəkə burəhəta.
6. makə shi pitya, ca ba ka tii, "kə shi nyi ka aamə a ndzaa abii dəsənuunə."
7. manjeevi asəngwangənyiitə a ləgwa a makii, "yitə da nə ləməkwa?"
8. ənki pityatə ka tii, "ka unə patə nə ləməki."
9. ətəya ba, "a ndzaa aama."
10. makə kira dəsənətii ka tii ləwa, ətəya ləgwa oo'ya, "ka wu da də ləwuna?"
11. ənki dəsənətii, "ka unə patə."
12. makə fii tii oo'ya, ka unə pat, waata ətəya vii ka pitya.
13. pitya a tsəbəgi ləwutə patə.
14. waatoo tumə, see ha'a.
15. ma kira dəsənətii ləwu ka tii, see ka pitya viinə tii.
16. ma pityata, kə səbərəgi ci.
17. amma ma manjeevinə nga asəngwanga, kə ənvugi tii, acii madəfənə.
18. ma nə dəsənətii ka nəngənə, makə manjeevinaakii ca tsəbəgi ləwuta.
19. waata ma ka əndə'i usərə, ənki ci ka manjeevinaakii, "shigimə ka nya nee ka unə."

20. makə shigi tii, ma ca nee, kə ənvugi tii patə.
21. ənki ci ka tii, "mi dya ənvugi tə una, pooshi unə kunə nji a əbura?"
22. ənki tii, "ma kira hə zəma, see ka unə patə cii kwa vii.
23. pooshi hə ka kira ka inə neenə əsə."
24. ənki dəsənətii, "wu da nə ka unə pata?"
25. ənki tii, "waatsə ma'a asəkə burəha."
26. ənki dəsənətii, "gimagi d'ii ka unə patə, ka nya nee ka hə."
27. waata pitya a vyagi liminəkii, ənki ci, "ləwiigi d'ii biḃinaaki zəku'i."
28. waata pitya a vyagi liminəkii.
29. makə nee ci, makə biḃinə.
30. waata taḃə, asəngwangə a əsətə liminə nga pitya, ca vugədəgi dzadə.
31. ma ci nee, asee tə pitya vugədəgi ci.
32. pitya a hwiipaa saakii.

TRANSLATION

Note: The phrase *ma shi uushi a d'ii*—lit. *what happened once*—is the standard introduction to a folktale.

1. Once upon a time, hyena gave birth to many children.
2. He put them in a cave.
3. But, their father would not live with them.
4. It was only food he was bringing to them.
5. One day, rabbit came, he met the small hyenas who were in that cave.
6. When rabbit came, he said to them, "I have come so that we (you and I) (will) live with your father."
7. Those hyena children asked him, "What is your name?"
8. That rabbit said to them, "My name is 'For you all'".
9. They said, "O.K., let's live together."
10. When their father brought meat to them, they asked, "Who is this meat for?"

11. Their father said, "For you all."
12. When they heard, "For you all," they gave (it) to rabbit.
13. Rabbit ate up all that meat.
14. Well always, (it was) only thus.
15. When their father brought meat to them, it was only to rabbit that they would give (it).
16. As for that rabbit, he grew fat.
17. But, as for the hyena's children, they grew skinny because of hunger.
18. What their father would be thinking, (it was as if) his children were eating up that meat.
19. Well, one day, he said to his children, "Come out for me to see you."
20. When they came out, when he saw (them), (he saw that) they had all grown skinny.
21. He said to them, "What has made you grow skinny, weren't you getting full?"
22. They said, "When you brought food, it was only to 'For you all' that you would give (it)."
23. You would not bring us ours also."
24. Their father said, "Who is 'For you all'?"
25. They said, "There (he is) still in the cave."
26. Their father said, "Come out 'For you all', so that I see you."
27. Well, rabbit stuck out his ears, he said, "(Here) take my shoes for me first."
28. Well, rabbit stuck out his ears.
29. When he saw (them), (the ears looked) like shoes.
30. Well [ideophone], hyena grabbed rabbit's ears, he threw (them) far away.
31. When he saw, well, it was rabbit he had thrown.
32. Rabbit ran away.

STORY TWO —by David Dahiru Shala

1. ma shi uushi a d̄ii ahada asəngwanga tii da kwara.
2. nga'a də asəngwanga nə tsəbənə tə kwara.
3. see asəngwanga a d̄a deberya, ca əsə guvaanə tii da kwara.
4. ma ka əndə'i usərə, asəngwanga a ləgwa a ma kwara, "nga'a ka nyi aanwa d̄a guvaanə, amma yoo ngwaliiki acii mapatsə anəku."
5. uu'i kwara, "gə ha ngwalə.
6. ənta mapa nə əndə anəkii.
7. liminə cii kwa nee makə mapa."
8. uu'i asəngwanga, "a də mi cii kwa pa, ma kə shigi uushi ka ha?
9. wiinə ta ngutə dabbanyinə tə'i sə nga paginatii patə."
10. uu'i kwara, "pooshi ta mi cii kya pagi, see hwiinə nə naaki acii uushi."
11. too, ma ka əndə'i usərə, makə shii asəngwanga, makə njii təya bəərə, asəngwanga a idə tə kwara.
12. makə zhimə tə kwara, ca ləd̄a tə asəngwanga.
13. makə ma'ya asəngwanga ka hatə kullii ci, ca ba ka kwara, "ənkii hə bii ka nyi oo'ya, pooshi sə nga paginaakwa?
14. də mi d̄ii digə hə tə nya?"
15. kwara a palə saakii.
16. waata makə tikə guvaanə, asəngwanga a palə abii minaakii.
17. ca ba ka kya, "asee pooshi əndə ka shii haala nga ənda.
18. nee kə dægəgi kwara tə nyi, ta də mi digə ci tə nyi ma shiimə nyi."
19. ha'a nə sətə shi a d̄ii ahada kwara tii da asəngwanga.

TRANSLATION

1. (This is a folktale) about hyena and donkey.
2. Hyena wanted to eat donkey.
3. Well, hyena was clever, he made friends with donkey.

4. One day, hyena asked donkey, "I want us to be friends, but, well, I'm afraid of those horns on your head."
5. Donkey said, "Don't be afraid."
6. It's not horns that are the thing(s) on my head.
7. It's ears that you see (looking) like horns."
8. Hyena said, "With what do you fight, when something comes at you?"
9. Look at every (kind of) animal, they all have a weapon."
10. Donkey said, "There isn't anything I fight, my only (weapon) is running from something."
11. Well, one day, when hyena knew (it would look) like they were playing, hyena bit donkey.
12. When (it) pained donkey, he kicked hyena.
13. When hyena got up at the place he had fallen, he said to donkey, "(But didn't) you tell me you had no weapon?"
14. What did you hit me with?"
15. Donkey ran away.
16. Well, when the friendship had broken, hyena went to his wife.
17. He said to her, "Well, no one can know the peculiarities of (another) person."
18. See, donkey struck me, (but) whatever he hit me with I don't know."
19. That's what happened once between donkey and hyena.

STORY THREE —by Pitrus Yata Muda

1. ma shi uushi a d'ii, makə ngira əndə'i əndə minə, ca kapaa tə ki də madəfəna.
2. pooshi ci ka vətə zəma.
3. ma miita, də madəfəna nə ki ta guci.
4. makə mbee madəfəna ka ki, kya ba ka ci oo'ya, "ka nya d'fa yitə əna, wiinə pooshi zəma?"
5. waata kəda'a saakii.
6. pooshi ci wabi.
7. makə nee miitə pooshi ci ka wabəna ka ki, yoo wiinə kə mbavə madəfəna ka ki, waata, kya d'əəbərə satə aha əndə'i shanda.
8. kya dzə ka ngərənə tə shandata, acii putə nga zəmə kə uugi.
9. makə nee ci kə iibərə minaakii, ca nə'u tə ki aha shandata.
10. makə nee ki ka ci, kya ngwaləgi.
11. waata marə marə marə marə, udzənə nə shishinətə acii ma nəngənətə, makə əndətə nə madəfəna.
12. pooshi ki ka uudə neenə ka ci.
13. kə təkuree ki ka sə'watə tuunə.
14. makə əncəhə ci, ca 'wa tə ki ka təya dzə tuu satii ahakii.
15. ənki ca, "kwa dzaanwu asii səgaanwu."
16. ənki ki ka ci, "pooshi ka dzənə."
17. makə təkuree ci ka paakyatənə tə ki, ca dzə ka bəlhə hara makinə.
18. ma ca dzə ta da ma, pooshi makinə ka uudənə tə ci.
19. ma ca alə ka ca bəlhə, pooshi minə ca luuvə ka kya dzə ka ndzaanə də madəfəna.
20. də ha'a təngatəgi lhə'wanaakii ka ci də minə, amma kə vii ka ci tə gandzaanə ətə pooshi ci ka mbəfənə aciikii.
21. ha'a nə sətə sha d'ii ahada malhə'wa tii da minə.

TRANSLATION

1. Once upon a time, when a certain man had married—lit. *picked up*—a wife, he lost her—lit. *put her down*—with hunger.
2. He would not give her food.
3. (As for) that woman, she was always with hunger.
4. When she got very hungry, she said to him, “What am I to do about this, look there’s no food.”
5. Well, (he was) absolutely quiet.
6. He did not speak.
7. When that woman saw he would not speak to her, (and) well look here, hunger had attacked her, well, (then) she deserted (her husband and went) to another lover.
8. She went to marry that lover, because of food only.
9. When he saw his wife had deserted, he followed her to that lover.
10. When she saw him, she became frightened.
11. Well [ideophones], her body was shaking—lit. *dancing*—because she was thinking, (it was as if) hunger (itself) was (personified in) that person.
12. She didn’t want to see him.
13. She wasn’t able to keep from crying.
14. When he came near, he called to her (saying) that they should go to his place.
15. He said, “Let’s go home.”
16. She said to him, “(I) won’t go.”
17. When he was unable to get her back, he went to court other women.
18. When he went anywhere, no women wanted him.
19. When he looked (for someone) to court, there was no woman who would agree to go live with hunger.
20. Thus his stinginess hindered him with women, but (it) gave him bachelorhood which he could not get well from.
21. That’s what happened once between a stingy person and his wife.

APPENDIX B. Body parts

| | |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| ədzəma -ə | chest |
| ədzəŋa -ə | vagina (= fukənə) |
| aginə | intestines |
| bərəda -ə | Achilles' tendon |
| bə'a | back |
| bə'asəda -ə | top of foot |
| baginə | face |
| basanə | arm (from wrist to shoulder) |
| buura -ə | elbow |
| ciinə | hand, arm |
| ciizəmanə | right hand (= ciizəmanə) |
| dzələŋa -ə | heel of foot |
| fədfəha -ə | gums |
| fukənə | vagina (= ədzəŋa) |
| furəŋa -ə | throat |
| fwasanə | back of lower leg |
| gədfəhanə | thigh, upper leg |
| gərəntədfənə | back of neck (= tsaana) |
| gana | tongue |
| gilha -ə | ingernail |
| ginə | eye, face |
| gugufinə | lungs |
| gwadfa -ə | knuckle |
| gwaguryaminə | chin |
| gyalha'unə | armpit |
| hangaba | palate |
| handuudfanə | brain (= kanduudfanə) |
| hi'uginə | eyeball |
| hurəndaka -ə | back of knee |
| hwahwəŋa -ə | cheek |
| hwalhəciinə | forearm |
| idəna -ə | blood |
| ida -ə | knee |
| ilədzəma -ə | rib |
| ila -ə | bone |

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| kanduudānə | brain (= handuudānə) |
| katingəlinə | part of buttocks (?) |
| kunwaciinə | forehead |
| kuvə'unə | skin |
| kwalhipitəginə | eye lid |
| kwangəryaminə | jaw |
| liminə | ear (= ləminə) |
| linyinə | tooth (= lənyinə) |
| ma | mouth |
| madzəna | left hand |
| moodəfa -ə | heart |
| moojiciinə | fingers |
| moojisəda -ə | toes |
| moovəda | bottom (= moovəda) |
| na -ə | head |
| ngudəka -ə | Adam's apple |
| nwa -ə | hip(s) |
| palhəkənə | shoulder |
| purəganə | side |
| pwa'a | testicle (= shipirinə) |
| səda -ə | foot, leg |
| səka -ə | stomach, abdomen |
| səkəciinə | palm of hand |
| səkəsəda -ə | sole of foot |
| shinkinə | hair |
| shina -ə | nose |
| shipirinə | testicle (= pwa'a) |
| shirəga -ə | lower leg |
| shishinə | body (stem: shi) |
| tangala | side |
| tsaana -ə | back of neck (= gərəntədənə) |
| tuntulha -ə | ankle |
| untsa | penis |
| usanə | the private parts of the body |
| uura | neck, throat |
| vərivərinə | eyebrow |
| 'wanə | breast |
| zhimbəda -ə | navel |

APPENDIX C. Kinship terms

| | |
|---------------|---|
| dənə | father, parent's male sibling or cousin (<i>pl. dəsənyinə, irr. poss., see section 2.2.2.2.</i>) |
| duura –ə | relative, kin |
| dzədzənə | grandfather, grandfather's male sibling or cousin (<i>pl. dzədzəshī'inə, irr. poss., see section 2.2.2.2.</i>) |
| gawa –ə | older sibling or cousin (<i>pl. gayinə</i>) |
| guva | friend (<i>inher. poss.</i>) |
| jijinə | grandchild |
| kəkənə | grandmother, grandmother's female sibling or cousin (<i>pl. kəkəshī'inə, irr. poss., see section 2.2.2.2.</i>) |
| məkaja –ə | youngest child |
| mənə | mother, parent's female sibling or cousin (<i>pl. məsənyinə, irr. poss., see section 2.2.2.2.</i>) |
| madzəga –ə | younger sibling or cousin (<i>pl. majiginə</i>) |
| madfanə | fiancee, new bride (<i>pl. madafīinə</i>) |
| maduunə daadə | parent's older male sibling or cousin |
| maduunə yaayi | parent's older female sibling or cousin |

| | |
|-------------|---|
| mafəḁə'wata | wife of mother's brother or of mother's cousin (receives children if both parents die) |
| minə | woman, wife (<i>pl.</i> makinə) |
| ndzəkənwunə | sibling, cousin (= cikənwunə) (<i>pl.</i> ndzəkənwushi'inə, <i>inher. poss.</i>) |
| ngura -ə | man, husband (<i>pl.</i> ngwiirənə) |
| nwuzhinə | co-wife (<i>inher. poss.</i>) |
| sərəhwa -ə | parent-in-law, child-in-law (<i>pl.</i> shirəhinə) |
| sərəhwuminə | mother-in-law |
| uncitəminə | female child (<i>pl.</i> uuji makinə) |
| undzə daadə | parent's younger male sibling or cousin |
| undzə yaayi | parent's younger female sibling or cousin |
| uuzənə | child (<i>pl.</i> manjeevinə) |

APPENDIX D. Inherently possessed nouns

| | |
|----------------|---|
| ədzəma -ə | chest |
| bərəda -ə | Achilles' tendon |
| ba'a | back |
| ba'asəfa -ə | top of foot |
| baginə | face |
| basanə | arm (from wrist to shoulder) |
| buura -ə | elbow |
| ciinə | hand, arm |
| ciizəmanə | right hand (=ciizəmanə) |
| dzələŋa -ə | heel of foot |
| fədfəha -ə | gums |
| furəŋa -ə | throat |
| fwasanə | back of lower leg |
| gədfəhanə | thigh, upper leg |
| gərəntəfəna | back of neck |
| gana | tongue |
| gilha -ə | finger nail |
| ginə | eye, face |
| guva | friend |
| gwafə -ə | knuckle |
| gwaguryaminə | chin |
| gyalha'unə | armpit |
| hangəba | palate |
| hi'uginə | eyeball |
| hurəndaka -ə | back of knee |
| hwahwəŋa -ə | cheek |
| hwalhəciinə | forearm |
| ida -ə | knee |
| ilədzəma -ə | rib |
| kunwaciinə | forehead |
| kuvə'unə | skin |
| kwalhipitəginə | eye lid |
| kwangəryaminə | jaw |
| ləma -ə | name (Note: not body part or kin. term) |

| | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| liminə | ear (= ləminə) |
| linyinə | tooth (= lənyinə) |
| ma | mouth |
| madzəna | left hand |
| moodəfa -ə | heart |
| moojiciinə | fingers |
| moojisəda -ə | toes |
| movəda | bottom (= moovəda) |
| na -ə | head |
| ndzəkənwuna | sibling, cousin |
| ngudəka -ə | Adam's apple |
| nwa -ə | hip(s) |
| nwuzhinə | co-wife |
| palhəkənə | shoulder |
| purəŋənə | side |
| səda -ə | foot, leg |
| səka -ə | stomach, abdomen |
| səkəciinə | palm of hand |
| səkəsəda -ə | sole of foot |
| shina -ə | nose |
| shirəŋa -ə | lower leg |
| shishinə | body (stem: shi) |
| tangala | side |
| tsaana -ə | back of neck |
| tuntulha -ə | ankle |
| untsa | penis |
| uura | neck, throat |
| vərivərinə | eyebrow |
| 'wana | breast |
| zhimbəda -ə | navel |

PART II
A DICTIONARY OF THE GUDE LANGUAGE

Introduction to the dictionary

Alphabetical order and spelling

Main entries in the Gude–English dictionary are written in the standard Gude orthography. See section 1.4 for a discussion of the spelling conventions used. The main entries are arranged in the following alphabetical order:

a, a, b, b̄, c, d, d̄, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m,

n, ŋ, o, p, r, s, t, u, v, w, 'w, y, 'y, z

Glottal stop “ ’ ” is not written before a vowel and is disregarded in alphabetization.

Tone

Tone, which is not written in the standard orthography, is indicated in the dictionary by a tone pattern given on the main entry or the verbal noun. Acute accent “ ’ ” indicates high tone and grave accent “ ` ” indicates low tone. Absence of tone marks indicates that the tone is uncertain, usually because of incomplete field notes. Often the last syllable in the word will lack a tone mark. This occurs when the underlying form of the word contains a final high vowel which is devoiced or not pronounced in the citation form—i.e., before pause—as in the following example:

tákúṅə n. *darkness*.

For further discussion of this arbitrary spelling convention see section 1.4.

Loan words

The notation “ < H. ” indicates a borrowing from Hausa, and “ < F. ” indicates a borrowing from Fulani (Fula). The name “ Abraham ” before a quotation refers to R.C. Abraham’s (1962) *Dictionary of the Hausa Language* (2nd edition). “ Taylor ” before a quotation refers to F.W. Taylor’s (1932) *A Fulani–English Dictionary*.

Nouns

Noun stem class membership is indicated indirectly. Any noun main entry which ends with the sequence "...nə" is to be considered a captive class noun (see section 2.1.1) unless otherwise stated.

Example:

mínə *n.* (*pl.* mákínə) *woman, wife.*

Free class nouns (see section 2.1.1) are given in prepause (citation) form where all stem final high vowels become "...a". Thus, a "-ə" following a noun main entry indicates that the word is a free class noun with an underlying final high vowel.

Example:

ngúrá -ə *n.* (*pl.* ngwúirənə) *man, husband.*

Irregular noun plurals are listed in parentheses (as above). Regular plurals are not listed (see section 2.1.1).

The notation "(*dead pl.*)" after a noun entry indicates that the word may be one of the "dead" plural forms discussed in section 2.2.1.2. Note that only a few of the dead plurals have been marked. A full historical investigation of these forms is beyond the scope of this study.

The notation "(*action n.*)" after a noun entry indicates that the word is an abstract noun, denoting an action, whose root never appears as the main verb of a sentence. Rather than appear as main verbs, these words appear as nominal direct objects of a main verb such as *dá* 'do, make' (sometimes *la* 'cut' or *ka* 'throw'). See section 5.9.

A great many agentive nouns are formed by the prefix "ma-" and instrumental nouns by the prefix "mə-" (see section 2.1.2.2). The symbol "†" is used to indicate some of these nouns. Often it is difficult to identify these nouns since the root forms from which they are derived may no longer be used in Modern Gude. Many of the words which have not been marked by "†" may well belong to this set also.

Verbs

Verb main entries consist of the isolated stem form and are followed by the verbal noun—the normal citation form. Tone is indicated for the verbal noun. Verbal nouns are generally not used as main entries. Any irregular or unexpected forms of the verb are also listed following the main entry. In general, regularly formed verbal extensions are not listed (see section 4.7).

DICTIONARY

- əbu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. əbùná) (iter. hæbu)* 1. boil, bubble, foam. See kudapə, tsəfə. 2. become angry. 3. break out in rash. See hwafə. 4. pester someone to pay debt.
- əbù'ídəná -ə *n. (comp. from əbu + idəna)* spleen (?).
- əbùlègáne *n. (comp. from əbu + ləganə)* gourd used for carrying seeds when planting.
- əburə *v.i. (vn. əbúráne) (iter. hæburə)* have full stomach, be replete. See adə, hankurə.
- əbu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. əbùná) (= bu)* fill mouth, take mouthful of (liquid only).
- əbwá -ə *n.* bottle shaped gourd, bottle, cup.
- əbi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. əbìná) (= bi)* break, snap (such as a stick). See badzə, batsə, ta.
- əcadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. əcáďáne)* scratch ground in order to find something. *agi əcadə zəmə nə gyagyinə 'the chickens are scratching for food.'* See kucadə, kucidə, kucalə.
- ədə *v.t. (vn. ədàná) (iter. hæədə)* 1. blow on (horn). See puu. 2. grind (dry things). See aalhə, ləgədə, taapu'u. 3. press someone to the ground in wrestling.
- ədərə *v.i. (vn. ədáráne)* limp. See madərə.
- ədərəntənfù *n. (comp. from ədərə + əntənfu)* type of millipede (with flat back like an ədərə). See ngurəngurəne.
- ədərəwá -ə *n. (comp. from ədərə + wa)* bed bug.
- ədərə -ə *n.* wooden bed with legs. See parələwa, rəba, hangabaane.
- ədə *n.* dog. əda səbanə 'hunting dog.' See boola, hwaba.
- ədəne *n.* false oath, lie that is sworn to be truth. See da'wa, jirakəne.

- àdànfwá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* əda + ənfwa) type of ant (small, dark brown, eats fruit). See kanshagya.
- àdzàmá -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) chest.
- àdzá -ə *n.* 'zana' mat. See daagwa. See dza.
- ádzàkàýá *n.* type of animal (arboreal mammal, bush baby?).
- àdzàŋá -ə *n.* vagina (inoffensive term, = fukəna offensive term).
- àdzàwá *n.* drying platform. See zərazəra.
- əgìná *n.* (*pl.* əginyinə) any small bird. See shaara.
- əgìnákáɓə̀nə *n.* (*comp. from* əgina + kəbənə) type of bird (brown, long thin beak, eats cotton).
- əgyádùunə *n.* husband's hut in compound (usu. on higher ground) (= dəwa).
- əhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn.* əhə́nà) (= hə).
- əhwá -ə *n.* (*pl.* uuhinə) goat. See tangara, barəwa, ndəgunwunə.
- əji *v.i. and v.t. (vn.* əjìná) (*iter.* həəji) 1. pour out, dump. See cirə, gə, tsavə.
 2. decorate with marks, lines or scars.
- əjìmá -ə *n.* man's granary (made of woven grass plastered with cow dung). See dəɓwa.
- ələ *v.i. and v.t. (vn.* ələ́nà) (*iter.* ngəələ) 1. pull, drag. See tədə, mbudə.
 2. cover up.
- əlà'ínə *n.* okra.
- əlíŋə nine.
- əliŋəpu'unə ninety.
- əlyarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn.* əlyáɾə́nə) 1. become watery (of mush). 2. get sore throat, become hoarse. 3. get out of tune (of drum).
- əmbi *v.i. and v.t. (vn.* əmbìná) 1. cure, get well, heal up. 2. be enough. See mbədə, mbii.
- əmburə *v.i. (vn.* əmbúɾə́nə) have diarrhea.
- əmbúɾə́nə *n.* diarrhea.
- əmpúne *n.* flour (from any grain, lit. "soft stuff").

- əmputəkəbənə *n.* (*comp. from əmpu + tə + kəbənə*) cotton (fiber not plant).
See kəbənə.
- əmpútámá *n.* (*comp. from əmpu + tə + ma*) lip (= bama).
- ənə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn. ənəná*) (*iter. məənə*) 1. do again, repeat. See jikə, zha.
2. go back, take back, return.
- əna -ə *independent demonstrative pro.* this.
- əncidə *v.t.* (*vn. əncídəná*) (*iter. ngəəcidə*) spit (saliva) on the ground. kə cii
Musa giirənə 'Musa spit saliva.'
- əndə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn. əndəná*) 1. dye black or indigo. 2. become dark.
- əndəfaara *n.* (*comp. from əndə + faara*) pagan (neither Muslim nor Christian).
(= bavəranə).
- əndəfwasə *n.* (*comp. from əndə + fwasə*) mugger, highway robber. See mahəra.
- əndə'i *gr. form.* another, another one, some, someone. əndə'i ənda 'another person, someone.'
- əndərágwá *n.* (*comp. from əndə + rəgwə*) person who speaks to girl's father
on behalf of suitor.
- əndəshínkínə *n.* (*comp. from əndə + shinkinə*) human being. See ənda.
- əndá -ə *n.* (*pl. ìnjá -ə*) someone, person, human being.
- əndzə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn. əndzəná*) (*iter. ngəəndzə*) 1. scrape or get scraped
smooth with a tool, scrape (mush) from a pot. See həryəŋə, hurəŋə, hwatə.
2. paint red.
- əndzəgálnə *n.* So-and-so (young female). See zana, gee.
- əndzənə *n.* 'red' metal, brass. See tibisa, kookura.
- əndzərə *n.* (*pl. əndzəriinə*) member of any of several tribes to the northeast of
the Gude area (not Fali).
- əndzáfə'ùudá *n.* (*comp. from əndzadə + uudə*) type of grass (used for
thatch).
- əndzáfá -ə *n.* thatch, roofing grass. See shabwada, zadə.
- əndzánə *n.* (= uuzanvwa).
- əndzì *adv.* (= indzii) now.
- ənfwá -ə *n.* (*pl. ənfuginə*) tree.

ənfwáďə four.

ənfwadəpu'unə forty.

ənfwálá -ə *n.* (*pl.* ənfwalinə) 1. person of the Fali tribe. 2. slave (= mava).

ənfwánə *n.* flatus. *ta* ənfwanə 'break wind.'

əngíná *n.* small black or white rice-like grain (perhaps, H. *acca*, Abraham: '*digitaria exilis*').

ənhýá -ə *n.* (*pl.* mihínə) member of 'blacksmith' caste. See *nwuya*.

ənkí (This form is used only with completive aspect, but never occurs with the aspect marker *kə*) said. ənkí Musa, "nga'a baa hə kwa?" 'Musa said, "Did you sleep well?."' See *ba*, *uu'i*.

ənlhə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ənlhəná) (*iter.* ngəəlhə) 1. shatter, break into pieces. See *ta*. 2. retreat, route. 3. break (rope, string). 4. pick fruit.

ənlhàká -ə *n.* mouse's nest (= *uulhaka*).

ənsə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ənsəná) (*iter.* ngəəsə) dig up. See *ra*.

ənsəné *n.* type of thorn tree or bush.

ənshàréəné *n.* (*abst. n.* < ənshara) being a chief's son. *ka* əsharəəné nə ci 'he is a chief's son. (*lit.* he is at princehood).'

ənshàrá -ə *n.* (*pl.* ənsharinə or ənsharənə) chief's son. See *kwatama*.

ənshìďá -ə *n.* (*pl.* ənshìďinə ?) hyrax.

ənshìďá -ə *n.* red body coloring, H. *jan kasa*.

ənshíďáď *adj.* (with *pl.* subject) consisting of small sand-sized particles.

ənshínə *adv.* today.

əntə *v.i.* (*vn.* əntəná) (*iter.* məətə) die. See *za*.

əntə *v.t.* (*vn.* əntəná) (*iter.* ngəətə) pinch off (piece of food).

əntəďəné *n.* type of mouse or rat. See *hima*.

əntəďákəvəďá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* əntəďakə + *vəďa*) charm or potion said to make one invisible.

əntəďáká -ə *n.* ashes.

əntətəďiine *n.* (*dead pl.?*) fire fly.

əntà *gr. form.* 1. negative particle used in focus constructions. ənta Məda gi a luuma ənshinə 'it was not Musa that went to market today.' 2. negative particle preceding question which expects affirmative answer. ənta Musa gi a luuma kwa? 'wasn't it Musa who went to the market?'

əntánfù *n.* (= *lower dialect*, əntoofa) God.

əntànyíṅə *n.* truth (= tantanyinə).

əntóofà -ə *n.* (*upper dialect*, = əntanfu).

əntsárá *n.* meat broth (?).

əntsa'a *v.i.* (*vn.* əntsá'ánə) make clicking sound to show displeasure or disgust.

əntsaḥə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* əntsáhə́nə) move farther or closer. əncahanə 'move closer to speaker.'

ənvu *v.i.* (*vn.* ənvùná) become thin or emaciated. manvukii 'emaciated.'

ənvùhá -ə *n.* type of large lizard (lives on dry land, land monitor?, larger than cānciranə).

ənvwa— *n.* See ənvwiinə.

ənvwá *n.* (*upper dialect*) beer. (= mbala).

ənvwagyaagya *n.* (*comp. from* ənvwa + gyaagya) chicken droppings.

ənvwàkəlánə *n.* (*comp. from* ənvwa + kələnə) bits of metal scattered on the ground around a forge.

ənvwàlimínə *n.* (*comp. from* ənvwa + liminə) ear wax.

ənvwiinə *n.* (*plural*) (singular ənvwa is only used in compounds) excrement, dung. See kuḃa.

ənyadə *v.i.* (*vn.* ənyád'ənə) be lazy. (participial form is not used.) See manyada, ndədakə.

ənyánə *n.* groundnut (peanut). (= ənyatə uva 'groundnut of Bornu').

ənyàsàṅá -ə *n.* (= ənyatəsəṅa).

ənyàtəsàṅá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ənya + tə + səṅa) bambara groundnuts. See majala.

əpi *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* əpíná) (= pina) 1. breathe. 2. cool by blowing. See lərə, tsəvu. 3. be alive. See pinə. əpi səka *idiom.* rest, become calm (lit. cool stomach). See əpina.

əpwánə *n.* drying row of freshly cut guinea-corn stalks. ka əpwanə 'make...'

àrá *n.* coldness. See raara'a.

əs(ə) *adv.* too, also.

əsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. əsəná) (iter. kəəsə)* 1. catch, hold. See va, kəla, kətsa'u, vavərə. 2. start. əsənə ka... 'starting from...' See fuda. 3. bid, make offer. 4. become thick (of liquid). (masəkii 'thick').

əshí *n.* (= ishi).

ətə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ətəná) (= əteenə)* lack, be less than enough, do less than enough. See gadə.

əta -ə *independent demonstrative pro.* that (close).

(ə)tii *pron.* they. (3rd pers. pl.).

ətsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ətsəná)* 1. keep eye on someone not trusted. 2. (with negative) lack interest in, be disinterested.

ətsə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ətsə'unə) (iter. kəətsə'u)* filter, strain (with mətsə'wa 'strainer') See ləvə.

ətsa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ətsəná)* 1. burn up. 2. roast over open fire. See hənə, vuu.

ətsa -ə *independent demonstrative pro.* that (far).

əzəhá -ə *n.* type of tree. See papa.

əzhá *n.* anything harmful or dangerous (used only by adults speaking to children).

əzhák *id.* few of (?). See badəgal.

a *prep.* at, in, on, to, toward.

ádəgì *adv.* upward.

aagha *v.i. (vn. àaghánə)* lack material things, be poor. See maagha. See ghatə.

aalhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. àalhnə)* grind (grain) coarsely. See ədə.

áash-áash used to call grown dog. See koosh-koosh.

àbàwà'á *adj. n.* mature but not ripe (of fruit or vegetable).

aba'a *prep.* in back of.

aβii *prep.* near, close to.

ácii *prep.* in the hand of, in the possession of, because (of).

acii mi *gr. form.* why.

adə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. àdónə)* eat (soft food that need not be chewed). See tsəbə, zəmə, əburə, hankurə, ngafə, pwatsə, təfə, wurəna.

àd'àyá *n.* grey monkey. See waandu.

áfútáhyá'à *adj. n.* light gray.

agi *prep.* in the midst of, among.

àgínə *n.* 1. intestine. See mbəərəshidə, shidə. 2. small green bitter tomato-like fruit, H. gauta. See ngayakənə.

agyanə *prep.* on, upon, about. (*from* agi + anə). (= anə).

agyuuva *n.* (*comp. from* agi + uuva) light yellow tomato-like fruit, H. yalo.

ahadahada *prep.* between.

a'i *gr. form.* final particle expressing joy. kə uugi nyi a'i 'I am finished, hurray!'

àjijìn *adj.* (= tajjìn) filthy, dirty, unpleasant to look at.

ákákáyì *interjection* expressing amazement. akakayi kə uugi nyi mbee 'wow, I can do it!'

akunwacii *prep.* in front of.

alə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. àlənə)* search, look for. See kwakulhə, yaamə. alə ləwa 'hunt' See zəmakə.

àləhálìmínə *n.* (*comp.?*) provocation, goading, looking for an argument.

álàbá *n.* type of fly (large, bites in rainy season).

alara *v.i. (vn. àlārənə)* (= alara'a) 1. burp. 2. spill water from full container.

alhə *v.i. (vn. álhənə)* swell, puff up, bloat.

àlhə'álhá -ə *n.* type of edible mushroom. See moombuginə.

álhá -ə *n.* type of termite (builds large flat mounds) See məbərə.

àlínə *n.* egg.

amə *pron.* we (1st pers. pl. incl.).

ama *prep.* at the edge of.

ama *gr. form.* to where, to what place.

ám̄bà *gr. form.* particle requesting agreement. dzanwu ka uuzanə, amba? 'let us (dual) go farm, do you agree?'

anə *prep.* (from a 'at' + nə 'head') on, on top of, about. (= agyanə).

anə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. áńńə)* (*upper dialect*, = anyi, inə).

ángárédánə *n.* male hyena. See asəngwəŋa.

anwu *pron.* we (1st pers. dual).

anyi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ányíńə)* (= anə, inə) 1. tie. See gurətə, gwala, təkulhə, tsəva. 2. get ready (for war).

apaa *adv.* on the ground.

apurəŋa *prep.* beside.

àrə̀bìbìńə *n.* bark of tree or plant.

àrəd̀d̀d̀ńə *n.* scorpion. See ganganga.

áránáđò *n.* [

àr̀àbá *n.* 1. large or buck teeth. tə'i araba a makii 'he has buck teeth.' See kwalinya. 2. type of animal (extinct, antelope-like, formerly hunted).

àrásánə *n.* type of edible fruit of vine.

àrđó *n.* [

àryás *v. id.* (= ryas) putting small hard food (sə nga tsəbənə) in mouth.

asəkə *prep.* (= askə) in, inside of.

asək(ə) *adv.* inside.

ásəká *gr. form.* used as response when one's name is called.

àsəngwəŋá -ə *n.* hyena. See angərədanə.

ashi *prep.* against.

asii *adv.* at home.

atangala *prep.* across from.

atsa *prep.* under.

a *gr. form.* marker of neutral aspect.

a uura *prep.* (= oora) at the entrance to.

avəliminə *n.* (*comp. from* avə + liminə) arrow head with barbs. See ava.

àvǎ -ə *n.* arrow. See avəliminə, mashiwaha, hwandaḃa.

ayii *v.i.* (*vn.* áyíinə) be ashamed. ayiinə 'shame.' ayiikii 'he is ashamed.'

áyíibyà *n.* (= ayiiba) [*< F.*] sin.

áyíwǎ *n.* grasshopper. See taləláləla'inə, dzamboola, kaaciŋa, kalid'ya'ənvwii, masambala.

àyíwàmǎḃəfəḃə *n.* (*comp. from* ayiwa + maḃəfəḃə) locust.

bəərə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* bəərənǎ) (= buurə) think (about), reflect (on), consider. (bəərətə 'remember').

bəbəhá *v. id.* speaking in a low voice so as not to be overheard.

bəlǎrá -ə *n.* (*action n.*) chest cold, cough. See dza, meemanjivinə.

bəlamə *v.i.* (*vn.* bəláməḃə) (= mbəlaḃəḃə) stutter.

bəlǎ *n.* type of tree (with edible fruit, sap is used as glue). There are two types: bəladiza red, bəlooda white.

bəlǎakáyà *n.* (= bəlankaya) praise song.

bəlámásǎrá *n.* pigeon.

bəlḃə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* bəlḃənǎ) court, woo.

bəlḃá -ə *n.* courting, wooing. See bəlḃəḃə.

bəndzərə *v.i.* (*vn.* bəndzərənə) grow up, become old enough that adults begin treating one with respect (of boys only).

bərábǎrá -ə *n.* dust.

bəràḃá -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) Achilles' tendon.

bəràḃǎ *n.* (*action n.*) hopping on one foot while holding other foot behind. See bərəḃa, kəlalaŋ.

bərákwǎ -ə *n.* small chicken hut (mud walls, thatch roof). See dzəgə'yaka.

bərələ *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* bərələnə) prop door closed with poles. See pa'a.

bərə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* bəránə) despise or fail to appreciate something one has been given.

bərə'i (= bəroo'i) two.

bəryàntsǎḃə *n.* thread.

bəryàŋǎ -ə *n.* type of tree or bush.

bát *v. id.* forgetting completely.

ba *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bānā)* 1. speak, say, tell. See wabə, mædə, uu'i, ənki, wa, 'wa. 2. (in pot making) build up mouth of pot by adding clay.

bá *n.* 1. leaf. 2. annual plant, weed (not grass). (*pl.* is banyinə 'kinds of leaves', never biinə).

baa *v.i. (vn. báanə)* (note long stem vowel) baa (completive form). See ndzaa. 1. lie down, sleep, pass night. See tsəfə. 2. repent, ask forgiveness. kə baa nyi akunwaciiku 'forgive me (*lit.* I lie down before you).' See təfə.

baarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bāarənā)* 1. hang out yarn in preparation for weaving. 2. spin web (of spider).

bàavá -ə *n.* scar.

bàa'wàtá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ba + 'wata) bean leaves.

báayà *n.* loin covering of beads or leather worn by young girls (= kagənkwadə).

bàazhìwá *n.* (*comp. from* ba + zhiwa (?)) type of tree (with leaf used in sauce).

bà' *v. id.* receiving into hand.

bà'á *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) back.

bà'əsəďá -ə *n.* (= basəďa) (*comp. from* ba'a + səďa) (*inher. poss., body part*) top of foot. See səkəsəďa.

bàbàlá *n.* (*comp. from* ba + bəla) stage of guinea-corn growth (waist high, said to resemble bəla).

bábà *adj. n.* "leaf" green. See ba.

bàbárá *n.* open space, plain, open level country without mountains.

baḅ *id.* See babə.

baḅə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. báḅə́nə)* 1. pound flat. See dzaḅə. 2. beat up someone. (= mbaḅə). See fəlhə.

bàdəgəl *id.* most of, the majority of. See əzhak.

bádərá -ə *n.* food eaten in secret to avoid sharing.

bàdávà *n.* 1. unmarried man. 2. (= ma'aləmakinə). See lyawara.

badz *id.* See badzə.

badzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bādžəná)* dig up (a root crop) with chopping action of hoe. See ra, uuza.

bádáwu *adj. id.* long, tall (of inanimate things).

báfá *n.* large strong man. See bwada.

bagəbagərə See bagərə.

bágám *v. id.* meeting unexpectedly.

bagərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bəgərəné)* 1. arrange objects carefully (such as in making a stone fence). See biḡə. 2. prepare speech carefully. də bagəbagərə 'in a well-ordered manner.'

bàgá *n.* sheep.

bəgəngədəné *n.* type of grass. (different than bajəngədəné).

bəgínə *n. (inher. poss., body part) (comp. from ba + ginə)* face. See ginə.

bah *gr. form.* enough so that. ma'a dəfənə a uuda bah ha əburəgi 'there is still enough mush in the pot so that you will fill up.'

bəjəbəjək *quantifier* much, a lot of.

bəjəngədəné *n.* type of grass. (different than bagəngədəné).

bəkəsəkəbá *n.* (= sakaba).

bəkəwəbəkəwá *n.* type of fish (like mbərəmbərə but black).

bələwá *n.* type of large gown usu. of simple white cloth.

balh *id.* See balhə.

balhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bəlhnə)* plait, braid.

baliminə *n. (comp. from ba + liminə)* outer ear. See liminə.

bámá *n. (comp. from ba + ma)* lip (= əmpətəma).

bám búzə *n. (comp. from ba + mbuza)* pumpkin leaf.

bàná *n.* age peer.

bánciínà *n.* red sorrel, H. yakuwa.

bəntənvwii *n. (comp. from ba + ta + ənvwiinə)* type of plant (goats eat it).

bántyáarə *n.* [< F.] loin covering. See baaya, vyakə.

bərəkúmà *n.* title of one of the traditional village elders.

- bàrèwá *n.* (= mabarəwa) 1. young male sheep or goat that has been weaned. 2. young boy. See dagwa.
- bàsèdǎ -ə *n.* (= ba'asəǎ).
- básánə *n.* (*inher. poss. (?)*, *body part*) arm (from wrist to shoulder).
- bàshàfá *n.* (*comp. from ba + shafa*) type of leaf used to make a swearing juju. See shafa.
- bàtá -ə *n.* unusually large serving of mush (ǎfəna).
- bávéránə *n.* pagan (neither Muslim nor Christian). (= əndəfaara).
- bawutə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bəwútəna)* (= pawutə) fan.
- bázəwáí *adj.* open and painful (of a wound).
- bíbìnə *n.* feather.
- bídǎ *non-verbal pred.* (= gidə, guji) exceed, surpass. bidə ci də gusənə aciiki 'he is shorter than me.'
- bígábìgǎ'ù *adj. id.* big (of elephant's ears).
- bíkú *v. id.* (= piku) 1. piercing of needle or thorn. 2. setting afire.
- bílínə *n.* uninhabited country, 'the bush.'
- biŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. biŋəná)* arrange in a line. See bagərə.
- birima *n.* title of one of the traditional village elders.
- bísəmə -ə *n.* tick.
- bóolə *n.* tan colored dog. See əda, hwaba.
- búbúǎ -ə *n.* bull (full grown). See mataasa, la.
- bùbù'wá -ə *n.* wing.
- búb *v. id.* 1. striking of rain drop. 2. striking of a club.
- bùdzəǎ -ə *n.* pot with broken rim. See buhərəma.
- bud *id.* See budə.
- budə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. búǎna)* (= budəkə) 1. clear and farm new ground. 2. hoe deeply in hard ground. See kwangwarə, ngwarahə, tsahə, uuza.
- budək *id.* See budəkə.
- budəkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. búǎkəna)* (= budə).

bũdǎ́ -ə *n.* new farm on virgin ground. See budǎ́.

bũf *v. id.* 1. falling into ashes or dust. 2. being without strength or possessions.

bugǎ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũgǎnǎ́)* race (of men or horses).

bũgǎjǎmǎ́ *n.* civet cat. See gudǎra.

bũghǎb̄ *adj.* (= pulhipulhiḃ) swollen, fat (of cheeks).

buhǎḃ *id.* See buhǎḃǎ.

buhǎḃǎ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũhǎḃǎnǎ́)* (= burǎhǎḃǎ) dig up, dig out (with effort). See ra.

bũhǎrǎmǎ́ *n.* unfinished pot without rim. See budzǎḡa.

bũhũḃ *v. id.* shattering (of pot, etc.).

bũkǎrǎ́ -ə *n.* leather loin covering worn by men in former times (= kwakwa-linǎ).

bũm *v. id.* (= pum) 1. breaking wind. 2. bursting of football.

bũndǎkǎ́ -ə *n.* [< F. >] gun.

bũndzǎb̄ *v. id.* (= bughǎb̄) 1. falling of heavy rain. 2. falling and breaking of pot.

burǎ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũrǎnǎ́)* 1. chop, hammer, strike heavy blow. See yǎḃǎ, cilhǎ, patsǎ, purakǎ, yǎḃǎ, tsahu. 2. bite (of snake, = idǎ).

bũrǎdzǎm̄ *adj. id.* 1. in need of a haircut. 2. (of grass) growing in a dense clump.

bũrǎḡǎnǎ́ *n.* 1. fermenting. (*action n.*) 2. alcohol.

bũrǎz̄ *v. id.* breaking wind.

burǎḃ *id.* See burǎḃǎ.

burǎḃǎ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũrǎḃǎnǎ́)* (= mburǎḃǎ) 1. squeeze out (such as seed from ripe fruit). 2. miscarry.

buseǎ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũsǎnǎ́)* 1. angrily refuse to speak. 2. angrily refuse (to do something). See naana.

bũsǎ́ -ə *n.* unidentified internal organ next to intestines.

buteǎ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũtǎnǎ́)* pull out (used only of sticks or grass pulled from bundle). See mbudǎ́.

- búts *v. id.* 1. hitting with a club. 2. breaking open with force.
- buurə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bûurəná) (upper dialect, = bæərə).*
- búurá -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part) elbow.*
- búutā *adj. n.* 1. easy. 2. cheap.
- bú' *adj. id.* wide and flat.
- bu'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bû'úná)* 1. winnow (grain). See kəca'a, tangwa'a.
2. arrive. (= mbu'u).
- bù'yí *adj. id.* long thin and widened at the end (shaped like a squirrel's tail).
- búzhèemínə *n. (upper dialect, = mbuzheeminə) beard.*
- bwá' *v. id.* hitting with a club.
- bwa'alhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bwà'álhəná)* bend edge of tool by striking something hard. See dəgwasə, ndəkwasə, ndəgurəmə, ra'u.
- bwádā *n.* person with great strength. See bafa.
- bwàgábwàgát *adj. id. (= bu'u)* big, wide (of pieces of meat only).
- bwákyálá *n.* ornamental staff decorated with strings of coins.
- bwal *id.* See bwalə.
- bwalə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bwàləná)* break off (such as a tree limb) See pwalhə.
- bwàlyályá *v. id. (= bwalyalya)* pouring large quantity of liquid.
- bwam *id.* See bwamə.
- bwamə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bwàməná)* 1. pound hard (such as on wall or stone).
See tsəmə, dəgə. 2. bwamə haala 'tell a lot about something.'
- bwáŋ *adj.* wide.
- bwànkárá *n.* person known for his large appetite.
- bwas *id.* leaving. See bwasə.
- bwasee *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bwàséenə)* (stem occurs only with -ee ext.) leave, quit, stop doing. See unee, vuŋə.
- bwàyá *n.* leopard.
- bwàyárəmənə *irr. adj.* ugly (female). See bwayi, rəmənə. (bwayarəmənəkii in pred. position). bwayarəmaənə 'ugliness.'

- bwàyí *irr. adj.* bad, evil. (bwayakii in pred. position.) bwayabwayaanə 'evil-ness.'
 bwàyìdàgwá *irr. adj.* ugly (male). See bwayi, dagwa. (bwayidagwakii in pred. position.) bwayidagwaanə 'ugliness.'
 byám *adj. id.* 1. swollen. 2. tied tightly.
 bəərə *v.i. (vn. bəəránə)* (= buurə, biirə) play.
 bə̀dákú *v. id.* poking through into hollow cavity.
 bəda *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bə̀dánə)* (*upper dialect*, = bəga).
 bəga *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bə̀gánə)* (= bəda) postpone, decide not to do.
 bə́h *v. id.* (= fəh, sədəh, bə') swallowing non-liquid quietly.
 bələ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bə̀ləná)* 1. kill. See pə'u. 2. blow out (flame). 3. forge (metal).
 bəlhə *v.i. (vn. bə́lhənə)* decay, rot. See ufə.
 bə́lhá -ə *adj. n.* hot (but bearable).
 bə́má -ə *n. (action n.)* drawing blood or puss from a sore by sucking through a horn (mapa). kə kii ci bə́ma 'he drew blood.'
 bərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bə́rənə)* 1. shine, be bright. 2. sharpen, whet, polish. See ndaarə, tala.
 bə̀rəgút *v. id.* (= gurək) swallowing liquid noisily.
 bərəhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bə́rəhənə)* be sick.
 bə́rəhənə *n.* sickness.
 bə́rəhínə *n.* smallpox.
 bə̀rəjájàhu *adj.* rough.
 bə́rémà -ə *n.* yam.
 bə́rá *n.* type of disease causing sores on skin.
 bə́rakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bə́rákənə)* have labor pains, be in labor. See dfa, jilə, zəmə.
 bə́raŋə *v.t. and v.i. (vn. bə̀rəŋənə)* 1. warm (something or self). See utə.
 bə̀tá'á *adj. n.* warmish, slightly warm.
 bə̀zə́ *irr. adj.* much, many.

bəzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bəzəná)* 1. rub (something or self) with oil. 2. wash, rinse (pot). 3. make mistake, spoil (something). *bəzee* 'make mistake.' See *saawa, səna, dəgwasə, rə*. 4. be angry. *kə bəzhi səki* 'he is angry (lit. his stomach is spoiled).'

bá' *v. id.* 1. burying (= *da'*) 2. swallowing quietly (= *bəh*).

ba'a *conj. and.*

baana *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bəanánə)* 1. count.

baarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bəarəná)* 1. show.

badz *id.* See *badzə*.

badzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bədzəná)* break off (edge or rim of something). See *əbi*.

bagum *adj. id.* short (of stick, rope, etc.).

bál *v. id.* (= *pal*) snapping of something big and hard.

bələbələbələ *v. id.* (= *katsatsa*) running quickly.

bám *adj. id.* bad, evil, mean, unkind. See *bwayakii*.

bárəbár *adj.* free of trash (of compound, etc.).

batsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bətsəná)* (= *bwatsə*) break off part (of something soft). See *əbi*.

bətsəbəts *adj. id.* 1. brittle. 2. broken into pieces. See verb.

bəwù *v. id.* (only with *ənya*) turning around and coming back before one reaches one's destination. See *gəđ*.

bi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bíná)* (= *əbi*).

bìbìnə *n.* shoe.

bìrənə *n.* urine. *bìriiki* 'I need to urinate.'

bìrənshíbá *n.* (comp. from *bìrə* + *ənshíba*) type of guinea-corn (yellow).

bìrə'ùsərə *n.* (comp. from *bìrə* + *usərə*) type of sickness (symptom is red urine, from "walking in too much sun").

bìjìjá *n.* 'red' metal. See *əndzənə, tibisa*.

bìrəđ *adj. id.* full.

bìrimínə *n.* remains of mush clinging to sides of cooking pot.

- Bìtsàkwá -ə *n.* type of mouse with long nose, H. jaḃa, (Abraham: 'shrew-mouse').
- Bu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũná) (= əbu).*
- Bũbũkǎnə *n.* black cakes made from pounded dried fish (used to flavor sauce).
- Bũhwá *adj. id. (= buhu) lined up.*
- Buk *id. See bukə.*
- Bukə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũkǎnə) find (discover) hole while digging.*
- Bũká -ə *n.* gum, rubber, resin, sticky substance.
- Bũkábũká *adj. n.* sticky, gum-like. See buka.
- Bũràhǎ -ə *n.* cave.
- Burəzhatana -ə *n.* cake of "black salt" (potash).
- Bũrà -ə *n.* type of pot with hole in bottom. When dry grass is placed over hole, it is used to strain liquids.
- Bũtyák *v. id.* breaking of weak rope.
- Buus *id. See buusə.*
- Buusə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bũusǎnə) push aside, brush aside (light weight objects).*
- Bwàagínə *n.* sauce of pumpkin, groundnuts, and dalaḡa (has bad smell).
- Bwa'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. bwà'ǎnǎ) 1. bathe (woman with boiling water after giving birth). 2. apply hot compress.*
- Bwà'á *n.* gift brought to woman who has given birth for the first time.
- Bwalyalya *v. id. (= bwalyalya).*
- Byá' *v. id. 1. drinking up completely. (= kəp). 2. tying well. 3. jumping down.*
- Byám *adj. id. (= byam).*
- Byam *v. id. (= bim, birim) jumping down and hitting the ground with force.*
- cá' *v. id. 1. submerge completely in water. 2. dying.*
- ca'a *adv.* as far as, even up to. tǎ'i ma'ínə ca'a urakii 'there was water up to his neck.' ca'a əndzii 'even until now.' See dəḡə.
- cǎbǎr *adj. id.* brim full.

càcá *n.* indigo dye.

càcáká *n.* lower leg of cow (eaten as medicine to regain strength). (= tən-tənwa)

cacalhə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* cǎcǎlhǎnə) hatch (eggs). See umbə.

càcírǎfa *n.* type of calabash with bumps on skin. See kunwa.

cahwad *id.* See cahwadə.

cahwadə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* cǎhwǎdǎn) dig with a stick. See ra.

cákǎráh *adj. id.* (only with təkuree) not (able) at all.

cakuḃəḃə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* cakubǎnə) (= kubə).

cakulə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* cǎkúlǎnə) 1. clean (ears only). See kukulə. 2. poke around with a stick.

cal *id.* See calə.

calə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* cǎlǎnə) splash (liquid).

cǎlh *adj. id.* spotted, speckled.

cǎlh *v. id.* rustling of something unseen (as in weeds, etc.).

cámə *adj. id.* bright.

cǎmǎnə *n.* (*abst. n.* < camə) light, brightness. See ḃǎrəḃə.

cǎmǎnǎgyá *n.* hedge hog (= mǎdǎmpiku).

cǎncírǎnə *n.* water monitor. See əḃvuhə.

cát *v. id.* becoming completely gone.

ceeda *n.* [*< F.*] (*upper dialect*, = kwaḃa) money.

ci *pron.* he/it (3rd pers. m. sing.).

cìbùkǎ -ə *n.* woman's small axe. See raha.

cìḃǎ -ə *n.* trouble (= taakwa).

cìcìdǎ *n.* type of tree (leaf used as medicine for dysentery).

cìcìí *interjection.* said to child when he sneezes.

cìcìí *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* cìcìíḃnə) approach in shy manner. də cìcìí 'in shy manner, with embarrassment.'

cìcìíḃnə *n.* gnat.

- cíçìkínə *n.* 1. type of bush with edible berry. 2. type of insect.
- cicirə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cíçíránə)* become more intelligent (of children developing).
- cíçáçdíç *adj. id.* filled up.
- cíçək *id.* See cíçəkə.
- cíçəkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cíçəkánə)* pinch between finger tips. See murəçə.
- cíçádðorə *adv.* day after tomorrow.
- cíçágətə *adv.* three days from today.
- cíçámbəçə *adv.* day before yesterday.
- cíçá *n.* sheath for knife.
- cíçánə *n.* harvest season.
- cíçìnə *n.* type of fish (small, black).
- cíçìtə -ə *n.* type of bird.
- cíçkəçəká -ə *n.* (*comp. from* cii + kəçəkə (no meaning)) hangnail.
- cíçnə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* hand, arm. See səkəçìnə.
- cíçwá -ə *n. (comp. from* cii + wə) *cramp in hand.*
- cíçámənə *n. (= ciiçəmanə) (inher. poss., body part) (comp. from* cii + çəmə) *right hand, right hand side. də ciiçəmə 'on the right.'* See madçəna.
- cik *id.* See cikə.
- cikə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cikánə)* wind (string or thread around stick). See tabəçə, hə, tsavəçə.
- cikəç *id.* See cikəçə.
- cikəçə *v.i. (vn. cikəçánə)* stand on tiptoe (to see something).
- cíkəçánə *n.* three-pronged forked stick used for pot stand. See cikəçə.
- cíkənwúnə *n. (= ndçəkənwunə).*
- cíká *n.* traditional game played with sticks set in patterns on the ground.
- ciku *id.* pecking. See ciku.
- ciku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cikúná)* 1. peck (of bird). 2. straighten (stack of small items).

- cíkùfínə *n.* foam, froth (= tsəkufinə).
- cíkúráh *v. id.* (= cikərək, tsəkurək) going or coming down.
- cíkwáhlh *adj. id.* full.
- cíləŋá -ə *n.* type of axe (used for tsahunə). See raha.
- ciləp *id.* See ciləpə.
- ciləpə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cìlápəná)* go under water, submerge. See lipina.
- cílh *adj. id.* enough, just right.
- cilh *id.* See cilhə.
- cilhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cìlhəná)* chop off (branches), chop in two. See burə.
- címánə *n.* serous fluid extruded from a corpse.
- cimu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cìmùná)* (*upper dialect*, = cinwu).
- cimu'u *id.* trembling. See cim'u (v.i.).
- cimu'u *v.i. (vn. címú'únə)* 1. shrink (cloth), make self fit into small space. See viri'u. 2. shiver, tremble. See gədzəgədzə.
- cinwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cínwúnə)* (= cim'u, shinwu, yinwu) dip up, sop up, dunk.
- ciŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ciŋəná)* bother (someone).
- cír *adj. id.* 1. straight. 2. full.
- cír *v. id.* (= cirəcira) 1. wrapping or winding up. 2. starting to wrestle.
- cirə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cìrəná)* pour into (container or hole). See əji, gə, tsavə.
- círəŋà -ə *n.* type of termite (builds tall hills, bite is painful, can ruin crops), hill of same. See məbərə.
- cirəvələ'i *id.* See cirəvələ'i.
- cirəvələ'i *v.i. and v.t. (vn. cìrəvələ'ínə)* wrinkle. See kəzha'inə, purəshikə, ravusə.
- círá *n.* leather thong used to sew bag closed.
- cítəwá *n.* type of edible lichen.
- còndóná *n.* type of civet cat with "big mouth". See gudərə.
- cóonà -ə *n.* elephant.

cúp *adj. id.* bent over.

də *prep.* at, in, from, with (instrument marker).

də cūizəmə *adv.* on the right.

də madzəna *adv.* on the left.

dəbarə *v.i. (vn. dəbárənə)* crawl. See dabangə, tərəvusə.

dəbwákàrá *n.* type of plant or tree (leaf used in sauce).

dəb *v. id.* (= dəbu, tsa'u) doing part way. See gəf.

dəbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəbəná)* 1. taste good, be pleasant. 2. dəbee 'be good for (someone), be necessary that...' kə dəbee kahə kajeerənaaku. 'Your shirt looks good on you.'

dəbəlá *n.* type of fish (small head, few bones).

dəbā *v.i. (vn. dəbānə)* walk slowly. See wii, mbərə, saarə.

dəbùlá -ə *n.* tree stump.

dəbwá -ə *n.* granary. See əjima.

dədəb *adj.* (= zəzək) heavy.

dədəhwá -ə *n.* type of thorn tree.

dədəkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dədəkənə)* 1. settle (as dirt in water). 2. die down (of fire). 3. become calm (of wind). 4. become less painful.

dədənwú *adj. n.* (= dənwa) black or dark blue.

dədə'u *id.* See dədə'u.

dədə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dədə'únə)* push, press with force. See gigi'i, dala, təba'a.

dəda *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dədánə)* straighten by heating and bending. (metal or green wood). See mədədagunə.

dəfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəfəná)* 1. pull out (thorn). 2. pull off (hat). See mbudə.

dəfəká -ə *n.* any grass seed with "fuzzy tail".

dəfəmá -ə *n.* type of bush with edible berry.

dəfə *v.i. (vn. dəfanə)* (*upper dialect*, = lhəra).

dəfərə'ú *adj. id.* stark naked. See də purəki.

dáfúfák *adj. id.* short and fat.

dàfwà'á *adj. n.* gray.

dəgə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəgəná)* 1. hit, strike. See dza, kadə, lhəbə, fəlhə, ndəbə, ngwəgə, roogə, tsəgwa, tsəma, tsəfəku, tsərəku, bwamə. 2. dəgə gwama 'make a corral.'

dəgəjīnə *n.* rag, ragged clothing.

dəgəjī'u *adj. id.* (= rəgəjī'u) surrounded, encircled.

dəgəlá -ə *n.* stool, chair.

dəgh *v. id.* (= dim, dil) hitting with closed fist.

dəghərəgh *adj. id.* big and swollen (of stomach).

dəgìná *n.* (= digina) mahogany tree, H. mad'aci.

dəgùzəb *adj.* cloudy, not clear (of water).

dəgùzəm *v. id.* (= dəgudzəm) moving of hair (on animal, etc.). (perhaps also *adj.* meaning 'hairy'.)

dəgwáf *v. id.* taking a handful of something.

dəgwám *adj. id.* 1. unable to see. 2. dull, blunt.

dəgwas *id.* See dəgwasə.

dəgwasə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəgwàsəná)* (= ndəkwasə) 1. become dull (of knife blade). See ndəgurəm, ra'umə, bwa'alhə, dəngwafə, gwəgə. 2. spoil, damage. See bəzə, saawa.

dəh *id.* beating drum. See dəhə.

dəhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəhənə, dəhəná)* (= dihə) 1. beat (drum). 2. carefully set down (a container).

dəhəgwàndīinə *n.* (*comp. from* dəhə + gwandiinə) type of thorn bush (common hiding place for frogs?).

dəhá -ə *n.* thorn, thorn tree.

dəhùud'á *n.* (*comp. from* dəhə + uud'á) type of thorn bush or tree.

dək'wá -ə *n.* man's large axe. See raha.

dələ'u *v.i. (upper dialect, = dələbu).*

dələbu *v.i. (vn. dəlédúnə)* (= dələ'u) swim.

- dàlèkànwá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* (n)dələ + ka + nwa) string of beads worn around hips of young girl.
- dəla *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəlánə)* 1. praise, flatter, sing to baby. See haŋə.
2. push. (= dala, dəlagi).
- dəlagi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəlágínə)* (= dəla, dala) push. *irr. verb:* dəlagyuu 'push (imperative)', kə dəliigi Musa 'Musa pushed.'
- dəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəməná)* 1. go in or out (dəməgərə 'go in', dəməgi 'go out', gima/dima 'come in or out'). See i. 2. worship (lhəma 'pagan shrine').
- dəmáh *v. id.* sneaking in a bent-over position.
- dəmənə *n.* loaning, borrowing. *ɸa* dəmənə 'loan, borrow.' *vii* dəmənə 'loan.'
ngərə dəmənə 'borrow.' See ndzəmə, ndə.
- dəməyá *n.* porcupine.
- dəmbáŋ *adj. id.* held in the hand.
- dəmbúrəm *adj. id.* 1. dissolved in water. 2. coiled (of a snake). See dəmbwas.
- dəmbwás *adj. id.* curled up, coiled up (of animal). See dəmburəm.
- dəmpúz *adj. id.* big.
- dəmpwá' *v. id.* running of cow.
- dəmwá -ə *n.* large boulder. See faara.
- dənə *n. (irr. poss., kin. term) (pl. dəsənyinə)* 1. father, parent's male sibling or cousin. 2. trunk of tree.
- dəndávú *adj. id.* swollen (of stomach from pregnancy only).
- dəŋ *adv.* even as far as, all the way to (usu. precedes prep. a) kə kirə ci dəŋə asii 'he carried it all the way home.' See ca'a.
- dəŋádəŋ *adj.* 1. hard, solid. 2. hard to pull out.
- dəngərə *v.i. (vn. dəngárənə)* grow to be large (of living things). See *ɸuunə*.
- dəngwaf *id.* See dəngwafə, dəngwyah.
- dəngwafə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dəngwáfənə)* bend or dent. See dəgwasə, mbwa'afə.
- dəngwyah *id.* (= dəngwyangwyaha) bent, bent over. See dəngwaf.
- dəngúrəŋ *adj. id.* coiled or wound up.

- dàkáféhà *adv.* early morning (approx. 4 a.m.).
- dávèdè *adv.* (= vədəvədə) at night, during the night.
- dáafá *n.* (= da'afa).
- dáagwà *n.* type of mat. See ədza.
- dáarənə *adv.* in the dry season.
- dáarénə *n.* dry season (= rənə).
- dáawənə *n.* noisy scolding. ka daawaanə 'scold.' See dzalə.
- dá' *v. id.* 1. burying. 2. hitting (= bə'). 3. putting into mouth.
See da'amu.
- dà'áfá -ə *n.* type of pot used to make mush (d'afəna) (= daafa). See uuda.
- dà'amu *v. id.* putting into mouth. See da'.
- da'ariŋ *adj. id.* (= huɸiriŋ) perfectly circular.
- dà'ás *adj. id.* seated.
- dabangə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dābāngəna)* crawl (of child). See dəbarə, tərəvusə.
- daβə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dāβəna)* join together. See ləβə.
- dadənə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dādənənə)* 1. make black marks on calabash by burning. 2. darken lips with ashes.
- dàdàfá -ə *n.* type of termite (white). See məbərə.
- dādānyinə *n.* soot. See tankyara, makiirənə.
- dàdzəgùd'á *n. (comp. from da + dzəgud'a)* type of pot used to make sauce. See uuda.
- daɸa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dád'ána)* [< F.] escape, get free, set free. See məbərəɸə, səmbəɸə.
- dád'á -ə *n.* 1. type of tree. 2. poison used on arrows (perhaps from daɸa tree ?). See məngənə.
- dəgələ *n.* pig, wild boar.
- dəgərəgərə -ə *n.* 1. black string worn around hips of young girl. 2. black line around calabash.
- dəgədəgə *adv.* here and there, in various places.
- dəghərə *n.* young unmarried woman. See rəmənə.

- dàgwá *irr. adj.* handsome (male).
- dàgwá *n.* male adolescent, handsome young man. dagwaana (= zana).
- dagwamaɗanə *n.* fiancée, bridegroom.
- dáhínámóvəɗá *n.* (*comp. from* dahina + movəɗa) type of insect (like ant, but is not social).
- dáí *adj. id.* tall, straight and upright.
- dál *adj. id.* deliberately naked. See də purəki.
- dàlè'òdodá *n.* (*comp.?*) type of guinea-corn.
- dala *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dālənə)* push. See dəla, dədə'u, təba'a, gíg'i, təghəɗə, takəɗə.
- dálàgínə *n.* hut built in field for shelter while guarding field.
- dámà *n.* health. used only in greetings: dama kwa? 'are you well?' (reply) təi dama 'I'm fine'.
- dàmáhùrá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* da + muhura) festive period when fiancée comes to spend twenty days with bride's family.
- dàmpwápwàzá -ə *n.* male rainbow lizard. See gyagyala, kwakwara.
- dándzà *n.* type of tree (white hardwood, preferred for hoe handles, mortars, ədəra, etc.).
- dàndzá *n.* 1. light body hair (as on arm or leg). 2. pinfeather.
- dàndzàgá *n.* type of bush (branches used to tie bundles of grass or firewood, also woven into dalaŋa strainers).
- dàngáránj *adj. id.* outside in the open.
- dàngwárá *n.* adult male red monkey. See waandu.
- dànkwáayà *n.* type of grass (used for grass skirts):
- dàŋá -ə *n.* small hourglass shaped drum, H. kalangu.
- dáp *adj. id.* held firmly in hand.
- dára *n.* 1. youngest person in a group. 2. type of bird (= daroozanə). dara pinə 'last breath.'
- dàrá *n.* cap, hat.
- dàránwánwúunə *n.* (*comp. from* dara + nwanwuunə) tall red cap worn by a chief.

- dáróozànə *n.* (*comp. from* dara + uuzanə) type of bird (white and black, small body, long tail) (= dara).
- dà'ú *v. id.* (= gahu) going in and out (of person).
- davə *adv.* there.
- davəra *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* dāvéránə) join forces, work together, combine resources. See taarə.
- dāvùrəŋá *n.* sausage fly.
- dáwée *n.* spiral metal anklet.
- dà'wá *n.* lie. See jirakənə, ədanə.
- daz *id.* See dazə.
- dazə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* dāzəŋá) 1. spread out (pile of something). 2. talk a lot.
- dāzə'wánwu *n.* type of fish (medium-sized, white).
- déerənə *adv.* in the morning (sunrise to 9 a.m.).
- déevyànə *adv.* in the rainy season. See vyənə.
- dìd'ím *adj. id.* very big.
- dihə *v.i. and v.t.* (= dəhə).
- díhápànə *n.* rain cloud which hangs low to ground. See kuraβiina.
- díinə *n.* hunting in a large party. kə gi əŋji ka diinə 'people went hunting.'
- díinàd'á -ə *n.* pupil of the eye.
- díl *adj. id.* many (of things tied together, such as sticks).
- díl *v. id.* hitting with closed fist. See dim.
- dím *v. id.* 1. sound of impact or thunder. 2. hitting with closed fist.
- dímásháryá' *adj. id.* partly full (of stomach).
- dízə *adj.* red.
- dízà'á *adj. n.* reddish (pink, orange, purple).
- dòndùrəsá *n.* hard clod of dirt, piece of termite mound, small piece of broken pottery.
- dòorə *adv.* tomorrow, on the next day.

dòosérə *adv.* (= da usərə) in the day, during the day.

dòosá -ə *n.* earthenware pot lid. See uuda, zhimbəfa.

dúf *v. id.* 1. picking something up. 2. hitting.

dulh *id.* See dulhə.

dulhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dūlhəná)* 1. turn upside down (container). 2. cover (container).

dúm *adj. id.* full.

dúnk *adv.* (= dənwuk) last year.

dūrəs *adj. id.* with little hair (of person), with little grass (of roof). See durəsə.

durəs *v. id.* See durəsə.

durəsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dūrəsəná)* scratch off, scrape off (with hand).

dus *id.* 1. striking ground. 2. worn out. See dusə.

dusə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dūsəná)* 1. beat ground to loosen soil (as when harvesting groundnuts). 2. wear out back of hoe handle from beating ground. 3. wear hair thin from carrying head loads. See ndəghə. 4. rub with powder or red occar.

dūdánəki *n.* type of grass (hard to pull out by roots).

dūhírécìyá *n.* type of mouse or rat.

dúuráəna *n. (abst. n. < duura)* being relatives. kə ləbi tii ka duurəəna 'they are relatives.'

dúurá -ə *n. (reg. poss.)* 1. relative, kin. See ndzəkənwunə. 2. kind, sort, type.

dúuz *adj. id.* glowing red (of setting sun).

dúv *adj. id.* dead and bloated.

dwá' *adj. id.* long and horizontal.

dwá' *v. id.* 1. putting soft food into mouth (= da'). 2. (with ka vurəna) yelling.

dwa' *id.* See dwa'a.

dwa'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dwà'áná)* 1. measure length (by hand spans or paces). 2. take long steps.

dwyálh *adj. id.* very white.

dyáŋ *adj. id.* (= tyandərya') alone.

dyarə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dyàré'únə)* gossip, tattle, spread rumor.

dyáŋ *adj. id.* close, tie, or fasten well.

dzə *v.i. (vn. dzə́nə)* go. Irregular forms: gi 'completive', duu 'imperative sing.', dəmə 'imperative pl.' (*upper dialect*: dzuu 'imperative sing.', dzəmə 'imperative pl.'). See palə, wurə.

dzəbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzə́bəná)* stick, stab, poke (with sharp instrument). See lhidə, jiku, vilku.

dzəba *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzə́bənə)* 1. wrap, loop, or coil rope around something. dzəbanə nfwad 'four wraps.' 2. put on more than one gown.

dzə́bwá -ə *n.* type of grass (used for mats) (= tsaba).

dzə́dzə́ *n.* (= dzə́dzənə) (*pl. dzə́dzə́shīnə*) (*irr. poss., kin. term*) grandfather, grandfather's male sibling or cousin.

dzə́dzə́rə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzə́dzə́rən)* leak out, bleed. See ləvə, pulə.

dzə́dzə́nə *n.* (= dzə́dzə).

dzəgə *v.i. (vn. də́gəná)* 1. cook in boiling water. See gufə, usə. 2. be someone's younger sibling. kə jigi ci agyanəki. 'he is my younger brother.' See madzəga. 3. make soft (as water softens ground). 4. tame (a horse).

dzə́gə'yáká -ə *n.* wooven grass chicken coop. See bə̀rəkwa.

dzə́gá *n.* fence or wall of stones.

dzə́gám *adj.* high, up high. See də́gə́dim.

dzə́gàrá -ə *n.* leg or stand made on certain pots.

dzə́gù́d́á -ə *n.* sauce, gravy (H. miya).

dzə́gunə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzə́gùnənə)* learn, teach. kə jigunyi Musa janganə. 'Musa learned to read.' kə jigunyi ci janganə ka Musa. 'he taught reading to Musa.'

dzə́gù́rédzə́gù́rək *adj. id.* cut into many large pieces (of meat).

dzə́gù́ulá -ə *adj. n.* having mixed colors or sizes.

dzə́gúv *adj. id.* conceited, "big headed."

dzə́gùvyáryá -ə *n.* type of fish (hard yellow skin, not eaten).

dzə́gwa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzə́gwánə)* (= dzəkwa) sing together, play instruments together. kə dzə́gwii tii monyanə. 'they sang a song.'

- dzəgwák *adj. id.* astraddle something.
- dzəhu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzəhùná)* dig hole to get building mud. See ra.
- dzákú *adj. id.* stuck in an opening.
- dzəku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzəkùná)* string beads of different colors. See ndələ.
- dzəkwa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzəkwánə)* (*upper dialect*, = dzəgwa).
- dzələvu *v. id.* 1. jumping into water (= dələm). 2. leaking through of water (with dripping) (= tsələv).
- dzələŋá -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* heel of foot.
- dzəmá -ə *n.* first born child. See pootədagwaanə.
- dzámá' *adj. id.* dried up (of trees only).
- dzəmbùďák *adj.* shape of a round calabash with a small opening (mouth).
- dzəŋa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzəŋánə)* (= ndzəŋa, tsəŋa) become stuck. See zavə, ndəbuŋə.
- dzát *v. id.* (= dzat) coming out quickly in order to run away.
- dzəvu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzəvùná)* 1. fall (only of water in waterfall) See mədzəvunə. 2. drool.
- dza *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzàná)* 1. pound, clap, cough, thunder: dza ganga 'beat drum.' dza cīnə 'clap.' dza bələra. 'cough.' dzanə nga vəna 'thunder.' See dəgə, bwamə, tsəma. 2. weave. See ədza 'mat.' 3. dza na 'shave head (in a special way).' 4. (*iter. dzaadza*) push together into a pile, gather together. See fəďə, tsəəmə, tsəkə. 5. dza də na 'meeting, gathering (*lit. gathering of heads*).'
- dzaana *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzàanánə)* insult, call names.
- dzáa'ú *v. id.* (= tsaa'i) grinding fast. See ghəza'.
- dzá' *v. id.* becoming lost or forgotten. See bət.
- dza'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzə'áná)* close eyes, clinch teeth. See milhi, mirikə.
- dzəbàŋá -ə *n.* praying mantis. See ma'yana.
- dzaβə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzəβánə)* pound until soft. See baβə.
- dzəďá *n.* second (last) cultivation after planting (= hwaβa). See jigwara.

- dzàdèná -ə *n.* (*comp. from dza + dè + na*) meeting, gathering. See dza.
- dzád *adj.* far away, distant. dzád da 'far from.'
- dzàdèkà *n.* type of grass (used to make manguda and piiri'ina).
- dzáhrát *adj. id.* big (of people).
- dzák *id.* up high (on something). See dzakə.
- dzakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzàkèná)* put up high (on something).
- dzakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzákèná)* dress up, put on best clothes.
- dzàkàyá *n.* type of mouse with bushy tail.
- dzalə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzálèná)* scold, punish, spank. See daawana.
- dzálà *n.* 1. large pile of boulders. 2. dense grove of trees. 3. woven cord.
- dzàmbóolà *n.* type of large grasshopper.
- dzànéngàvèna -ə *n.* (*comp. from dzanə + nga + vèna*) thunder.
- dzàndzá *n.* type of tree (white hardwood).
- dzáŋ *adj. id.* few, not many.
- dzángóm *adj. id.* tied.
- dzàngáràlà *n.* type of termite (bites).
- dzàngwàlá' *adj. id.* emaciated.
- dzánká' *adj. id.* tall (of people).
- dzarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dzárèná)* 1. do something in lazy or reluctant manner.
2. fail to do something because of laziness or reluctance. See sàna.
- dzàrá *n.* Muchella village. See madzara.
- dzáwá -ə *adj. n.* 1. difficult, hard to do. 2. expensive.
- dzúlúl *v. id.* sound of water pouring into water.
- dzwá' *v. id.* picking up and putting on shoulder or neck in order to carry.
- dʒəbərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. dʒəbérèná)* desert spouse and return to parents.
- dʒəkə *v.i. (vn. dʒəkèná)* (*lower dialect*) act foolishly or shamefully.
- dʒɔ́dʒárlh *adj. id.* 1. closed well. 2. unable to speak.
- dʒégédím high and flat (of ground).

- ɗágúdáǵ *adj.* 1. piled up (of soil). 2. swollen.
- ɗákə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ɗákánə)* 1. put, place. See kapaa. 2. ɗəkə læma 'give name to a child.' 3. hide in wait to ambush. See tsəɗə, maaba, umbə.
- ɗákələmá -ə *n. (comp. from ɗəkə + læma)* child's naming ceremony.
- ɗákánə *n.* large communal work project. See uuzanwə.
- ɗákút *adj. id.* swollen (of small sore only).
- ɗəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ɗəməná)* 1. pick up one by one, select one by one. See pilhə.
- ɗərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ɗərənə)* 1. buy, trade. ira (motion to speaker ext.). 2. ɗərəma, ɗərəmagi 'sell' See ɗərəgi.
- ɗərəgi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ɗərəgínə)* sell. Irregular forms: irəgi 'completive', ɗərəgyuu 'imperative sing.' ɗərəgimə 'imperative pl.' kə irəgi ci də təhwa. 'he sold the horse.' See ɗərə.
- ɗəvǵ -ə *n.* basket.
- ɗəwu *v.i. (vn. ɗəwúnə)* move (residence). 'yiwa (motion to speaker ext.).
- ɗəzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ɗəzəná)* rise into the air (of dust or smoke). izha (motion to speaker ext.).
- ɗa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ɗánə)* 1. do, make, create, happen, become. 'ya (motion to speaker ext.) See taga. 2. ɗeeci 'please give me a little.' See və. 3. cause pain, hurt. kə ɗii səɗəki tə ki. 'my foot hurts (me).' See yahərə'a, jilə, bərakə, peepidə, zəmə, zərəkə.
- ɗaarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ɗaarəná)* pour off liquid leaving sediment behind (as when clarifying oil).
- ɗácà *n.* sweet sap (from leaf or tree).
- ɗádál *adj. id.* fallen on back.
- ɗaɗanwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ɗáɗánwúnə)* become clear (of water when dirt settles). See ɗanwuɗanwu, dəguzəbə.
- ɗánwúɗánwú *adj.* 1. clean (of water). See ɗaɗanwu 2. open (of mouth or hole).
- ɗáfénà -ə *n.* (stem is ɗafə. note: *pl.* ɗafənyinə, ɗafəeta 'that...', ɗafənaaki 'my...') guinea-corn mush, H. tuwo. See bata, malhaha, mahərəfiinə, movura, murəmura, biriminə, mama.

ḏáfátákàrá *n.* (*comp. from* ḏafə + tə + kəra) buttocks (= ḏafətə-movəḏa).

ḏáfátámòvəḏá *n.* (*comp. from* ḏafə + tə + movəḏa) buttocks (= ḏafətəkəra).

ḏagənə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ḏàgánə) carry on the head without holding with hands.

ḏalaŋ *id.* See ḏalaŋə.

ḏalaŋə *v.i.* (*vn.* ḏàláŋə) roll over. See ḏangəraŋə, takəra'a.

ḏancaŋ *adj. id.* having exposed roots.

ḏáŋ *adj. id.* on the very top, up high.

ḏàngərá -ə *n.* high ground.

ḏangəraŋ *id.* See ḏangəraŋə.

ḏangəraŋə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ḏàngəráŋə) roll over repeatedly. See ḏalaŋə.

ḏanwuḏanwu *id.* clear (of water). See ḏaḏanwu.

ḏàráyí *adj.* clear (of sky).

ḏáréewàlá *n.* [

ḏasəka *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ḏásəkánə) be pregnant, become pregnant. (this unusual verb contains an incorporated noun: ḏa 'make' + səka (-ə) 'stomach.' Note the stem vowel is low, which is not as one would expect from the noun.) kə ḏasəkii ki 'she is pregnant.' maḏasəkakii nə ki 'she is pregnant.' ḏə ḏasəka nə ki 'she is pregnant.'

ḏátsál *adj. id.* too short (of a gown).

ḏíinə *adj. n.* 1. cluttered, untidy. 2. unwashed, dirty. 3. filth.

ḏúləŋ *v. id.* 1. rolling on ground. 2. falling of large object.

ḏuu *v.i.* See ḏəwu.

ḏuunə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ḏùunənə) 1. become big, make big. See səbərə. 2. show honor to, praise. maḏuunəkii 'big, large.' See dəngərə, həŋə, dala, ngwaarə.

fəerii *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fəəriinə) display things for sale.

fəḏə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fəḏənə) 1. gather together and take away. See dzaadza, tsəəmə, tsəkə. 2. roll up (mat). 3. fəḏə kərə 'clean out ditch.' fə'ya (motion to speaker ext.).

fàd'əhá -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) gums.

fádyás *adj.* tiny, very small.

fáh *v. id.* (= bəh) 1. swallowing quietly. 2. putting carefully into bag.

fálh *v. id.* breaking off large piece of mush (dáfəna).

fəlhə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fálhónə) 1. whip. 2. break many things at once.
3. fəelhə ma 'speak incantations, pray before fetish.'

fàrədàgwá *n.* (*comp. from* fərə (*id.*) + dagwa) type of frog (small, jumps far).

fár *v. id.* (= pər) flying away (of bird).

fàrəfàrəfàrá *v. id.* giving off good smell

fáráshi *v. id.* refusing to go.

fáreeŋ *adj. id.* having one or more holes in it.

fáruŋ *adj. id.* 1. wide open. 2. easy to understand. 3. without leaves (of tree).

fəsh *id.* See fəshi.

fəshi *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fəshínə) (= fisə) spray water out from mouth. See vushi.

fətsáku *v. id.* (= kutsaf) jumping and landing (of frog).

fəyá *n.* type of nettle (said to kill or repel snakes).

fəzə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fəzónə) spend year(s). kə fəzhi ci mak də Kano. 'he spent three years at Kano.' (This is a denominal verb. See fəza.)

fəzá -ə *n.* year. See fəzə.

fa *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fánə) hear, listen, feel, smell. See zənə.

faadə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fáadónə) peel with knife.

fáah *v. id.* 1. pulling out knife. 2. pulling stick from bundle. 3. coming out of hole (of snake).

fáarà *n.* rock, stone. See palha, dəmwa, jwa'alina.

fáarákábənə *n.* (*comp. from* faara + kəbənə) flat rock used to dry clothes on.

fáhúurá *n.* type of narrow necked pot used for liquids See uuda.

fàtáfàtá *adj. id.* staring intently with head turned.

fàwá -ə *n.* constipation. fawa ca dā tə ci 'he is constipated.'

- feeca *v.i.* (*vn.* féecánə) [< F.] feel better, feel good.
- féefíjǎ *n.* type of ant (big, black, bites, travels in lines, H. gwana).
- féet *v. id.* blowing whistle.
- fera *v.i.* (*vn.* féránə) [< F.] be wise, be clever.
- fíhú *adj. id.* 1. tall and straight. 2. many (of things moving in a line).
- fíiwu *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fíiwúnə) become partly dry.
- fiku *v.i.* (*vn.* fíkúnə) whistle.
- fílhí *v. id.* (= lhya'af).
- fíndyáď *v. id.* falling and becoming lost (of small object).
- finkusə *v.i.* (*vn.* fínkúsánə) sniffle (after crying). See hirənwu, shankufə.
- fìrənwá -ə *n.* smell of meat (raw or cooked). makə fii jì'nə firənwu nga luwa, ətəya shi. 'when flies smell the smell of meat, they come.'
- fisə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fíśánə) (= fəshə).
- fítáfitýá -ə *adj. n.* light (of wind only).
- fudǎ *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fúďánə) [< F.] begin, start. See əsə, 'watə.
- fúkánə *n.* vagina (offensive term, = ədzəŋa inoffensive term).
- fúkyát *v. id.* (= futak) pulling out easily without force.
- fùnǎ'ǎfúna'a *v. id.* eating soft food.
- fúndáď *v. id.* (= pundáď, purəndáď) jumping out unexpectedly.
- fùrǎďa -ə *n.* type of plant, wild lily? (its bulb-like root is used in witchcraft).
- fùrəshák *v. id.* grinding moist material.
- fúrəŋǎ -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) throat, esophagus. See uura.
- fut *id.* See futə.
- futə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fùtəná) pull off (sock or shoe).
- fùudǎfùudǎ -ə *adj. n.* (= fuudəhya'a) green.
- fuudəhya'a *adj. n.* (= fuudəfuuda) green.
- fwafulə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* fwǎfúlánə) put out fire by moving firewood.
- fwàkát *v. id.* pulling out of pocket.

fwàràṅá -ə *n.* missing tooth. See kīrənə.

fwàráyí *v. id.* being seen or heard clearly.

fwásà *n.* (= fwasanə) highway robbery, mugging. See hərə.

fwásánə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) back of lower leg.

fwáshánə *n.* maggot, fly larva.

fwásháshà *adj. id.* resembling a mass of maggots (said of closely spouted seeds).

fwáshídák *adj. id.* (=fwashasha).

fy'a'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. fyá'ánə)* buy and then resell for profit.

fyakərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. fyàkérənə)* kindle fire by spinning stick against piece of wood. See ndəzə, ka.

fyánkár *adj. id.* full.

fyàṅá *n.* 1. hollow stemmed plant. 2. shuttle for weaving made of hollowed out wood. 3. any red flower.

fyárəfyár *adj. id.* very full (of liquid).

fyárəná' *adj. id.* full.

fyát *v. id.* cutting up into pieces.

fyá'wá *n.* ring of bundled millet stalks supporting base of roof. See gangawala.

gə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gəná)* 1. draw (water), dip out (liquid). gəvə 'pour onto.' gya ma'inə 'fetch water.' gya (motion to speaker ext.) 'spit up (of baby).' See tifi. 2. blow (of wind). See puu. 3. pull rope to tighten noose.

gəərə -ə *n.* river, water hole, well. See kagərəma, zuuva, uunəva, təhwanə, gəgəba, ngurənyinə.

gəbáts *adj. id.* half full, not full.

gəba *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gəbánə)* threaten with weapon.

gədəgədəwá -ə *n.* type of bird (small, black, cries 'gədəgədə').

gədələ *n.* person who sleeps a lot.

gədəwud' *id.* See gədəwudə.

gədəwudə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gədəwud'ənə)* 1. drape blanket over shoulder. 2. pull closed (of noose around foot). 3. dip up dirty water (?).

- gèdǎ *n.* sloping rafter supporting roof.
- gédámə *adj.* 1. full of mistakes. 2. confusing, hard to understand.
- gèdàmánə *n.* mistake, error, flaw. See gədámə.
- gədzəgədzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gədzəgədzánə)* shiver, tremble. See shakəshakə, gangəzə, cim'u.
- gəḏ *v. id.* (used only with dzə, hwii, tsaamə) turning around and coming back before one reaches destination. See ḏawu.
- gəḏə *non-verbal pred.* (= gidə)
- gəḏáf *adj.* packed full (of basket).
- gəḏəhánə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* thigh, upper leg.
- gəḏá' *adj.* soft and springy (of a pile or grass or cotton).
- gəgəḏá -ə *n.* grass or reed covered swamp, marsh.
- gəgəmə -ə *n.* shelf on wall, storage rafter or loft.
- gəla *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gəlánə)* 1. measure. 2. mark out rows in field.
3. aim. 4. throw straight, shoot straight. gəgəlaḥi 'compete (in some activity).' ooshi nyi gəlatə. 'I am not sure.'
- gəlḥərərà' tied loosely.
- gənəhá *adj. id.* wet.
- gənəwá *n.* type of bird (hunted for meat, size of chicken, lives on mountains).
- gəná *n.* wealth, possessions.
- gəŋ *adj. id.* moving on straight path.
- gəp *adj. id.* hard to move (of large heavy object).
- gənwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gənwùná)* (= gunwu).
- gəpə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gəpánə)* deceive, misrepresent. See gəpa.
- gəpá -ə *n.* (= gəpənə) fool. gəpə nga nda 'fool', ndzaanə ka gəpa 'being a fool' (= maba). See gəpə.
- gərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gərənə)* grow, mature, become tall. magərəkii 'tall.'
- gərəḏzəká -ə *n.* trash heap, garbage dump.
- gərəf *v. id.* coming to a stop.
- gərəgəmə -ə *n.* low treeless hill of dirt and grass.

gárák *v. id.* bursting into flames.

gárálhí *adj. id.* touching one another.

gárántáďánə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) back of upper neck (= tsaana).

gərənwá -ə *n.* west (?) (word unknown to some informants).

gərənyánə *n.* soil, dirt. See hanyinə.

gərəsá -ə *adj. n.* wet, damp.

gárəshi *v. id.* (= gurəs).

gərə'u *adj. id.* in kneeling position. See verb.

gərə'u *v.i.* (*vn.* gərə'únə) 1. kneel. (= gərə'waanə) See gərə'a.

gəra *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* géránə) 1. wait, wait for. 2. tend grazing animals. See magra, gəranə. 3. watch over, keep guard.

gərə́ -ə *n.* 1. large water pot. 2. field of... (used in compounds with root crops: gərə'ənyanə 'field of groundnuts', gərəkudaakwa 'field of sweet potatoes,' etc.).

gərə'a *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* gərə'ánə) walk on knees (?). See gərə'u.

gérálh *v. id.* (= gəralalala) pouring of stones on ground.

géránə *n.* herd of cattle. See gəra.

gəryākúvínə *n.* (*comp. from* gərya (?) + kuva) sleeping hut.

gəsák *adj. id.* messy (mouth or hand from eating).

gə'ù *v. id.* catching with lasso.

gəzérákə̀nə *n.* type of large basket.

gáa' *v. id.* sound of burp.

ga (gə) *special negative marker.* See section 4.6.

ga *prep.* at the place of. See section 3.10.1. ganə 'here.' gatə 'there.' ga dəvə 'there.'

gá' *adj. id.* very tall.

gá' *v. id.* sound of chicken cluck.

gàbéehwà *n.* [< F.] hemp (= ndoo'yanə).

gáďál *adj. id.* held in a firm embrace.

- gàḃándàṅá -ə *n.* measles, H. bakon dauro.
- gáḃázà *n.* cock, rooster. See gyaagya.
- gàdzá *n.* scabies, H. kazwa (= kərəta).
- gəḏə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gəḏəṅá)* 1. take biggest or best of something. 2. pay biggest share of cost. See ətə.
- gágəḏzǎ'ú *adj. id.* almost full (of liquid).
- gáhú *v. id.* (= da'u) go in or out.
- gàkúkú *adj. id.* standing (with pl. subj.).
- gələ 'half, part' galə ənda, galə hərəfina 'half man half fish.'
- galə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gələná)* 1. reduce quantity. See galə 'half, part.'
2. cut log into pieces.
- gələ *n. (action n.)* wrestling.
- gələnyina *n.* (= galalanyina) pot handle.
- ganə See ga.
- gəṅá *n. (inher. poss., body part)* 1. tongue. 2. noise of people talking.
- gəndəgəṅá *n.* type of thick gruel.
- gəndzəmá -ə *n.* crumbling edge of river bank.
- gəndzǎ *n.* person whose spouse is temporarily away from home (= kutərəka).
- gangəz *id.* See gangəzə.
- gangəzə *v.i. (vn. gəṅgəzəṅə)* 1. make rustling or rattling noise. 2. shake tree to bring down fruit. See gədzagəḏza, kucalə.
- gəṅgá *n.* [< H.] drum.
- gəṅgəṅgá -ə *n.* black scorpion (larger than arədədənə). (= məganganga). See arədədənə.
- gəṅgár *adj. id.* long and thin.
- gəṅgəwələ -ə *n.* ring of bundled branches forming part of roof frame. See fya'wa.
- gəṅshírá *n.* (= ganshaara) adult male baboon, adult male sheep (?).

- gapə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gāpəná)* 1. put arm around shoulders or neck of another person as a friendly gesture. 2. put blanket or cloth around neck for warmth.
- gárákúwà *n.* lamp.
- gàrámbwàsá *n.* syphilis, H. tunjere.
- gàráḡánə *n.* side burns.
- gasa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gāsánə)* be rich. magasa ənda 'rich person.'
- gatə See ga.
- gatsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gátsénə)* 1. give more blows in a fight than one receives. 2. take larger share than competitor, get best of someone. See gutsə.
- gàwá -ə *n. (pl. gàyínə) (reg. poss., kin. term)* 1. older sibling or cousin. maḡuuna gawa 'eldest sibling.' 2. leader, elder.
- gàwùgáwà *n.* any large monkey.
- gàwúunə *n. (abst. n. < gawa)* seniority.
- gàyìgàyì *adj. id.* done in the open, said publicly.
- gáyíná *n.* traditional dance festival held at time of guinea-corn harvest.
- gàzhá *n.* tail. (poss. unknown).
- gàzhàdá *n. (comp. from gazha + əda)* type of grass (used for thatch).
- gée *n.* So-and-so (older female). See zana, əndzəgənə.
- ghəəli *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ghəəlínə)* suffer because of lacking some necessity, suffer because of lacking help.
- ghəḡə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ghəḡəná)* 1. begin marriage negotiations. 2. drive (cattle).
- ghəḡíghəḡ *adj. id.* many, much.
- ghəghə̀̀ *adj.* 1. sweet, pleasant tasting (includes both sugar and salt). 2. kind, generous.
- ghəkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ghəkénə)* 1. go from house to house looking for free food (not begging but rather abusing hospitality).
- ghám *v. id.* 1. falling of wall. 2. grinding with force. See tsaa'i.
- ghənə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ghənəná)* build of mud or clay.

gháŋ *adj. id.* (= kəŋ) standing.

ghærəghərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ghærəghərə)* be very much afraid. See ngwalə.

ghárát *v. id.* drinking a mouthful of something. See bya', hurəbəci.

ghərəvə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ghərəvəná)* 1. ride horse quickly. 2. attack quickly (as in war). 3. confiscate property (by government action).

ghəràká -ə *n.* crab.

ghə'u *v. id.* (= də'u) scooping up large amount with hands.

ghəzá'ághəzá' *v. id.* sound of grinding slowly.

gháaghànə *n.* type of bird (large, black, found near water, not eaten).

ghàaká -ə *n.* crow (*lower dialect*, = məgwa'akə).

gháarənə *n.* white-bellied stork, H. shamua.

gháŋ *adj. id.* heaped full.

ghànjá *n.* 1. coat made from sheep skin with wool still on it. 2. evil ghost (?).

gharəgharənə *v.i. (vn. ghárəghárənə)* shine brightly enough to hurt eyes.

ghárəghàrà *n.* eel.

ghátə lack of. ghatə kwaḃa 'lack of money.' See agha.

ghàwú *adj. id.* very red.

gí' *adj. id.* leaning against something.

gídə *non-verbal pred.* (= bídə, gədə, guji) exceed, surpass. gídə ci də gusənə aciiki 'he is shorter than I am.'

gigi'i *id.* See verb.

gigi'i *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gígíínə)* press gently. gi'ya (motion to speaker ext.). See dədə'u, dala.

gígínə *n.* trash, garbage. See kushakinə.

gígívá *n.* type of tree (hardwood).

giirə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. giirəná)* plant by sprinkling fine seed then covering with soil. See wa'a, wuci, læga.

giirənə *n.* saliva.

gilh *id.* See gilhə.

- gìlhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gílhəná)* 1. straighten stick or mat by placing heavy stones on part that bulges up. 2. stretch cloth out and weight edges with stones so it will dry without shrinking.
- gílhá -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* fingernail, toenail.
- gímá *n.* girl's girl friend.
- gínə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* 1. eye. 2. face.
- gínwà -ə *n.* mountain.
- gìŋá *n.* type of grass used for mats.
- gí'ú *adj. id.* few, small.
- gìwá *n.* 1. neighborhood, ward. 2. type of tree (with green fruit used to make fried cakes, bark used in sauce). See zhinyinə.
- gìzənə *n.* dampness, moisture. tə'i gízənə apaa (= tə'i gízənə nga hanyinə) 'the ground is damp.' See rəbə.
- gùbá *n.* type of guinea-corn.
- gùcì *gr. form.* when.
- gudəl *id.* See gudələ.
- gudələ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gùdálənə)* (= kutələ) throw or scatter powder-like material. See wuci, wa'a, kuzhidə, kucalə, tul, ka, uurə, yidə, yìirə.
- gùdərəbábúzá -ə *n. (comp. from gudərə + ba + mbuza)* type of civet cat.
- gùdərə -ə *n. (pl. gudirinə)* any of several types of civet cat, domestic cat. See bugəjama, conona, gudərəbambuza.
- gudəzə *v.i (vn. gùdárənə)* flower, bloom. (This may be a denominal verb. See gudəza.)
- gùdèzá -ə *n.* flower, bloom, blossom.
- gùdzəb *adj.* long, thin and flexible (of rope, etc.).
- gùdzəvər *adj.* big and heavy (of a gown).
- gùd'əndzá *n.* meat of chicken's tail.
- gùdám *adj. id.* hot.
- gudə *n. (= gudəe)* the Gude tribe. əndə gudə 'person of the Gude tribe.' uura gudə 'the Gude language.' See mapudə, moociga.

gufə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gúfə́nə)* 1. make soft by applying water or oil (as oiling leather, dampening paper). 2. cook in water until soft (only partly cooked).
See dzəgə, ndə́dákə.

gugud *id.* See gugdə́.

gugudə́ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gùgùd'ə́nə)* 1. be bounced around. 2. jiggle (of fishing line). 3. move in sleep.

gùgùfínə *n. (reg. poss.)* lungs.

gúgútə́ciinə *n. (comp. from gugu + tə + ciinə)* handful (unit of measure).

gùgùgwá *v. id. (= həguguwə)* 1. sound of many large animals moving around. 2. sound of many people walking.

gúh *adj. id.* having cracks or scratches.

gùjá'ágùjá' *v. id.* rustling of clothing or beads against moving body.

gùjáb *adj. id.* 1. very wet. 2. unable to stand.

gújí (= gidə́).

gulə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gùləná)* pick green leaves.

gùlənǵá -ə *adj. n.* 1. unevenly paired. 2. the odd one of a set.

gùlənǵá -ə *n.* one that is left over when things are divided into pairs.

gùlənǵá -ə *n.* type of tree.

gúlà *n.* a term used in the game cika.

gúlagə́ndziinə *n. (comp. from gulənə + gandziinə)* evening star.

gúlakə́d'ə́hənə *n. (comp. from gulənə + kə́d'ə́hənə)* morning star.

gúlánə *n.* evening or morning star.

gùlyágùlyár *adj. id.* hoarse sounding (of voice), dull sounding (of a drum).

gunə *v.i. (vn. gùnəná)* experience an unexpected event which is interpreted as a bad omen. (This may be a denominal verb. See guna.)

gúnə *n.* fire, heat. See matsə́fəha.

gúnəgúnə *adj. n.* 1. like fire. 2. working hard and fast.

gùnǵá -ə *n.* bad omen. See gunə.

gùnǵáyá *n.* type of tree with edible white fruit.

gùndírǵá *n. (pl. gundirinə)* any village official below the chief.

gùnwàdǎ -ə *n.* type of plant (like guinea-corn, source of sugar, rope made from leaves).

gùnwánə *n.* (*action n.*) judgement. *ɖa gunwanə* (= *la gunwanə*) 'pass judgement.'

gunwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gùnwùná)* (= *gənwu*) 1. come together or meet unintentionally, find by accident. *gunwu də uura* 'discuss.' *ooshi nyi gunwee ka shinə.* 'I did not get a chance to come.' See *la, ləbə, dəbə.*

gùrǎk *v. id.* (= *bərəgut*) swallowing noisily.

gùrəs *v. id.* (= *gərəshi*) 1. falling of a wet wall. 2. coming to a skidding halt after running.

gurət *id.* See *gurətə.*

gurətə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gùrətənə)* tie tightly. See *anyi.*

gùrə̀vìbwà̀yíinə *n. (comp. from gurə̀vi + bwayiinə)* type of jujube tree (larger, fruit not as good).

gùrə̀vínə *n.* jujube tree, *H. magarya.*

gúrá -ə *n.* hearth (for warming room, rather than cooking). See *rəkikinə.*

gùrəlǎmá *n.* type of necklace with large beads.

guraŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gúráŋənə)* teach child to fear something that is dangerous by frightening or threatening.

gúryálíí *adj. id.* having more than one color.

gúsə *adj.* short.

gútərə́ -ə *n.* type of mouse or rat. See *hima.*

guts *id.* See *gutsə.*

gutsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gùtsənə)* 1. seize and pull away forcefully. 2. pull out (hair). See *mbudə.* 3. take largest share. 4. give more blows in a fight than one receives. See *gatsə.* 5. surpass someone.

gùvǎ *n. (inher. poss.).* friend.

guvadənə *n. (comp. from guva + ədənə)* person who grinds corn with another.

guvaləma *n. (comp. from guva + ləma)* person with same name as another.

guvambəza *n. (comp. from guva + mbəza)* enemy.

guvaya *n. (comp. from guva + ya)* neighbor.

- gù'wá -ə *n.* 1. hole. 2. grave. 3. sickness brought by the ghost of someone you have wronged. gu'uca'a 'dye pit.'
- gúyà' *adj.* (with pl. subject) long, straight and thin (of hair, poles, etc.).
- gù'yám *v. id.* (= guzam) sound of falling tree.
- gùzám *v. id.* (= guyam).
- gwàarínə *n.* 1. mound of earth with seeds planted in it. 2. older boys participating in the kakəbənə ceremony.
- gwa'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gwá'ánə or qwà'áná)* 1. beat against, tap against, hammer against. 2. fasten by nailing. 3. make roof.
- gwádà *n.* white homespun cotton cloth.
- gwàd'á -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* 1. knuckle. 2. joint or node of plant.
- gwàgùnėek *adj.* toothless.
- gwágúryámínə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* chin.
- gwàgyàzá -ə *n.* sway-backed person.
- gwahə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gwáhánə)* loose leaves, defoliate. See yíḃə.
- gwáhyánə *n.* jackal (?). See mətəḃatsaka, pəḃətsoova.
- gwàjǎfá -ə *n.* type of termite (builds small hills), hill of same.
- gwájǎḃáh *adj. id.* unable to stand.
- gwak *id.* lying ill. See gwakə.
- gwakə *v.i. (vn. gwákánə)* (= gwapə) lying down too ill to get up. See hoopə.
- gwalə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gwálánə)* tie onto something. See anyi.
- gwàlàngá *n. (action n.)* tripping with the foot. ḃa gwaləḃa (= nga gwaləḃa) 'trip.'
- gwàlhiràrà' *adj. id.* not tied well.
- gwàmá -ə *n.* 1. corral, enclosure for confining livestock. 2. herd of cattle. 3. place where pots are fired.
- gwàndá *n.* frog, toad.
- gwángà -ə *n.* [\lt F.] truth. See əntanyinə, tantanyinə.

gwántàngə *n.* type of cassava.

gwaŋ *adj.* bent over. See gwaŋə.

gwaŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gwàŋəná)* 1. bend over, bend down. See tangudahə.
See dəgwasə. 2. pass zenith (of sun).

gwapə *v.i (vn. gwápəná) (= gwakə).*

gwàpyá *n.* person without teeth (= mafəna'a).

gwár *v. id.* dragging something on the ground.

gwàràráwá *n.* 'white' metal. See tibisa, kookura.

gwàrárà *n.* leather bag carried by donkey.

gwàsá *n.* medicine (furəfa) taken against gu'wa. See gu'wa.

gwát *v. id.* (= pa') swearing an oath.

gwatə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gwàtəná)* sort out and put into separate piles. See təkə.

gwátà (= wata).

gwáv *v. id.* 1. falling flat. 2. dying.

gwàvá *n.* type of woman's hair sytle (= loohəya).

gwáyà *n.* type of plant (leaf like tigernut, used for incense).

gwazə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. gwàzəná)* 1. stir. See kələbə təərədə. 2. peddle.
3. ride bicycle, drive car.

gwyák *adj. id.* very wet.

gya'(a) hundred.

gyàadáyá *n. (comp. from gi 'face' + aadaya)* sky that is half clear and half black as with the coming of a storm.

gyáagyà *n.* chicken. See gaḃəza.

gyáagyákásiinə *n. (comp. from gyaagya + ka + siinə)* chicken given as a gift by a man to his fiancée.

gyáḃágyáḃ *adj.* big, fat, thick.

gyáďá -ə *n.* hump on cow's back.

gyáďálá -ə *n.* portion or share allocated to someone.

gyágyáďá -ə *n.* tassel on maize.

- gyàgyálá *n.* male rainbow lizard (= dampwapwaza). See kwakwara.
- gyàlàkə̀nə *n.* agusi melon. See ndza'alhəkə̀nə, nwa'a.
- gyàlhá'únə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) armpit. a gyalha'ukü 'under his protection.'
- gyárá *n.* belt of white homespun cloth worn around the stomach to show that one is in mourning.
- gyárà *n.* woman's hair style (head shaved on all but top).
- hə *pron.* you (2nd pers. sing.).
- hə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. həná)* (= əhə) 1. shoot (arrow or gun). 2. arrive at destination. 3. wind cotton around stick before making into thread. See cikə, tabəfə.
- hə́fə́gə̀mənə *n. (action n.)* hiccup.
- hə́fə̀wii *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hə́fə̀wiiənə)* trying hard to understand something one sees or hears about for the first time.
- hə́hə̀bá -ə *n.* child who crys too easily, "cry baby" (= matuutuwa).
- həm *v. id.* hitting with force.
- hənə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hənənə)* burn. See ətsa, vuu.
- hə́nyàhə́nyàmú *adj.* tasty (of meat only).
- hərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hərə́nə)* steal. See ngərəma, fə́fə̀ma, zəmə, luuma, sakə, fwasa.
- hərə́fìnə *n.* fish.
- hərə́fìná *n. (comp. from hərə́fi + na)* type of fish (brown, large head).
- hərə́kəm *adj. id.* stacked up.
- hərə̀mbə́fá -ə *n.* trap made from stone propped with cornstalk used to catch mice or birds.
- hərə̀ndzàká -ə *n.* double-jointed knee.
- hərə́níká -ə *n.* (= hə́riinəkə) type of bird (chicken-sized, brown, with red eyes, eats fish).
- hərə̀sə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hərə́sənə)* cut edge of something to make it straight, trim cloth. See tsalhə, la.
- hərə́ts *v. id.* jumping when startled.

həradz *id.* See həradzə.

həradzə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* hərádzónə) bail water out of pool to make fishing easier.

hərálhá -ə *n.* small hill of "white" rocks.

həryálhyánə *n.* type of grass (used for mats).

həryaŋ *id.* See həryaŋə.

həryaŋə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* həryáŋónə) scrape food from a pot or dish. See hurəŋə, hwatə, əndzə.

həryát *v. id.* getting up. See hurəpyat.

həs *adj. id.* 1. cut close to the base (of plant). 2. sitting close.

həvá' *v. id.* falling with impact (of mat, bundle of grass, etc.).

háabà -ə *n.* 1. hair-like feathers on baby chicken. 2. type of poor quality hard cotton.

háalàlà *n.* thing of one's very own. kəbənə nga haalalaaki 'my very own gown.'

ha'(a) *adv.* thus, indeed.

há'álónə *n.* type of plant (smooth cactus-like vine with four-sided stem, used for medicine).

hábàrá -ə *n.* [

háḃəkónə *n.* (*action n.*) yawn.

haḃa *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* háḃánə) [

hadə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* háḃónə) dress or wrap corps for burial. See hada.

háḃá -ə *n.* shroud. See hadə.

hada *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* hàḃánə) 1. fix, repair. 2. dress and groom oneself. 3. keep, take care of.

həfáfàfà *v. id.* moving through grass (of snake).

hakila *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* hákílànə) [

hələlək *adj. id.* raw tasting.

hələləwù *adj. id.* (= halyalyawu) raw tasting, unripe.

hələlŋ *adj.* very clean.

hàlányánə *n.* rust.

hálík *adj. id.* dress up.

hàlìminə *n.* verbal abuse, verbal noise. alə haliminə 'provoke, goad.'

hámár *adj. id.* hold close to body with both hands.

hàndùufánə *n.* (= kanduufanə) (perhaps *comp. from* ha (?) + nduufa) brain.

hángàbáanə *n.* (*comp. from* ha + nga + baanə) bed. See ədəra.

hàngàbá *n.* (= ba) (*comp. from* ha + nga + ba (?)) (*inher. poss., body part*)
palate.

hànjáhànjáwú *adj.* sandy (of soil).

hánkìnə *n.* 1. type of grass (used to make dalaŋa). 2. type of tree with
poison fruit.

hankurə *v.i. (vn. hánkúrənə)* eat quickly and become full quickly. See əburə,
adə.

hànùná *n.* pot which is not hard after firing.

hànyínə *n. (dead pl.)* 1. dirt, soil, land. 2. region, country. anə hanyinə nga
nwudiinə 'in the land of the Kilbas.' See gərənyinə, vəranə.

haŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hāŋəná)* 1. boast, praise self. 2. praise, give honor,
show respect. See dəla, đuuənə, ngəmə, kuurə'i, laəmə.

hárəbánə *n.* dove (= kurəkuta).

harəbatəgəərə -ə *n. (comp. from* harəbə + tə + gəərə) type of bird (white,
found near water). See harəbənə.

hárəhárə *adj.* rough.

hàrá *gr. form. (= harii)* others (*pl.*). hara ənja 'other people' hariinəkii 'the
others.' See əndə'i.

hàtsəhàts *v. id.* walking.

ha'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hà'únə)* jest, do something funny to cause laughter.

hàwúhàwú 1. being of a type of soft unfertile soil. 2. unripe. 3. useless (?).

hawur *adv. (from* ha'(a) + wur) thus (I'm fine). This phrase is used as a reply to
the greeting ngaa (nga) baa hə kwa? 'did you sleep well?'

hawuta *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hawutanə)* [< F.] join together. See ləbə.

héepá *n.* type of skin parasite.

he'ya *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hé'yànə)* [< F.] be enough. See cilh.

híd'áwá -ə *n.* type of grass used to make brooms and rope. See mavaka.

híllà *n.* [< F.] surprise, astonishment (= hurəshishinə).

hiima *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hiimánə)* [< F.] think, plan.

hiimà *n.* [< F.] thought, idea.

hìlās *adj. id.* (= ilas) dried crisp.

híməbìlínə *n.* (*comp. from* himə + bilinə) type of brown field mouse.

hímà -ə *n.* (*pl.* hiiminə) mouse.

hínə *n.* millet.

hìnə'wá -ə *n.* (= hī'una).

híndzəbú *v. id.* 1. hitting someone in the mouth hard. 2. falling from tree and being hurt.

híndzəbú *adj.* many (of small things). mahíndzəbu hī'u 'many seeds.'

híndzəndz *adj.* lined up with no members missing (no gaps in the line).

hirənwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hīrənwúnə)* 1. sniffle (after crying). See finkusə, shankufə. 2. whine (of dog).

hírəs *v. id.* (= hī'u) biting off a little bit. See hirə'u.

hírə'u *v. id.* biting a little and causing pain. See hirəs.

hí'ú *v. id.* (= hirəs) See vu'yak.

hì'ugínə *n.* (*comp. from* hī'u + ginə) (*inher. poss., body part*) eyeball.

hì'ùná *n.* small axe (used to peel bark). (= hinə'wa). See raha.

hiwee *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hīwéenə)* hide the truth (by lying or otherwise). (Stem only occurs with -ee ext.) See jīrakə.

hí'wá -ə *n.* individual seed.

hízəz *v. id.* (= kyazaza, hyazaza) sound of cow being milked.

huβə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. húbə́nə)* (= humbatə) dip up excessive sauce with one's piece of mush (ɖafəna).

húβyák *adj. id.* rotten (of fruit or vegetables).

húɖáɖá *adj. id.* large and round (?).

hufæk *id.* See hufækə.

hufækə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hùfákəñə)* cut hole in something. See la.

húfíríŋ *adj.* (= da'ariŋ) perfectly round.

huməs *id.* See huməsə.

huməsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hùmásəñə)* crumble dry leaves (in hand).

humbat *id.* See humbatə.

humbatə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hùmbátəñə)* (= huḃa).

hùmsáayà *n.* sauce made from bean leaves.

hundarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hùndárəñə)* glean root crop left after harvest (by digging with a hoe).

húr *gr. form.* genuine, real, exact, true. əndə gudəe hur 'a real Gude (person).'

hùrəbá -ə *n. (pl. hurəbinə)* baboon. See ganshira.

húráḃəci *v. id.* (= huḃət) drinking a sip of liquid.

húráhúr *adj. id.* dry (= mahurəkii). See hurə.

hùrəhùrəlhá -ə *n.* cooked bone which is soft enough to be eaten.

húrəməá -ə *n.* large forest.

hùrəndəká -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* back of knee.

hùrəndzəkáta -ə *n.* bow-legged person.

húrápyát *v. id.* getting up quickly.

húráshíshínə *n. (upper dialect) (comp. from hurə + shishinə)* surprise, astonishment (= hīla).

hurəŋ *id.* See hurəŋə.

hurəŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. húrəŋəñə)* 1. scrape out a hole (in wood or calabash). See həryəŋə. 2. cause severe discomfort (of hunger or coldness).

huryagi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. huryaginə)* (stem occurs only with motion to speaker ext.) bore out (eye, bad spot on kolanut, etc.).

húryàlyánə *n.* small stone which hinders hoeing.

huu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hùuná)* 1. echo. 2. howl (of wind), roar (of motor), boom (of gun). huwya (motion to speaker ext.).

huubə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hùubəñə)* growl (?) (of animals). See ngiirə.

- hùulá *n.* shea nut (source of an oil used in sauce). See kədana.
- huurə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hùurəná)* dry, dry up. See ifə, hwafə, utərə.
- hwaadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwàadəná)* refuse request. See naana.
- hwá' *v. id.* drying up. See hwaf.
- hwàbà *n.* 1. sauce of fish and red sorrel. 2. white colored dog. See boola.
- hwàbá -ə *n.* (= dzaβa).
- hwad' *id.* See hwadə.
- hwadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwàdəná)* 1. mix a wet substance (mud or clay), knead dough. 2. be done by many people at once (with a *vn.* as subject).
kə hwa'i udzəná. 'every one danced.' kə hwa'i panə 'many people fought.'
- hwaf *id.* dried up, with skin rash, bubbling. See hwafə. hwa'.
- hwafə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwáfəná)* turn brown or dry up from disease (of leaves). See kutsa. 2. break out in skin rash. 3. bubble, foam. See əbu.
- hwáfá *n.* liar (?).
- hwahwa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwàhwánə)* scratch. See nguriyahə.
- hwáhwàŋá -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* cheek.
- hwàlálá *v. id.* popping sound made by something burning or cooking.
- hwálhəciinə *n. (comp. from hwalhə + ciinə) (inher. poss., body part)* forearm.
- hwálhá -ə *n.* type of iron bar formerly used as money.
- hwàməhwàmá *v. id.* chewing (of hard food only). See tsəβə, mudamudak.
- hwámá' *v. id.* breaking of dry grass or sticks.
- hwàndàbá *n.* arrow shaft tipped with gum rather than an arrow head (used to catch birds). See ava.
- hwangi *v.i. and v.t. (stem occurs only in the imperative form)* give to me (strong command). hwangimə (*imperative pl.*). See və, vii, deeci.
- hwapə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwápəná)* (= hoopə) be immobile because of illness or disability. See gwakə.
- hwárəhwárə *adj. id.* 1. dry. 2. barren (of childless woman).
- hwárəmíne *n.* type of tigernut (small, brown). See mandavi'ya.

- hwarakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwàrákəná)* turn to vinager (of beer). mahwarakəkii 'tasting like vinager.'
- hwat *id.* See hwatə.
- hwatə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwátəná)* 1. strip leaves from grass stalks. 2. shuck maize. 3. scrape dried mush from pot or dish. See əndzə, həryaŋə.
- hwátəhwátá *v. id.* 1. walking. 2. hoeing.
- hwayina *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwáyínánə)* [< F.] heal, get well. See mbəďə.
- hwii *v.i. and v.t. (vn. hwiinə)* 1. run. 2. hwiipaa 'run away, flee.' See tangə. 3. flow (of river). See pulə. 4. grow horizontally (of vine). hwaya (motion to speaker ext.).
- hwíirəná *n.* dry spell, drought (from hurəná ?).
- hwíirəná *n.* (*dead pl.*) twin(s).
- hwíirə'úďa *n.* (*comp. from hwíirə 'dry spell' + uďa*) white hair (of old age).
- hyáďú *v. id.* (= hya'u).
- hyáľh *adj. id.* full to top with liquid.
- hyáľh *v. id.* catching with hands and holding securely.
- hyàməďənyà *n.* meningitis (?).
- hyánəhyán *adj.* soft (of skin).
- hyá'ú *v. id.* (= hyaďu) striking with whip.
- i *conj.* and another (others). See section 2.9.
- i (= itə).
- i *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ínə)* 1. run in or out. igərə 'run in.' igi 'run out.' 'ya (motion to speaker ext.). 2. itə 'jump when startled.' 3. ivə 'soak through (of water)' See dəmə, ləvə.
- idə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. idəná)* 1. bite. 2. bleed. See idəna 'blood.' 3. catch fire.
- idəná -ə *n.* blood. idənaaki 'my blood.' See idə.
- idá -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) knee.
- ifə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ífəná)* 1. dry up, evaporate. See huurə, rəďəďə. 2. ifə vəna 'wait under shelter until rain stops.' 3. be brave. 4. swell (of heel).

- ífálǫŋ *v. id.* (= 'yaŋǫlaŋ) falling down.
 ìgúf *adj. id.* (= ikut) having a bent neck.
 íirá *irr. adj.* old.
 iirə *v.i. (vn. íirǣnə)* (= irə) become old, be old.
 íkút *adj. id.* having a bent neck.
 ikutə *v.i. (vn. ikutənə)* (= iməkə).
 ìlǣbá'á *n. (comp. from ilə + ba'a)* spine.
 ìlǣdzǣmá *n. (comp. from ilə + ədzǣmǣ)* (*inher. poss., body part*) rib.
 ìlǣgúna *n. (comp. from ilə + gunə)* glowing coals of fire. See mǣdǣdagunə.
 ílǣmǣgúntá -ə *n. (comp. from ilə + mǣgunta)* any amusing toy.
 ìlá -ə *n. (reg. poss.)* bone.
 ílás *adj. id.* (= hilas) dry and brittle.
 ilh *id.* See ilhǣ.
 ilhǣ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ìlhǣnǣ)* break off charred piece from burnt wood.
 ílót *v. id.* landing of a frog.
 iməkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ìmǣkǣnə)* (= ikutə) duck to avoid something thrown.
 ìmbǣsá -ə *n.* flat wooden spoon or spatula for dishing out mush.
 inə *pron.* we (1st pers. pl. excl.).
 inə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ínǣnə)* (*upper dialect, = anyi*).
 ìnǣfǣtǣ *adv.* two years from now.
 ìndzǣrá -ə *n. (upper dialect)* mortar (= unerǣdya).
 índzì *adv.* (= əndzì) now.
 ìnùsǣrǣ *adv.* next year.
 írǣku *v. id.* going inside quickly (of animal going into hole). See da'u.
 isǣ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ísǣnə)* shave. See naadǣ, tsahǣ, dza.
 ìshì *n.* nickname for any baby. (= əshi).

- itə *gr. form.* (= i, itiitə, yi, yitə, yitiitə) 1. how. 2. what (with inherently possessed nouns. See mi.) itə nə ləmaku-a? 'what is your name?'
- ìvənyíə *n.* (*dead pl.*) charcoal.
- ìwánə *n.* type of bird (small with brown wings).
- ìzǎ -ə *n.* type of tree (like kurəmbanə, leaves used in sauce).
- ìzǎ'u *adj.* hot (of the temperature or the taste of pepper).
- izee *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ìzéənə)* (Stem occurs only with -ee ext.) 1. habitually like or desire. 2. do habitually.
- ja *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jánə)* (motion to speaker ext. perhaps from dzə or dza ?) be enough (of seasoning in sauce). kə ja zhatana. 'there is enough salt (in the sauce).'
- jàakàciyá *n.* metal ring worn on the finger.
- jà'ájǎ'á *n.* type of gruel made from tamarind.
- jaala *v.i. (vn. jáalánə)* [< F.] win, succeed. See zəmə.
- jàhángalá -ə *n.* [< F.] journey.
- jájáwùrà *n.* hour-glass drum, H. kalangu.
- jal *id.* See jalə.
- jalə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jǎləná)* smash something dry (such as dry roasted ənyasaŋa between stones). See pəralhə, majala, njalhə.
- jálà *n.* (= jaala) small pot for cooking sauce. See uuda.
- jàmbúrà *n.* type of bird (yellow and brown).
- jáná *n.* external surface layer of the guinea-corn stalk.
- janga *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jángánə)* [< F.] read.
- jángúlyá *n.* whole kernels of guinea-corn cooked with beans.
- jàngúmá *n.* decorative scars on body.
- jànkárá *n.* louse.
- jànwá -ə *n.* type of tree, H. aduwa, (Abraham: 'desert date tree,' *balanites aegyptiaca*).
- jánwáanwà *n.* type of fish, H. kurungu, (Abraham: 'spotted synodont catfish,' *synodontis batensoda*) (= jilaŋa).

jànwá' *adj. id.* emaciated.

jányánə *n.* type of large insect (like *davuraŋa*).

jàwú *adj. id.* very hot.

jìdə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jìd'əná)* swear an oath. See *wudə*.

jìd'ənwá -ə *n.* grinding place on large flat rock.

jìd'á -ə *n. (pl. jì'inə)* 1. fly. 2. oath. See *jìd'əna*.

jìgəl *id.* See *jìgələ*.

jìgələ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jìgəlónə)* 1. stack things up. 2. lay bricks. 3. cross legs. See *kwala'a, jìgud'əfə*.

jìgərá -ə *n.* duiker (?). See *kanyadə*.

jìga *v.i. (vn. jìgánə)* (motion to speaker ext.; stem does not occur elsewhere) be seen coming in the distance.

jìgud'əf *id.* See *jìgud'əfə*.

jìgud'əfə *v.i. (vn. jìgud'əfánə)* 1. sit with legs crossed. 2. sit in small crowded space. See *tsərangumu, jìgələ*.

jìgwàd'á -ə *n.* 1. cock's comb. 2. tuft of hair left unshaven on front of child's head.

jìgwárá -ə *n.* first cultivation after planting. See *dzaḃa, hwaḃa*.

jì'ílá *n. (comp. from jì'i + la)* cow fly.

jì'iwá *n. (comp. from jì'i + wa)* type of fly (big, green, attracted by dead things).

jìjìnə *n. (reg. poss., kin. term)* grandchild.

jìjìt'ə'idá -ə *n. (comp. from jìjì + tə + ida)* youngest grandchild.

jìkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jìk'əná)* 1. do again, do repeatedly. See *ənə, zha*. 2. *kə jìki Musa makə a luuma ənshinə*. 'Musa went to market three times today.' 3. *ənuu jìkətə*. 'do it again.' 4. reply, answer. 5. stack, set down. See *tawurə*.

jìkəjìkə *adj. (= jakəjak)* blue or green.

jìká *n.* type of guinea-corn (red, matures earliest).

- jìká -ə *n.* small amount added by seller to what is paid for. See jikə.
- jiku *id.* See verb.
- jiku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jìkùná)* poke, poke eye. See dzəbə, viliku.
- jìkwā *n.* [*< F.*] a boast (= laama).
- jilə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jílánə)* experience sharp pain, cause sharp pain. See ɗa, bərakə, peepidə, yahəra'a, zəmə, zərəkə.
- jìlànǵá -ə *n.* type of fish (= janwaanwa).
- jílh *v. id.* grabbing and holding with force.
- jimə *v.i. (vn. jìməná)* go down. jima (motion to speaker ext.) kə jima ci aba'a təhwa. 'he dismounted from the horse.'
- jìməká -ə *n.* type of large turtle.
- jìnàkà -ə *n.* ostrich. See ndawa.
- jìnátá *n.* flint for starting fires. ka jinata 'start fire by striking flint.'
- jìngəɗə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jìngəɗənə)* raise self up to see over something.
- jìnwa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jìnwánə)* (motion to speaker ext.; stem does not occur elsewhere) sprout leaves. See pukə, dəvə, nga.
- jipa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jìpənə)* [*< F.*] lodge somewhere, give lodging to someone.
- jirakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. jìrəkənə)* lie. See hiwee. See *n.*
- jirakənə *n.* lie. See da'wa, ədanə.
- jwá'əlìnə *n.* small stone, pebble. (phonologically irr.).
- kə *gr. form.* marker of completive aspect.
- kəərá -ə *n.* ditch. See məɗza.
- kábənə *n.* 1. cotton (fiber or plant). 2. cloth, gown, shirt. See əmputəkəbənə.
- kəbəná -ə *n.* type of plant (leaves used in sauce, tastes like okra).
- kəbətəsáká -ə *n.* (*comp. from* kəbə + tə + səka) gift taken to bereaved family.
- kəca' *id.* See kəca'a.
- kəca'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kəcə'ánə)* 1. shake or rattle inside container. 2. winnow by tossing gently. See kətsa'u, bu'u, tangwa'a.

kədə'i *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kədá'ná)* beg. kəgyá (irr. motion to speaker ext.).

kádáná -ə *n.* shea tree. See huula.

kədáwànə *n.* evening. da kədawanə 'in the evening.'

kəðə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kəðánə)* mix and dissolve solids into water by squeezing in hand as when making gruel.

kəðábídzəŋ *adj. id. (= kələŋɪf)* sitting or standing high up so as to be about to fall.

kəðəh *adj.* near, close. kəðəhə da 'near to.'

kəðəhánə *n.* early morning ("when the cock crows"—approx. 4-5 a.m.).

kəðəmbəŋ *adj.* floating.

kəðəŋgálh *adj. id.* placed such as to be in danger of falling.

kəðá' *adj.* quiet.

kəðədəhá *n.* type of fish.

kəðakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kəðákənə)* sneak up on in order to catch.

kəðasə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kəðásənə)* cook liquid (as in refining groundnut oil or scalding milk).

kəgíwúudá *n.* type of tree.

kəgya *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kəgyánə)* See kədə'i.

kəh *adj. id.* foul smelling.

kəjəŋgərényá *n.* mythical flying snake.

kəjéerənə *n.* shirt, gown. See kəbənə. (irr. affixing: kəjeeriita 'that shirt', but kəjeerənaaki 'my shirt'.)

kəkəm *id.* See kəkəmə.

kəkəmə *v.i. (vn. kəkámənə)* nod head up and down to say 'yes.' See takənə, zəkutə.

kəkənə *n. (pl. kəkəshī'inə) (irr. poss., kin. term)* grandmother, grandmother's female sibling or cousin.

kəkàrá *n.* broken calabash (used for dust pan, etc).

kələb *id.* See kələbə.

- kələbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kələbənə)* 1. stir sauce while cooking. See gwazə, tərəfə. 2. make sauce. See kuba.
- kəlāngīf *adj. id. (= kəfəbidzəŋ).*
- kəlārā -ə *n.* 1. wide mouthed shallow pot. 2. piece of broken pot of same shape. See uuda.
- kəla *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kəlānə)* catch falling object in container or in open hand (without grasping). See kətsa'u, əsə, va.
- kəlālāŋə *id. (= kəlalaŋənə, action n.)* hopping on one foot. See bərəfa.
- kəlānə *n.* blacksmith's work room.
- kəlāndā *n.* a game (tag?).
- kəlīwūtər *adj. id.* held between thumb and first finger.
- kəmbəkəmbəŋ *adj.* wide, round and flat (of certain leaves).
- kəmbats *id.* See kəmbatsə.
- kəmbatsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kəmbətsənə)* dip up small amount of water. See katsə, gəcii, tyalhə.
- kənāhā' *adv.* used in kənaha' doorə 'at this time tomorrow.'
- kənāshīkyà *n.* type of plant (leaves used in sauce).
- kəngəm *gr. form.* all, the whole. vərənə kəngəm 'the whole village.'
- kəŋ *adj. id.* standing straight. See kəŋə.
- kəŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kəŋənə)* 1. stand, stop, wait, be still. kəŋəənə 'stand up (*intr.*)' kəŋee 'stand up, straighten (*tr.*)' See maɸə. 2. become paralyzed.
- kəngérəŋ *adj.* dried completely (hard and stiff). See kwangulyaŋ.
- kəp *v. id. (= ɸya')* drinking all up.
- kərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kərənə) (= tərə)* 1. carry away, take away. kira 'bring' (motion to speaker ext.). 2. kəree 'escort away (as when a guest leaves).'
- kərəbə'wā -ə *n.* potash. See zhatana.
- kərəkərə *v. id.* driving animals away.
- kərəkyà'á *n.* type of grass (used for mats).
- kərəmá -ə *n.* crocodile.

- kàrəmá -ə *n.* large shield made of leather.
- kárép *v. id.* 1. eating up completely. 2. whipping thoroughly.
- kàrètátèh *adj.* strong (of rope or chain which cannot break easily).
- kárátá *n.* scabies, H. kazwa (= gadza).
- kərə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kárá'únə)* surround in order to catch. See taarata, laṅṅa.
- kára *n.* small decorated calabash used as cup. See kunwa.
- kárá'ínə *n.* wooden rack for storing pots.
- kəratənwa -ə *n. (comp. from kəra + tənwa)* blister or callus from grinding.
- kárátsəərà -ə *n. (comp. from kəra + tsəəra)* blister or callus from hoeing.
- kəree *v.i. and v.t. (vn. káréenə)* See kərə.
- káryáṅá -ə *n.* place in river where many fish are found. See mafəreenṅa.
- káryáts *v. id.* scratching.
- kásákás *adj. (= təkəsəsək)* thick (of liquid or foliage).
- kətsəḍə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kətsəḍ'ónə)* sift.
- kətsarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kətsárénə)* dance at funeral. See udzə.
- kətsa'u *id.* See verb.
- kətsa'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kətsá'únə)* catch a falling object by grasping with hands. See kəca'a, əsə, kəla, va.
- káyáḅ *adj. id.* loose, limp (of a broken hand or foot).
- kəzəka -ə *n. (pl. kəzhikinə)* 1. orphan (= nwuzəta). 2. type of sickness (stiff hands which will not straighten out).
- kázəmbúh *adj. id.* being slipped over to one side (of a load on a donkey's back).
- kázáṅ *adj. id.* of small amount, barely a handful.
- kəzhà'ínə *n.* wrinkles or lines in skin. See purəshikə.
- kəzhár *adj. id.* consisting of a long strip (such as a long strip of meat).
- kəzhìmbàrá -ə *n.* harp-like musical instrument (H. molo).
- ka *prep.* to, for, as.
- ka *gr. form.* marker of potential aspect.

ka *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kánə)* throw, put, place, send, start. kaala (irr. iter. form).
 ka usəra 'spend the day.' ka ləma 'give a name.' ka monyanə 'sing.' ka vurəna
 'yell out.' See vurəna, lhəbə, wa. ka na 'send messenger.' ka ma 'send mes-
 sage.' kavə gunə 'start fire.' ka alinə 'lay egg.' See dəkə, məci, uurə, gudələ,
 vugədə.

kàdzàd'əná *adv.* far away. See dzəd'.

kámì *gr. form.* for what (reason), why. ka mi ci ku a dzə-a? 'why are you
 going?'

kàabú'ù *adv.* (= taabu'u) before.

káacíŋá *n.* type of grasshopper.

kaala *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kàalánə)* See ka.

káarà -ə *n.* stalk of grass, straw, arrow shaft.

kaaree *v.i. and v.t. (vn. káarəenə)* refuse, reject. See naana.

káawùnə *n.* type of bird, H. gaggafa, (Abraham: 'bateleur eagle,' *terathopius
 ecaudatus*).

káayà *n.* acacia tree, H. gawo.

ká'à said to child after he sneezes.

kàbwàrá *n.* birth mark.

kàbwásàrá *n.* onion.

kaβə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kàβəná)* (= ngaβə) mold into round balls (as when
 making balls of mud for building a wall). See takəra'a.

kácárà -ə *n.* hanging mat which covers doorway.

kácórà *n.* toy top made of snail shell.

kàdəd'əmə -ə *n.* type of insect (eats guinea-corn).

kádəgùlámá -ə *n.* deaf person.

kádəgùnwanə *n.* (comp. from kadə + gunwanə) paddle used to beat clothes
 while washing.

kádəgwá *n.* vulture.

kàdəmá -ə *n.* girl who has never been married.

kádəmbùlá -ə *n.* 1. woman's body cloth. 2. tree stump.

kàdá *n.* stick.

- kàdàbyàďá -ə *n.* (*comp. from kada + byaďə* (?)) any small stick used for digging.
- kádàlá *n.* one chosen to distribute meat at a feast.
- kadalafərə *n.* title of village official who distributes meat at the chief's compound during festivals.
- kádàlìmínə *n.* (*comp. from kada + liminə*) earlobe plug.
- kádámàgərə *n.* (*comp. from kada + magərə*) type of tree.
- kádà'únèrədyá -ə *n.* (*comp. from kada + unerədyə*) pestle.
- kádóorá *n.* (*comp. from kada + uura*) collar bone.
- kàdzəgùrəmə *n.* hobbling rope for animal's front legs.
- kádzəŋá *n.* mosquito.
- kəďə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn. káďəná*) 1. strike hard blow (usu. fatal). See dəgə.
2. kəďə səka 'desire.'
- káfəkaf *adj.* (= kyafəkyaf, lhyafəlhyaf) of light weight.
- kágənkwáďə *n.* (= baaya).
- kəgərəmə -ə *n.* large river. See gərə.
- kəgùnká *n.* type of tree seed used to make beads.
- kəgyáďurá -ə *n.* woven basket-like filter for straining liquids. See mətsə'wa.
- káh *v. id.* pulling out (of knife, arrow, etc.).
- kəjá -ə *n.* 1. substitute, representative. See madəbama. 2. minnow, young fish. See məkaja.
- kəjìrəŋá *n.* 1. general term for cricket, cockroach, or beetle. 2. toothache.
- kakar *id.* See kakarə.
- kakarə *v.i.* (*vn. kákárəná*) cackle after laying egg. See kulakə.
- kálà *gr. form.* every. kala ənda 'every person.'
- káláadzəgùďá -ə *n.* ladle of wood or of gourd.
- káləkálà *n.* type of hawk.
- káləwá *n.* whirlwind.
- kəlhirəbìŋá *n.* type of plant (leaves used in sauce).

- kálid'yá'énvwii *n.* (*comp. from* (?) + énvwiinə) type of small grasshopper.
- kámákámà *adj.* (= kanəkanə) (with pl. subject) different. liinə kamakama
'different cows.'
- kámbà *n.* (*pl.* kambinə). (rarely in singular) person of the royal clan.
- kámpyáwà -ə *n.* type of trousers with wide legs.
- kánəkánə *adj.* (= kanəkanə).
- kàndámáanə *n.* (*action n.?*) butting in, meddling.
- kàndíndìrínə *n.* swelling of eyelid, sty.
- kàndùud'ánə *n.* (= handuud'anə).
- kànfúlyànyínə *n.* empty shell.
- kánshàgyá *n.* (*pl.* kanshaginə) ant. See tonona, wagənə, ədanfwa, feefiḡa, məḏaadəwa, məḡəreenəha, manə'uminə, mərəmbwagəḡəma, monakinə.
- kàntəḡúnə *n.* type of leaf used in sauce.
- kàntəhùḏá -ə *n.* caterpillar. (note: Higi cognate = ntərəḏa).
- kàntəkántà *n.* first one to finish or arrive.
- kàntásiínə *n.* 1. scar tissue. 2. paralyzed limb (with no feeling in it).
- kàntsá *n.* type of insect (red, infests chickens, goats and sheep).
- kányàḏá -ə *n.* type of antelope (larger than jigəra).
- karə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* kàrəná) clear field before planting.
- kárəkára *v. id.* dancing.
- kàrá *interjection* "good grief" (= 'ya'im).
- kárəbwányá *n.* type of insect (like davuraḡa, bites, edible toasted).
- kàràránə *n.* stretcher or bier made of guinea-corn stalks.
- kás *v. id.* (= kats) 1. chopping. 2. catching and holding.
- kàtəkwàsá *n.* type of disease or blight which attacks groundnut plants.
- kətə'wa *irr. adj. and adj. n.* raw.
- kàtíngəlínə *n.* (*poss. unknown, body part*) part of buttocks (?).
- kats *id.* See katsə.

katsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kàtsəná)* 1. cut off small amount. See la. 2. dip up small amount of water. See kəmbatsə.

kàtsəbúka *n.* (= katsəbuKəná) (*comp. from ka + tsəbuka*) cluster of stars.

kàtsátsà' *adj.* light weight.

kàtsárəkə̀nə *n.* type of plant (fern-like leaves, used for medicine).

ka'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kà'ùná)* (*upper dialect and rare?, = ngərə*). ka'i (completive). ka'ya (motion to speaker ext.).

kávàh *adj. id.* very large (of stomach from pregnancy).

káváh *v. id.* 1. falling on stomach. 2. enlarging of stomach (from pregnancy).

káwáwánə *n. (action n.)* yelling or shouting (not words) while dancing.

káwù *n.* [*< F.*] 1. maternal uncle. 2. respectful term of address for older man.

káyígámà *n.* title of one of the traditional village elders.

ki *pron.* she (3rd pers. f. sing.).

kíď *v. id.* putting somewhere carefully.

kíďáts *v. id.* whipping lightly.

kih *id.* See kihə.

kihə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kihəná)* 1. prop base of object to prevent falling over. 2. plant feet so as not to be pulled over. See taahə.

kihùudá *n.* festivities held two or three months after a death.

kíífáarà *n. (comp. from kii 'tear' + faara)* sticky growth found on stones.

kíinə *n. (upper dialect, = tiinə)* tears, tree sap. See ngalhiinə, tuu.

kíinyínə *n.* child born to mother who is still nursing another child.

kíirə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kíirənə)* 1. pass time without doing. kə kíiri nyi da dzənə a Mubi. 'I spent (some time) without going to Mubi.' 2. become sooted or smokey. See makíirənə.

kíirənə *n.* 1. missing front tooth. See fwarə̀ɲa. 2. gap left where part of compound wall collapses.

kíi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kíiná)* pay.

kíkíinə *n.* type of evil spirit.

kilákilónə *n.* (*action n.*) tickle.

kilá *n.* forked pole.

kirəf *id.* See kirəfə.

kirəfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kírəfónə)* clean calabash by scraping out with finger.
See saku.

kírákíndzə'wá -ə *n.* chimpanzee (?) (no longer seen in the Gude area).

kírát *v. id.* scraping.

kírákírá *v. id.* walking hand in hand with someone. See kəree.

kíráwúwá *adj. id.* walking in a line.

kíríkírìwà -ə *n.* type of small bird (brown and white, thin, runs fast).

kookura *n.* "white" metal (= gwararəwa, tibisa).

kóosh-kóosh *interjection* used to call small dog. See aash-aash.

kuba *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùbánə)* make sauce from dried fish and leaves. See kələbə.

kùbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kúbánə)* (= cakubə) wash. See bəzə, tsəghə, yibə, yaamə, yinwa.

kùbá *n.* manure. See ənvwiinə.

kùcá' *adj. id.* of small amount (of non-liquid in a container).

kucəf *id.* See kucəfə.

kucəfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùcáfónə)* (= kucifə) 1. scratch ground in order to find something. See əcəfə, kucalə. 2. shake dirt from roots.

kúcáf *v. id.* (= kutsəf, kucif).

kucal *id.* See kucalə.

kucalə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùcálónə)* 1. Scratch ground in order to find something. (= kucəfə, əcəfə). 2. kick up dust like chicken scratching. See kutələ, gudələ, tul. 3. flop around (as animal caught in trap). 4. make rattling noise. See gangəzə.

kuc *id.* See kuci.

kuci *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùcìná)* pull out (hand full of hair or grass). See mbudə.

kucifə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùcífónə)* (= kucəfə).

kùcìkùcì -ə *adj. n.* drizzle.

kùcìkùcìḅ *adj. id.* having much fruit (of trees only).

kúdà *n.* sore on bottom of foot (from some disease?).

kùdáakwà -ə *n.* sweet potato.

kùdĩĩnə *n.* place where dancing regularly occurs.

kudə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùd'əná or kùd'əná)* place completely into one's mouth.
See dwa'a, aryas.

kúďákúď *adj.* soft.

kùďəkùďəmá *n. (comp. from kudəkudə + ma)* type of fish (small, black, edible).

kùďəpəshínə *n. (action n.)* belch.

kúďám *v. id. (= dwa')*

kúďáná -ə *n.* type of tree (with edible fruit, grows in or near water).

kudap *id.* See kudapə.

kudapə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùďəpənə)* come to a boil (of water only). See əbu.

kuh *id.* See kuhə.

kuhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùhəná)* 1. rub, brush clean, erase. See kwafəə, takəďə. 2. press, iron (clothes). 3. grate (vegetables).

kùjíná *n.* ebony tree (has edible fruit).

kúkùďá -ə *n.* sand fly.

kukuf *id.* See kukufə.

kukufə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùkúfənə)* remove paper-like skin from groundnuts by rubbing. See lhəpə.

kukulə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùkələnə)* rinse out mouth. See cakulə.

kùkúrùtə *n.* swelling behind ear.

kukut *id.* See kukutə.

kukutə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùkútənə)* sprinkle powder or dust.

kúkù'únə *n.* baobab tree. See twatwa'alínə.

kùləkà -ə *n.* type of insect (makes a cocoon).

- kula *v.i.* (*vn.* kùlàná) fall. kwaala (*iter. form*) 'make rustling noise.' kə kuli usəra. 'the sun set.' See uula, yaɗə.
- kúlà *n.* pipe.
- kulak *id.* See kulakə.
- kulakə *v.i.* (*vn.* kùlàkənə) cackle in alarm (of chicken). See kakara.
- kùlàǵá -ə *n.* child who cannot keep his hands to himself.
- kúmənə *n.* feast, banquet.
- kúnəǵá -ə *n.* immature squash.
- kúnənə *n.* (= kúná -ə) pullet, young hen.
- kúnà *gr. form.* final particle used in a question which expects a negative response. ka dzənə nə hə kuna? 'you are not going, are you?'
- kúnát *v. id.* (= kunyat, kwat) coming off of skin.
- kúngúrəǵ *adj. id.* completely gone (of a container), used up.
- kúngùrənyínə *n.* 1. egg shell. 2. skull.
- kúnwá -ə *n.* (*pl.* kwíiminə) 1. calabash. a kunwa rənwu 'eating from the same dish.' See cacirəfa, kəkəra, kəra, kwalaka. 2. face ? (*upper dialect*).
- kúnwáciinə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) forehead.
- kúnwánə *n.* front. a kunwa 'forward.'
- kúnyát *v. id.* (= kunat).
- kùpá *n.* tallow, animal fat. See maava.
- kúrákínə *n.* blacksmith's bellows.
- kúrákìnə *n.* chicken house.
- kúrákútà *n.* dove. See harəbənə.
- kúrámbánə *n.* fig tree, *H. durumi*.
- kúránáahyà -ə *n.* type of tree with large edible fruit.
- kúráná' *v. id.* burning up completely.
- kúráǵ *adj.* 1. deep (of hole or river). 2. difficult (of language).
- kurəp *id.* See kurəpə.
- kurəpə *v.i.* (*vn.* kúrápənə) ferment.

kúrápà *n.* leather whip. See uu'yanə.

kúrás *gr. form.* necessarily, it is necessary that. See weewee.

kùrətəpà *n.* short trousers.

kúrāvənə *n.* mold, mildew.

kùrəyákùrəyát *v. id.* hoeing up completely.

kúrá -ə *n.* threshing floor.

kura *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùráná)* [< F.] perform Muslim prayer, divine the future.

kúrá *irr. adj.* new, young, strange.

kúrá' *adj. id.* 1. gone deep into something. 2. kura' də... 'as far as...'

kúrábíinə *n.* large dark cloud. See malənwa, kuryapitya, gyaadaya, dihapənə, məzəfəkwataminə, mangiravəna.

kùrāká -ə *n.* funeral wailing. See vurənə.

kúráts *v. id.* scratching.

kùrìhá -ə *n.* humped back. kuriha nga ənda 'hump-backed person.'

kùrìníciinə *n.* (*comp. from* kurini + ciinə) the little finger.

kùrìnyá -ə *n.* (*reg. poss.*) youngest child.

kúríŋ *v. id.* 1. going (passing) between huts. 2. See kuriŋə.

kuriŋə *v.i. (vn. kùríŋənə)* fall off (of hoe head or axe head).

kùryáb *adj. id.* completely cooked (by boiling in water).

kùryápìtyá *n.* dry haze of the harmattan. See manaha.

kùshàkínə *n.* (*upper dialect, = kushaginə*) trash on ground consisting of straw or loose dry grass. See giginə.

kusharə *v.i. (vn. kùshárənə)* (= kushirə).

kushirə *v.i. (vn. kùshírənə)* (= kusharə) become unwoven and fall apart (of mat or roof).

kut *id.* See kutə.

kutə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùtəná)* 1. fade (of color in cloth). 2. fall out (of hair). 3. become poor. 4. become infertile (of over-farmed soil).

kùtəká -ə *n.* farm land abandoned because of worn out soil.

kutələ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùtəlónə)* (= gudələ).

kútərə -ə *n.* puppy, baby dog.

kùtərəkà -ə *n.* (= gandza).

kutsa *v.i. (vn. kùtsánə)* become whitish (of skin in need of oil or of bark on dead tree). See hwafə.

kùtsáf *v. id.* (= kutsəf, putsəf, fətsaku) falling softly (such as into grass).

kùtsáf *adj.* 1. weak (of a person). 2. uninhabited (of a compound). See kutsakə.

kutsafə *v.i. (vn. kùtsáfónə)* become weak. See *adj.*

kùtsáfəfəwáandù *n. (comp. from kutsafəfə (?) + waandu)* type of grass with color like the red monkey.

kuurə'i *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kúurá'ínə)* praise. kwiirə'i (*iter. form*). See haŋə.

kúurá *n.* type of grass (used for mats).

kùwá six.

kuwapu'unə sixty.

kùvəngìlá *n. (comp. from kuvə + ngila)* sheath for knife.

kùvə'únə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* skin. ashi kuvə'unki 'on my skin.'

kùvá -ə *n.* hut, room. a kuvə (= a kuvi) 'in the hut.'

kùvúkwárà *n.* type of colorful mat.

kúyà *n.* term used in the game cika.

kùyákùyár *adj. id.* roasted well.

kúyíḃ *adj. id.* 1. having much fruit (of tree). 2. limp and broken (of arm).

kùzəká -ə *n. (pl. kuzhikinə)* medicine. See nguma.

kùzəná -ə *n.* grass (general term).

kuzhid' *id.* See kuzhidə.

kuzhidə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kùzhídfónə)* scatter apart. See gudələ, yidə.

kwà *gr. form.* final particle marking question.

kwáa *v. id.* trilling of the voice (i.e., vurənə).

kwáah *v. id.* (= kwagh).

- kwaala *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwàalánə)* See kula.
 kwaarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwáarə́nə)* sweep or rake clear (not with broom). See lhəba, taasə.
 kwaas *id.* See kwaasə.
 kwaasə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwáasə́nə)* bunch together (leaves or grass).
 kwáɓ̀à *n. (lower dialect)* money. See ceeda.
 kwáçá *n.* dwarf, runt (person or animal).
 kwáçíháh *adj. id.* asleep.
 kwáçíráh *v. id.* pulling animal out of hut.
 kwádàlèɓwá *n.* type of fish (smooth, white).
 kwádyàkwádyà *n.* type of gruel made from groundnuts, tamarind, and flour.
 kwàdzá *n.* 1. quiver. 2. collective term for bow, arrows, and quiver.
 kwadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwádə́nə)* 1. miscarry, give birth prematurely.
 2. pick unripe fruit.
 kwádə́ándə́rə́ŋə́nə *n.* section of guinea-corn stalk between nodes.
 kwádə́nǰá *n.* type of plant (grows in water).
 kwafər *id.* See kwafərə.
 kwafərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwáfərə́nə)* brush clean, erase, rub off. See kuhə.
 kwáfá *n.* type of pot (three feet high, often half buried in ground). See uuda.
 kwágh *v. id.* (= kwagha, kwaah) 1. tearing cloth. 2. splitting wood.
 kwàjə́ɓánə *n.* land which becomes a marsh in the rainy season.
 kwàjǰgwədə́ -ə *n. (comp. from kwa + jǰgwədə)* nickname for person with jǰgwədə.
 kwàkwát *adv.* soon (future, not today), not long ago (past, not today).
 kwakulhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwàkúlhənə)* search for something lost. See alə.
 kwàkùrǎ *n.* metal ornament worn on man's leather trousers (bukəra).
 kwakwa *v.i. (vn. kwákwánə)* drink beer together from the same calabash (done by two people to show friendship).
 kwàkwàlínə *n. (= bukəra).*

kwakwaŋ *id.* See kwakwaŋə.

kwakwaŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwàkwáŋə)* move burning object through the air quickly to make it burn brighter.

kwàkwàrá *n.* rainbow lizard. See gyagyala, dampwapwaza, canciranə, ryantsa.

kwala'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwàlá'ánə)* stack (things) up. See jigələ.

kwàlà'á *n.* name of the day when a bride's belongings are moved to her husband's compound.

kwáláká -ə *n.* small calabash. See kunwa.

kwalh *id.* See kwalhə.

kwalhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwálhənə)* knock loose, knock off.

kwálhípinə *n. (comp.?)* groundnut shell, bean pod, yam skin, cassava skin. See lhəpə.

kwálhípìtəginə *n. (comp. from kwalhipi + tə + ginə) (inher. poss., body part)* eyelid.

kwálhíryát *adj. id.* plastered well (of wall).

kwálinyà -ə *n. (comp. from kwa + linya)* nickname for person with buck teeth. See araba.

kwámðombá -ə *n.* type of snake (white with black spots, small head, harmless).

kwáncà *n.* locally woven cotton cloth.

kwángáryàminə *n. (inher. poss.?, body part)* jaw.

kwángúlyáŋ *adj.* 1. emaciated. See janwa'. 2. dry (of skin).

kwangwarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. kwàngwárənə)* hoe ground in search of something (potatoes, groundnuts, etc.). See buďə, ngwarahə, uuza.

kwápàtá -ə *n.* mat awning for shade. See zərazəra, ədzawa.

kwárécáh *v. id.* pulling heavy object with effort. See kwacirah.

kwàràkwàrá -ə *n.* home-spun cotton thread.

kwárá *n.* donkey.

kwàryátà *n.* type of hawk.

kwasə *v.i. (vn. kwásənə)* hurry, do quickly, go quickly. See tsəgwee.

kwàtàmá -ə *n.* (*pl.* kwatyaminə) chief's daughter. See ənshara.

kwats *id.* See kwatsə.

kwatsə *v.i.* (*vn.* kwatsənə) 1. scratch lightly (of mouse). 2. run at moderate pace.

kwàtsátsà *v. id.* (= ɓaləɓaləɓala) running fast.

kwàyà'á *n.* type of tree (wood used in furniture).

kwázhimbə́ǎ́ -ə *n.* (= kwazhimbə́ǎ́). (*comp. from* kwa (?) + zhimbə́ǎ́) nickname for a person with an umbilical hernia. See kwalinya, kwajigwada.

kwyát *v. id.* shaving or scraping clean.

kyáká -ə *n.* roof frame.

kyályáííinə *n.* loud trill made by women to express joy, surprise, or alarm.

kyáǵákyáǵ *adj. id.* dried very hard.

kyás *v. id.* striking a match.

kyàzázà *v. id.* (= hizəz).

ləbámá -ə *n.* pit trap (hole covered with branches).

ləbátá *n.* light rain, drizzle (= makucikuca, mashashafa).

ləbásh *adj.* having a broken (deformed ?) back.

ləbə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ləbənə) 1. join together (= laɓə). See daɓə, gənwu, ndzaǵə. 2. ləbə də na 'meet.' 3. ləbə duura 'be relatives.' 4. dip out thick substance (such as vaseline).

ləǎǎ *v.i.* (*vn.* ləǎǎ́) jump, fly. kə lə'ya usəra. 'the sun rose.' lə'yavə 'barge in uninvited, stick nose in someone else's business.'

ləǎǎ *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ləǎǎ́) kick, stomp. See tsəkwa, mba'a, təkutsə.

ləǵǎǎ *id.* See ləǵǎǎ.

ləǵǎǎ *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ləǵǎǎ́) grind (moist things). See ədə.

ləǵa *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ləǵánə) plant. See wa'a, gürə, njinjiku, nguɓə.

ləǵíǎ́ -ə *n.* moon, month.

ləǵwa *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ləǵwánə) ask, ask a question. kə ləǵwii ci ama Musa. 'he asked Musa.'

ləǵwánə *n.* question. See ləǵwa. əndələǵwanə 'sorcerer.'

láhá -ə *n.* hippopotamus.

lækut *id.* See lækutə.

lækutə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lækútánə)* 1. cover something to shelter it.
2. spread cloth out to dry. See utərə.

lèlèhwá -ə *n.* type of insect (spoils dried fish).

lèlənwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lèlənwúnə)* 1. hollow out large hole with small opening.

lèmə́ -ə *n. (inher. poss.)* name.

lèmbúk *adj. id. (= mbuza')* with sauce on face (from eating).

lèmbwáďákànshàgínə *n. (comp. from lèmbwáďə + kànshaginə)* type of shrub, *H. tumfafiya*.

lèmbwáďá -ə *n.* type of large drum (*H. tambari*).

lèmínə *n. (= liminə).*

lèmpáwà -ə *n. (comp. from ləmə + páwə)* first name given to child. See páwə.

lèngùrá -ə *n.* hole in tree. See langurə.

lèpú *adj. id.* full of liquid (of small-mouthed container only).

lèrə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lèrəná)* cool hot liquid by adding cool. See əpi, tsəvu.

lèrəb̄ *id.* See lèrəbə.

lèrəbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lèrəbənə)* (= lyali) smooth mud or clay surface, plaster.
See lhaaďə, səmbəďə, shashinə.

lèrəgá -ə *n.* type of tree (used to make mortars, etc.).

lèrəgá -ə *n.* unripe guinea-corn which is eaten raw.

lèrəhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lèrəhənə)* snore, purr.

lèrək̄ *adj. id.* covered in a calabash.

lèrət̄ *id.* See lèrətə.

lèrətə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lèrətənə)* 1. move or place something aside.
2. change sitting position.

lèrík̄ *adj. id.* long (of gown).

- lævə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ləvəná)* 1. strain (*tr.*). 2. leak through (*intr.*).
3. bleed. See dzədzəərə, i(və), ətsə'u, pulə, tuu.
- ləwá -ə *n.* meat, wild animal. See takwara luubilina.
- la *v.i. and v.t. (vn. láná)* 1. cut. See hərəsə, huďəkə, katsə, mujidə, mwatsə, pwatə, taahə, tatarə, tsa'u. 2. meet by appointment. See gunwu.
- là *n.* cow. See bubuŋa.
- laaba *v.i. and v.t. (vn. láabánə)* [*< F.*] become clean and white, be pure, be holy.
- lálà *n.* type of children's singing game.
- laamə *v.i. (vn. làaməná)* 1. argue or boast that you are best or that yours is best. *kə lyaami ci də daraakii. 'he boasted about his hat.'* See haŋə, laama.
2. make humming sound.
- làamá -ə *n.* boasting, bragging (= jikwa).
- laaŋa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. láaŋánə)* surround and drive (animals). See kərə'u, taarətə.
- làará -ə *n.* hail, ice.
- làbàďá *n.* 1. talking, chatting, conversing. 2. health (used in ooshi labadaaki 'I'm not well').
- labatə *v.i. (vn. làbátəná)* be knock-kneed. See malabata.
- láb *adj.* joined together. See verb.
- labə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lábəná)* join together. See ləbə.
- láfáarà *n.* name of the day when the chief kills a cow for the festival of 'wanə.
- lāhwá *n.* small stream. See gəra.
- lák *adj.* laying stretched out. See lakə.
- lakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. làkəná)* 1. lay down something long and narrow (such as a pole). 2. lay self down and stretch out. 3. chase away, drive away with force. See səba.
- làləvá -ə *n.* witch weed.
- láj *adj. id.* much, many. *laləŋ 'very much, very many.'*
- lájáláj *adj. id.* loud.
- langurə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. làngúráná)* make hole. (Perhaps a denominal verb. See ləngura.)

làwárá -ə *n.* (= lyawara) (*pl.* lyawarinə) adult man (20–40 yrs. old). See badawa.

lawaraanə *n.* (*abst. n.* < lawara). adulthood.

làwúyá *n.* falsely accusing someone of a crime. kə lii ci lawuya 'he accused (someone) falsely.'

lhəbə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* lhəbəná) 1. beat with force. See dægə. 2. pass out of sight. 3. place hand in hole or in water. 4. yell out. lhəbə vurənə = ka vurənə. See ka.

lhəba *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* lhəbánə) sweep. See taasə, kwaanə.

lhəbwá -ə *n.* type of cactus. See mbəra.

lhəfwa *v.i.* (*vn.* lhəfwánə) shed skin (of snake or lizard).

lhəkərə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* lhəkərnə) cook until well-done (of meat only). See usə.

lhəkee *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* lhəkeenə) send. (stem occurs only with -ee ext.) See ka.

lhəku *id.* See lhəku.

lhəku *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* lhəkùná) (= lhəku) 1. pull down (tree branch or guinea-corn head). 2. pull up by the roots. See mbudə.

lhəkúrá -ə *n.* type of fish (with white head and reddish tail).

lhəkwà -ə *n.* leaf of the guinea-corn plant.

lhəmà -ə *n.* fetish shrine.

lhənə *v.i.* (*vn.* lhənəná or lhəná) work.

lhəná -ə *n.* work. See lhənə.

lhəpə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* lhəpənə) remove shell (from groundnuts, beans, etc.). See kukufə.

lhə̀rə̀bwá̀bwà̀k *adj.* stringy (of thick liquid such as egg white).

lhə̀rə̀b̄ *id.* See lhə̀rə̀b̄ə.

lhə̀rə̀b̄ə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* lhə̀rə̀b̄ənə) strip leaves off of stalk.

lhə̀rə̀ḡínə *n.* root(s).

lhə̀ra *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* lhə̀ránə) (= dədə) grow tall and straight (of trees only). malhə̀rakii 'tall and straight.'

lhə̀rá̀rà̀ì *adj.* slick and slippery. See lhə̀rà'ì.

- lhəra'i *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lhərá'ínə)* 1. be slick and slippery. 2. slip on a slick spot. See pəritə, shoota.
- lhəwa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lhəwanə)* 1. melt (of fat or rubber, not ice. For ice, see rəbə.). 2. perspire.
- lhə'wa *v.i. (vn. lhə'wàná)* refuse to share with others, be selfish with possessions (especially food). See malhə'wa.
- lhaadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lháad'ónə)* 1. smooth surface (of pot). See lərabə, səmbədə. 2. comb or smooth hair.
- lháalhà *n.* cattle egret.
- lháalhá *n.* (= lhalha) prickly fuzz (on certain plants).
- lhaamə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lháamónə)* harvest guinea-corn by hand (done when plant dries up before reaching maturity). See yadə.
- lhà'áfəlyà'əfú *v. id.* (= filhifilhi) rising and falling of chest when breathing.
- lháb *adj. id.* being close against something larger (such as a lizard on a wall).
- lhàd'á -ə *n.* fishing net.
- lháfá *n.* type of grass (not strong, not used for mats or thatch).
- lháh *adj.* (= lhyah) 1. slim, long and thin. 2. small (of a portion of food).
- lhákàrà *n.* stump of guinea-corn left after harvest.
- lhaku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lhàkùná)* (= lhəku).
- lhákwá *n.* sickle (*lower dialect*, = rəgənwə).
- lhálhá *n.* (= lhaalha).
- lhámá *n.* feast, banquet.
- lhàndá *n.* (*pl.* lhanji) (*comp. from* lha (?) + əndə) master, owner. (archaic stem used only in lhandaya 'master of the house', lhandamə 'our master, LORD.')
- lhàndáyà -ə *n.* (*pl.* lhanjiinyinə) (*comp. from* lha + əndə + yi) master, owner of the house. See lhandə.
- lhápárá *n.* backside of mat (ədza) which is leaning up against something.
- lhárəwá *n.* one accomplished in a skill.
- lhìbwád' *adj.* small (of a head only).
- lhìd'ə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lhìd'əná)* pierce skin (of a sliver). See dzəbə.

- lhìd'yákú *adj.* having a pointed head.
- lhìfyá *n.* deleb palm tree.
- lhìkáránə *n.* seed. (irr. affixing: lhikəriita 'that seed.')
- lhìká *n.* woven beehive.
- lhyàdímə *n.* title of one of the traditional village elders.
- lhyáfálhyáf *adj.* (= kafəkaf). thin.
- lhyánwá' *adj. id.* emaciated.
- lhyár *adj. id.* long and thin (such as a rope).
- líbìryá *n.* needle.
- lìminə *n.* (= ləminə) (*inher. poss., body part*) ear.
- línyíkárəmá -ə *n.* (*comp. from lənyi + kərəma, 'crocodile tooth'*) type of plant (orange flower is used in sauce).
- lìnyínə *n.* (= lənyinə) (*inher. poss., body part*) tooth, teeth.
- lip *id.* See lipə.
- lipə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lipəná)* (= lipi) submerge in water (not of humans). See yipə, ciləpə.
- lípyá *n.* pocket.
- lìvyàrá -ə *n.* lion.
- lóohəyá *n.* (= gwava).
- loota *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lóotánə)* [< F.] wash laundry. See kuḃa.
- lús *v. id.* (= vus) sound of arrow hitting target.
- luu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lùuná)* receive, get, obtain. kə liwu ci kwaḃa acii Musa. 'he received money from Musa.' liwa 'take back, receive (motion to speaker ext.)' luuvə 'agree, consent, believe, accept.' luupaa 'save, rescue.' luuma 'take by force, steal.' luuwushi 'haggle, contend, tug of war.' See upaa.
- lùubilínə *n.* (*comp. from ləwə + bilínə, lit. meat of the bush*) any (edible) wild animal.
- lyàarínə *n.* husk (shell) around guinea-corn seed.

lyabyatə *v.i. (vn. lyàbyátónə)* be unable to walk because of slow development (of small child only). See malyabyata.

lyali *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lyàlíná)* (= lərabə).

lyályánə *n.* guinea-corn whose head does not mature.

lyàtárályàtér *adj. id.* misbehaved, ill-mannered.

lyatarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. lyàtárónə)* 1. be restless and impatient (like a wandering chicken), squirm and wiggle (of child). 2. behave uncivilly, shamelessly, or immodestly.

lyàwúđ *v. id.* (= lyawur) passing by too quickly to be recognized.

məəđə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. məəđónə)* (stem occurs only with iter. form) say or tell much. (= baaba).

mábərəkànshàgínə *n. (comp. from məbəre + kànshaginə)* type of large lizard (lives in mountains, not monitor).

mábərá -ə *n.* termite (generic term). See alha, cirəŋa, dadafa, dzangərəla, gwajafa.

mábù'únə *n. (action n.)* picking up the wrong thing accidentally.

mábərádzəhwá -ə *n.* type of large lizard.

məci *id.* See verb.

məci *v.i. and v.t. (vn. məcíná)* fling off, fling away. See ka.

məcìkúcìkùđá *n. (= məcakucakuđa)* type of tree (soft wood, bark used to make rope).

mədəbwáká -ə *n.* snail (used of the living creature, but not of its empty shell). See taruletə.

mədədəránə *n. (= mədəradəranə)* smell, odor.

mədədəvənə *n.* type of swelling on buttocks (from parasite?).

mədədágúnə *n.* glowing coals. (= iləgunə). See dəda.

mədəmpíkù -ə *n.* hedgehog (= camənagyə).

mədərá -ə *n. (pl. midirinə, migirinə)* 1. lame person, cripple. 2. left-handed person. See matambaŋa.

Mədə *n.* common personal name (for man or woman).

mədədəđánə *n.* type of tree (with softwood, used to make shiwa).

- mádàṅàdàṅá -ə *n.* type of tree.
- mádzà -ə *n.* ditch (usu. larger than kəəra). See kəəra.
- màd'əfə seven.
- mədəfəpu'unə seventy.
- məd'ák *v. id.* cutting something soft.
- məd'əkə *v.i. (vn. məd'ákáṅə)* (= mid'iku) disappear by going into something (such as foot into mud or nail into wood).
- məd'á -ə *n.* air, wind.
- məd'áadəwá -ə *n.* type of ant (dark brown, lives near water).
- məd'ádá -ə *n.* (= d'ádá -ə) toxic chemical in fruit of locustbean tree which is removed by washing and drying.
- məd'əṅəḍ'əṅá -ə *n. (action n.)* somersault.
- məd'òotá -ə *n.* gall bladder.
- məf'ər'ər'ərá -ə *n.* type of grass with "good smell".
- məg'ənwúṅə *n.* 1. confluence of rivers. 2. any place where two things join.
See gənwuna.
- məg'ər'əg'ədá *n.* powder from seed of locustbean tree (sweet, used in making gruel).
- məg'ər'éeṅ'əhá *n.* type of ant (common, black). See kanshagya.
- məg'əv'əṅ'əṅə *n.* type of grass (used for thatch).
- məg'əvíṅə *n.* end of rainy season. də məgəvi 'at the end of the rainy season.'
- məg'əṅ'əṅ'əṅá -ə *n.* (= ganganga).
- məgh'ər'əv'əṅə *n.* glory, majesty, the fear inspiring quality of a chief or a leopard. See ghərəvəna.
- məg'ìmb'əd'á -ə *n.* type of insect (larva live in holes in the ground, can cause severe sores, F. kanye).
- məg'ùmbwá *n.* widow (= maroofa).
- məg'úntá -ə *n.* person with good sense of humor.
- məg'úr'əg'údá *n.* type of insect (small, flies, nests in ground, makes honey, does not sting). See məhəpəṅə, mətsərənwə.

- mə̀gwà'ákə *n.* [*< Nzanyi*] (*upper dialect*, = ghaaka) crow.
- mə̀gyàlā̀bwá *n.* groundnut which is boiled in the shell and dried before eating.
- mə̀gyálanə *n.* rotting blight which spoils agusi melons.
- mə̀hwá -ə *n.* bamboo.
- mə̀hwíinə *n.* placenta (= zhighwa).
- mə̀jīnə *n.* 1. rafter, cross beam. 2. streak on wall left by rain leak. See əjina.
- mə̀kád'ə̀ngánə *adj. n.* lying on back.
- makə *prep.* like, as.
- makə (= ma + kə).
- mə̀kə́d'á *n.* type of rat (meat eaten).
- mə̀kə̀bərə́ -ə *n.* sprouts which grow from base of guinea-corn after harvest.
- mə̀kə̀já -ə *n.* (*reg. poss., reg. pl., kin. term*) youngest child. See kaja.
- mə̀kə̀bəkə̀bá -ə *n.* type of bush.
- mə̀kə̀y'áyimá -ə *n.* type of insect (bores holes in tree branches).
- mə̀kwágù'yá -ə *n.* stranger, newcomer.
- mə̀lákùtá -ə *n.* woven roof for granary. See ləkutənə.
- mə̀lənə *n.* magic or charm said to prevent victim from chasing thief.
- mə̀lənwá -ə *n.* (= mə̀ləngwa) type of tree (used to make mortars).
- mə̀lə̀wùlə̀wá -ə *n.* type of tree (soft wood).
- mə̀lhə̀pənə *n.* 1. type of insect (small, fly, makes honey, does not sting).
2. honey of same. See mə̀gureguda, mə̀tsərənwa.
- mə̀lhə̀rəkə̀bá -ə *n.* (= mə̀lhə̀rəkə̀bənə) type of vine-like weed which grows in corn fields.
- mə̀lyàlyá -ə *n.* stone or piece of wood used to smooth plaster. See lyali.
- mə̀mbə́d'ə̀fənə *n.* soft spot on baby's head, anterior fontanel.
- mənə *n.* (*pl. mə̀sənyinə*) (*irr. poss., kin. term*) mother, parent's female sibling or cousin.
- məná' *adj. id.* (= kuryaḅ) cooked (by boiling).
- mə̀ndə́d'á *n.* thin layer of dirt hiding the mouth of an animal's hole.

- mándáhá -ə *n.* type of leaf used in sauce.
- mándəndəné *n.* bad luck. tə'i məndəndəné ashi Musa 'Musa is unlucky.'
- məndəndəzəné *n.* type of insect (stings, classed as kantəhuda).
- məndzəŋá -ə *n.* (*pl.* mənjaninə) person of the Nzanyi tribe.
- məngánə *n.* 1. rainbow. 2. poison (in food only). See dafa. ɗa mənganə 'put poison in food.'
- məngúrərəmə -ə *n.* egg which will not hatch.
- məngwá *n.* type of sickness (tonsillitis?).
- məntəŋ *n.* name given to eleventh child (pu'u aməntəŋ 'eleven').
- mərədzəné *n.* dark black hair.
- mərəgud *id.* See mərəgudə.
- mərəgudə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* mərəgudəné) wiggle, squirm (of worm or bug).
- mərəməərə *adj. id.* (= mərəməbəərə) being the same.
- mərəməá -ə *n.* type of tree.
- mərəs'usá -ə *n.* (= mərəusa, myərə'usa) type of bush or tree with edible fruit.
- mərəd'á *n.* type of sauce made from bean leaves.
- məsəbərəá -ə *n.* type of grass (burned to smoke out insects).
- məsəkúďəné *n.* funeral feast held on the third day after a death.
- məsəafá *n.* type of tree.
- məsərəá *n.* necklace.
- məsərəginyinə *n.* (= məsaratəginyinə) (*comp. from* məsara + əginyinə) type of bush with edible berries.
- məshəbəshəbīné *n.* charm or magic said to make a thief invisible.
- məshiwəshiwáne *n.* type of tree (soft wood).
- məsiisəyá -ə *n.* finch.
- məspələ *n.* amulet, charm (usu. in leather pouch worn around the neck).
(phonologically irr.)
- mətəďátsəká *n.* jackal (?). See gwəhyanə, pərətsoova.
- mətəmbwáne *n.* type of tree with edible green fruit.

- mátánlhá -ə *n.* 1. needle-like metal instrument used to remove thorns and splinters. 2. type of grass with sharp seeds that stick to clothing.
- mátíkátíkənə *n.* crossroads, fork in trail. See təkənə.
- mátìngúmə *n.* type of ant. See tingumə (id. for walking of old woman).
- mátípínə *n.* type of sickness (causes foggy vision).
- mətòoyá *n.* witch, evil sorcerer.
- mátsəmə *n.* rock used to beat grinding stone to make it rough. See tsəmanə.
- mátsərənwá -ə *n.* type of insect (flies, makes honey, nests in holes in trees, larger than məlhəpənə, does not sting). See məgurəguda, məlhəpənə.
- mátsəvărənwá -ə *n.* type of grass (prickly).
- mátsə'wá -ə *n.* woven strainer (used principally in beer making). See ətsə'u, kagyabura.
- mátsəngərəmá -ə *n.* broken piece of pottery.
- mətsəpá -ə *n.* type of snake (black and yellow, poisonous, like məbənə).
- máyànə *n.* type of bush (bitter leaves used in sauce, H. shiwaka).
- máyìirá -ə *n.* gift of food brought to funeral.
- mázədfəgùnwá -ə *n.* type of thorn tree.
- mázəməká -ə *n.* (*pl.* məzhimakinə) hunter. See zəmakənə.
- mázà *adj. n.* worthless, unskilled, inept.
- mázà *n.* person lacking skill or abilities, useless foolish person.
- mázədfəkəwətəmínə *n.* (*comp. from* məzədfə + kwatamínə) low-hanging cloud over mountain. See kurafiinə.
- mázəngú'ínə *n.* (= məzanwu'ínə, məndzangu'ínə upper dialect) shade. See tsanfwa.
- mázhùuzhá *n.* type of sauce made from seed of banciina and traditionally prepared by mother of newborn to serve to guests.
- ma *gr. form.* 1. topic marker. See section 6.3. 2. conditional clause marker. See section 7.1.
- ma *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mánə)* cut grass with sickle, mow.
- má *n. (inher. poss., body part)* mouth, edge, rim. ma gəra 'river bank.'

- màabá -ə *n.* (*action n.*) lying in wait to ambush someone. *da maaba* 'ambush.'
See *tsəfə, dəkə*.
- máabwà -ə *n.* red monkey (archaic word). See *waandu*.
- màaghá *n.* poor person. See *aaghanə*.
- máamə *gr. form.* if not. *maamə Musa,...* 'if not Musa,....'
- màanə *gr. form.* (= *moonə*) how much, how many.
- máarə́máarə *adj. n.* oily. See *maara*.
- máará -ə *n.* oil.
- maa'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. máa'únə)* (= *moo*) want, desire, need. See *uufə*.
- màavá -ə *n.* fat in meat. See *kupa*.
- máa'wúnə *n.* coveting, desiring. See *suuna*.
- má'(à) *gr. form.* yet, still. *ma'a zəku'i* 'not yet.' *ma'a ci də Mubi* 'he is still at Mubi (town).'
- mà'ələ́mákìnə *n. (comp. from ma + alə + makinə)* man who seeks out prostitutes.
- mà'álhə́'álhá -ə *n.* pimple. See *aalhənə*.
- màbəzhínə *n. (action n.)* arguing, disputing. See *mbəzə*.
- màbá *n.* fool, idiot, deranged person. See *madəna, gəpa*.
- màbárəwá *n. (= barəwa)*.
- mábízhínə *n.* stone used for smoothing the surface of a pot.
- màbùbwá -ə *n.* mythical dwarf said to cook by the heat of the setting sun.
See *əbuna*.
- màbúrélə *n. (comp. from ma + vurə + la)* type of snake (short, black and red, poisonous).
- màbúréná -ə *n. (comp. from maburə + na)* headache.
- màbúrə́nfwá -ə *n. (comp. from ma + burə + ənfwa, 'tree-striker')* type of bird (brown and white, woodpecker?).
- màbùtəshíná -ə *n.* type of mud wasp (It is said that if one knocks its nest down, he will get a nose bleed).
- màbətəsə́ka -ə *n. (= mabəzətəsəka)* anger, distress, sorrow.

- maci *gr. form.* counterfactual clause marker. See section 7.1.
- mácíwá -ə *n.* castrated adult male goat. See tsəwu.
- mádábámá *n.* representative, proxy. See kaja.
- mádámésáká -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + dəmə + səka) thread running the length of cloth, warp. See ma'ikəbənə.
- màdàná -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + ədə + na, 'ground head') retarded person, harmless moran. See maba.
- màdàngàsiinə *n.* hard feces which is difficult to pass.
- mádànvwiinə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + da + ənvwiinə) anus.
- mádiigərinə *n.* (*pl. of* mađuuna).
- màdìŋəná -ə *n.* circular metal head ornament worn by women.
- màdùrəsá -ə *n.* mythical rock said to shine red in the dark.
- màdzəgá -ə *n.* (*pl. májìgínə*) (*reg. poss., kin. term*) younger sibling or cousin. See dzəgəna.
- màdzəgùná -ə *n.* learner. See dzəgunənə.
- màdzəná *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) left hand, left hand side. See ciizəmanə.
- mádzánjà -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + dza + ənja) crowd of people.
- màdzàrá *n.* (*pl. madzariinə*) person of Dzara (Muchella village).
- maďə *v.i. (vn. màďəná)* 1. get up, stand up. 2. start out. See kəŋə, vəďəhə.
- máďəfónə *n.* hunger. See ďafəna.
- máďánə *n.* (*pl. maďaďiinə*) fiancée, new bride.
- mađuunəkii *participle.* big, important, honored. See đuunə. (*pl. madiigərakii*)
- màďúunədàadə *n.* (*comp. from* mađuunə 'big' + daadə) (*kin. term*). parent's older male sibling or cousin.
- màďùuná -ə *n.* (*pl. madiigərinə*) important person. See đuunə.
- máfəəďəná -ə *n.* (*comp. from* mafəəďə + na, 'wrapped head') turban.
- máfəďə'wàtá *n.* (*kin. term*) (*comp. from* mafəďə + 'wata) wife of mother's brother or of mother's cousin (said to receive children if both parents die).
- máfəná'à *n.* person with no teeth. See fwarəŋə, gwəpya.

- máférá -ə *n.* news of a death, death announcement. ka mafəra 'go and announce someone's death.'
- màfàrèṅá -ə *n.* river in which fish are plentiful. See kəryaṅa.
- màfà'á *n.* type of grass (dried for hay).
- màfúrétá -ə *n.* chicken's anus.
- mágèdàzá -ə *n.* type of fish or eel (small, red).
- mágélá *n.* marksman, skilled Bowman. See gəlanə.
- mágəlínə *n.* type of thorn.
- màgérá *n.* shepherd, watchman. See gəranə.
- màgwàzhínə *n.* a heterogeneous mixture. (*dead pl.?*) See gwazəna.
- màgyàhà *n.* (*comp. from* ma + əgya + ha) time at the start of the dry season when the wind blows.
- máhérá -ə *n.* (*pl.* mahiirənə) thief. See hərə. (*pl.* has irr. affixing: mahiiriita 'those thieves')
- máhéráfíinə *n.* small amount of mush left in a cooking pot after serving.
- màhá'wá -ə *n.* person who likes to make people laugh. See ha'unə.
- màhwàmínə *n.* large meal consisting of many different kinds of foods.
- má'íkábənə *n.* (*comp. from* ma'i + kəbənə) thread running width of cloth, woof. See madəməsəka.
- má'ímá'í *adj. n.* watery. See ma'inə.
- mà'inə *n.* water. ma'igunə 'hot water.'
- màjǎ -ə *n.* instrument for making scars or scratches.
- màjǎlá -ə *n.* ground roasted bambara groundnuts. See ənyasaṅa, jala.
- màjimá *n.* decorative scars on face or body.
- majiraka -ə *n.* (*pl.* majirakinə) liar.
- mákə three.
- makəpu'unə thirty.
- màkàlá *n.* shield.
- màkàbá -ə *n.* ball of pressed tobacco. See kabə.

- mákákábə̀nə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + ka + kə̀bənə) type of insect ('black ant' with wings).
- màkiirə̀nə *n.* smoke. See kiirə̀nə 'become sooted.' See kiirə̀, dadanyinə, tankyara.
- màkùbá *n.* type of sauce made from fish and leaves.
- màkùcìkùcá -ə *n.* (= lə̀bata, mashashafa).
- mákùrə̀hə̀mə *n.* type of insect or bug (small, black, no wings, 'plays dead' when threatened). (= ndaabusə̀).
- mákùv́á -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ma 'mouth' + kuva) 1. door of hut.
2. ancestor.
- mákwə̀pyà'á *n.* type of insect (biting fly with narrow thorax).
- màlə̀gə̀d'á -ə *n.* ground roasted tigernuts. See lə̀gə̀dənə, mandə̀və̀'ya.
- màlə̀gwákii *n.* person skilled in medicine. See lə̀gwanə.
- màlələ́ *n.* constellation of any three stars in a line.
- málə̀mə -ə *n.* type of insect (size of louse, lives in sand, stings).
- málə̀málə *gr. form.* exactly (at place). də Nwuvi malə̀malə nə yaakii 'his house is at Lamurde exactly.'
- màlən'wá -ə *n.* mist, fog, steam, cloud. See kuraḃiina.
- màlə̀bàtá -ə *n.* knock-kneed person. See labatə.
- màlə̀bá *n.* storage rack for corn stalks which serves as an awning over the door of a woman's hut.
- màlə̀dzə̀ŋá -ə *n.* (*pl.* malajanyinə) circumcised man.
- màlə̀ngáyá *n.* (*action n.*) ridicule of a bed-wetting child with songs and dancing.
- màlə̀tsá *n.* spider.
- màlhə̀'wá *n.* person who is unwilling to share with others. See lhə̀'wana.
- màlhàhá -ə *n.* small serving of mush. See lhahə.
- màlhyàkàlyàkà'á *n.* chain, manacle.
- màlívítá -ə *n.* noose.
- málúumá'ínə *n.* (*comp. from* maluu + ma'ínə) container to catch rainwater from roof.
- màlyàḃyàtá -ə *n.* child who is slow in learning to walk. See lyəḃyatənə.

- màmá *n.* child's name for guinea-corn mush (dáfəna).
- mama' *id.* See mama'a.
- mama'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. màmà'ánə)* harden or pack ground by walking on it.
See ndəghə.
- màmbàará -ə *n.* part of task that remains to be done.
- mám̄bìd'ingá *n.* stone used in sling. See manlhaba.
- mámúùkánə *n.* type of tree.
- mànə'úmínə *n. (comp. from ma + nə'u + minə)* type of ant (small, black with light colored abdomen, said to travel in pairs.).
- mànəhá *n.* harmattan (dust-laden wind of the dry season). See kuryapitya.
- mándəvə'yá -ə *n.* tigernut, H. aga. See hwərəminə, maləgəḍa, ndzələndzələka.
- mándyàməndyàmínə *n.* used only in idiom: kapaa acii usəra mandyaməndyaminə 'put second rate thing aside until the day when first rate is finished.'
- mándzəmándzə *adj. n.* sandy. See mandzənə.
- mándzənə *n.* sand.
- màndzá -ə *n.* type of guinea-corn. See səkunwa.
- màngàrəkikínə *n.* person who has an unpleasant personality. See ngərəkiki.
- màngàlàngàlá *n.* large discharge of feces.
- màngìrāvəna *n.* dark storm cloud. See kurəbiinə.
- màngùḍá -ə *n.* (= nguḍa) circular pad for cushioning head loads.
- màngùrəmá -ə *n. (pl. manguriminə)* type of wasp.
- màngùràhá -ə *n.* fish hook.
- màngyðová *n.* (= moonyinga).
- mánjìvínə *n.* nasal mucus.
- mànłhàbá *n.* sling. See mambid'inga, lhəbə.
- mánłháḍá *n.* dew.
- mántəfáarə *n. (comp. from mantə 'dead' + faara)* soft or crumbly rock.
- màntələ *n.* type of tree.
- mántəntá -ə *n.* anything dead. See əntə.

- mànyàdǎ -ə *n.* (*pl.* manya'inə) lazy person. See anyadəna.
- mápá *n.* horn.
- mápúďǎnfwá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* mapudə + ənfwa) type of insect (eats trees).
- mápúďǎ *n.* (*pl.* mapu'inə) person of the Gude tribe. (This term is used almost exclusively by the older generation.) See guďe.
- màpù'únə *n.* cloth bandage for finger or toe.
- màrəbyá *n.* leftover cooked meat saved for future use.
- márámá -ə *n.* type of traditional large gown of homespun cloth worn by old men.
- márəmbwà *n.* senior wife.
- márəmbwàgəgəmə -ə *n.* (*comp. from* marəmbwa + gəgəma, 'wife of shelf') type of ant (small, yellow, large abdomen).
- màrəngísá -ə *n.* blacksmith's tongs.
- mara *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mǎránə)* [< F.] 1. have. 2. rule over. See nwanwuunə.
- màrðofá *n.* (*pl.* maroofinə) widow. (= mareefa, *upper dialect*) (= məgumbwa).
- másámbàlá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + sa + mbala) 1. drunkard. 2. type of grasshopper.
- màsàrá *n.* old man.
- máshəshəfá -ə *n.* (= ləbuta, makucikuca).
- màshíkúciinə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + shiku + ciinə) (= shikuciinə) index finger.
- màshiwàhá -ə *n.* type of arrow (has no barbs). See ava.
- má shí úushà d'ii *n.* (*comp. from* ma + shi + uusi + a + d'ii, 'thing that once happened') folktale, fable.
- màsóodǎfá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + sa + uudəfa) brave person.
- mátələgə'údəná *n.* (*comp. from* ma + tələ + gə'u + də + na) (= yaŋa).
- matərəďa -ə *n.* bracelet of twisted metal strip.
- mátəvwá -ə *n.* fist (= mavuta).
- mátáasá -ə *n.* steer, castrated bull. See bubuŋa.

- màtāfūlāká *n.* physically weak person.
- mátākàrà'á'ónvwì *n.* (*comp. from* ma + takəra'a + ənvwiinə) dung beetle.
- mātālhá -ə *n.* sauce made of boiled leaves. See talhəna.
- mātāmbàṅá -ə *n.* person with crooked or lame foot. See tambəṅəna, mədəra.
- mátánə *n.* (from ta 'ripen') person who has matured. kə tii nəkii 'he has matured.'
- mātātāhīnə *n.* (*action n.*) whispering.
- mátátíinə *n.* cracks in dry skin.
- mátsə *adv.* just a little while ago. kə njimə vənə matsə 'it rained a little while ago.'
- mátsəfəhá *n.* (*comp. from* matsəfə + ha) humid heat, perspiration. (dry heat is gunə.). matsəfətsəfəha 'very hot humid heat.'
- matuutəwa *n.* cry baby (= həhəba).
- mávà *n.* slave. See ənfwala.
- màvāarápítyá *n.* (*comp. from* ma + vaarə (?) + pitya) type of grass (color of rabbit fur, used for thatch).
- māváká -ə *n.* rope made of hidəwa.
- mávásəkwàkwára *n.* (*comp. from* ma + vasə + kwakwara) type of hawk (small, white).
- mávútá -ə *n.* (= matəvwa).
- māvwásà *n.* poor marksman, bad shot.
- mà'yánə *n.* 1. spirit, soul. 2. human shadow. 3. praying mantis. See dzabaṅa.
- mázəməyá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + zəmə ya) heir.
- mázəgwá (maybe) *n.* bastard.
- mázəngàrà *n.* type of guinea-corn with very tall stalk.
- māzhīnwá -ə *n.* person or animal of mixed parentage: mule, mulatto, child one of whose parents is a witch (mətooya).
- mbəəfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbəəfə́nə)* (= mbidə) weave strand of grass stalks for use in making mat. See mbəəfəna.
- mbəəfə́nə *n.* strand of grass stalks in woven mat.

mbáaráshíḏá *n.* (*comp. from mbæərə + shíḏa*) large intestine.

mbáará -ə *n.* (*lower dialect, = mbuura upper dialect*), (= mbiira *Wadili dialect*) bag, purse, bellows.

mbáḏ *adv.* yesterday.

mbæḏə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbəḏəná)* 1. get well. *kə mbə'i ci acii bəərəhənə.* 'he recovered from smallpox.' See əmbi, mbü. 2. stay alive. 3. mbæḏə (*iter. form*) 'pass large amount (of feces), produce much (of potatoes).' 4. mbæḏaanə 'remain, be left.' See ta'a. 5. mbæḏee 'cause to stay, cause to remain, leave behind.'

mbəh *adj.* flat.

mbəkəmbəkə -ə *n.* type of bird, saddle-bill, H. babba da jaka.

mbələḏəḏ *adj. id.* moist and sticky (like a lump of wet clay).

mbələmá -ə *n.* 1. place where soil is mostly clay. 2. name of village.

mbəlaḏə *v.i. (vn. mbələḏəná)* (*upper dialect, = bəlamə*).

mbəlāwá *n.* flute made from guinea-corn stalk.

mbəlhəḏ *id.* See mbəlhəbə.

mbəlhəḏə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbəlḥəḏəná)* squash flat (?). See vwa'a, ndwa'afə.

mbəmbəmə *adj. n.* tilled, hoed up (of soil).

mbərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbərəná)* walk fast. See wii, dəba.

mbərəḏ *id.* See mbərəḏə.

mbərəḏə *v.i. (vn. mbərəḏəná)* break loose, get away, escape. See daḏa, səmbəḏə.

mbərəmbərə *id.* (= mbərəmbərə) same.

mbərəné *n.* type of snake (long, black, poisonous, spitting cobra?).

mbərəzhinə *n.* (= mbərəzhuzənə *upper dialect*) infant.

mbərə́ *n.* euphorbia cactus (sap used to poison arrows). See lhəbwa.

mbəryalh *id.* See mbryalhə.

mbəryalhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbəryálḥəná)* (= mburalhə) squash soft object.

mbəsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbəsəná)* cook meat or fish (without water). See da, yangələ, usə.

mbáshírá'ú *adj. id.* (= mbəshī'u) dried up completely.

ganə See ga.

mbátá *n.* low marshy ground.

mbəzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbəzə́nə)* argue, dispute, quarrel. See mabəzhinə, pa, mbəza.

mbəzá -ə *n.* arguing, disputing. (= mbəzəna, mabəzhinə).

mba *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbánə)* 1. dispute forcefully for possession of something. 2. snatch away or take possession by force (= luuma). 3. exceed someone in strength.

mbáalə *n.* type of leather bag with shoulder strap.

mbaarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbáarənə)* swell from pregnancy (stomach only). See meegunə.

mbá' *v. id.* 1. kick, stomp. See lə́ḏa. 2. tying well.

mabəḃə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbáḃənə)* (= babə) beat someone up.

mbəḏá *n.* gift for reconciliation. (= tábá).

mbák *adj. id.* low.

mbakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbákənə)* patch (tire, clothing, wall, etc.).

mbàlá -ə *n.* [< F. (?)] beer. (= ənvwa) See sangara.

mbáshí'ú *v. id.* merely grazing something one tried to hit squarely.

mbá'wá *n.* type of tree.

mbáyà -ə *n.* [< F.] cassava.

mbee *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbéenə)* (stem occurs only with -ee ext.) 1. can, be able. See təkuree. 2. be accomplished or skilled at something.

mbidə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbíḏənə)* (*upper dialect*, = mbəḏə).

mbii *v.i. (vn. mbíinə)* 1. heal (of sore only, not of sickness). 2. be enough. See cilh, əmbii, mbəḏə.

mbíinə *n. (action n.)* behaving cruelly.

mbud' *id.* See mbudə.

mbudə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbúḏənə)* pull out, pluck out. See kuci, butə, dəḏə, gutschə, lhaku, əl, təḏa, toorə.

mbúdfàzá -ə *n.* type of grass (short, of no particular use).

mbùgàrónə *n.* cow's fetus.

mbuk *id.* See mbukə.

mbukə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbùkàná)* 1. build foundation. 2. mold base for pot. 3. add mud (by throwing) onto wall being built.

mbúláŋ *adj. id.* foul smelling.

mbúmbùǵá -ə *n.* genitals, pubic region.

mbùrədfá -ə *n.* (= mbudəfa) disease of guinea-corn (white powder on the heads).

mbùrəlhá -ə *n.* seed of locustbean tree. See rənə, ngərənə.

mbúrəmbúrə *n.* type of fish.

mburəz *id.* See mburəzə.

mburəzə *v.i. (vn. mbùrəzónə)* scowl, stare with wide eyes (as in anger).

mburalhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbùrálhónə)* (= mbəryalhə).

mbúukəné *n.* ornamental hatchet-like weapon carried in traditional dancing.

mbúulə *n.* bald head. əndə mbuula 'bald person.'

mbu'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbù'únə)* (= bu'u) 1. arrive. 2. eat two or more types of food together.

mbùzá' *adj. id.* (= ləmbuk) messy (from food or mud).

mbúzà -ə *n.* pumpkin.

mbúzhəmi'əhwá -ə *n. (comp. from mbuzheeminə + əhwa)* type of grass.

mbúzhèemínə *n.* (= buzheeminə) beard. See mbuzhami'əhwa.

mbwaarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbwàarəná)* remove or loose part of something.

mbwá' *v. id.* kicking hard.

mbwa'af *id.* dented. See mbwa'afə.

mbwa'afə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mbwà'áfónə)* 1. dent, become dented. See vwa'a, dəngwafə. 2. test fruit (or any soft thing?) by pressing with finger. See ndwa'afə.

mbwáfáfà' *adj. id. (upper dialect)* white (also da mbwafafa).

mbwáryákəminə *n.* (= bwaryakaminə) swollen lymph node.

- mbyàkà *n.* small bag woven of coarse fiber.
- méeciinà *n.* (*comp. from mee + ciinà*) slap. tsatə ka ci méeciinà 'give him a slap.'
- méegüiránà *n.* (*comp. from mee + güiránà*) thirst.
- méegúnà *n.* (*comp. from mee + gunà*) swelling of ankles during pregnancy. See mbaarə.
- méekábànà *n.* (*comp. from mee + kəbànà*) thread for weaving.
- méemá'ínà *n.* (*comp. from mee + ma'ínà*) itching on hand or foot (said to be caused by touching water).
- méemánjivínà *n.* (*comp. from mee + manjivínà*) head cold with runny nose. See bəlarə.
- mèetá -ə *n.* older child with responsibility of looking after younger child.
- mí *gr. form.* what (with non-inherently possessed nouns. See itə.) mi da? 'what is this?' mi kwa? 'what is the matter?' Note the following special forms without a subject marker: mina 'what is this?' mitsa 'what is that (close)?' mita 'what is that (far)?'
- míďánà *n.* python.
- mijǐdá *n.* festival held before harvest of early red guinea-corn (jika).
- milhi *id.* See verb.
- milhi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. milhínà)* 1. hide one thing next to or behind another. See umbə. 2. close eye. See dza'a, mirikə.
- mínà *n.* (*pl. makinà*) woman, wife.
- mínámíníinà *n.* children's game of playing house.
- mirik *id.* See mirikə.
- mirikə *v.i. (vn. miríkánà)* blink, wink. See dza'a, milhi.
- mírimíryá *n.* fishing line with hooks attached at intervals.
- míshípátə used only in mishipətə ənda 'suspicious looking stranger.'
- mízhàďàrínà *n.* type of cloth or garment made from tree bark in former times.
- mónákónà *n.* type of insect (small, ant-like, flies?, bites).

- moo *v.i. and v.t. (vn. móonə)* (*upper dialect*, = maa'u) mwayi (completive form).
- mòocìgá *n.* person of the Gude tribe (name used by Falis only).
- mòodəbá'á *n.* (*comp. from* ma + uudə + ba'a) last one in line, least in ability or in importance.
- móodiinë *n.* part of root crop that remains after harvest (may be gleaned).
- móodáfá -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) heart.
- móodásəka -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ma + uuda + səka, 'white stomach') happiness. ka moodasəka nə ci 'he is happy.' moodasəka nga minə 'a happy woman.'
- móojiĩinë *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) (*comp. from* ma + uuji + ciinë) finger.
- móojišəďá -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) (*comp. from* ma + uuji + səďa) toe.
- móombəné *n.* (*pl.* moombinə) bridesmaid (usu. there are two).
- mòombùgíne *n.* type of edible fungus. See alhə'alha.
- moomorii *v.i.* (= moomorya'i, mwaamwara'i).
- mòondzá -ə *n.* 1. edible wild root, H. lujiya. 2. protruding knob on back of hoe handle.
- móonyánə *n.* (= nwanyanə, wanyanə *upper dialect*) song. ka moonyanə 'sing.'
- mòonyìngá *n.* 1. papaya, pawpaw. 2. type of local tree with edible fruit (= mangyoova).
- móozəŋá *n.* bee, honey.
- mòozhìnyíne *n.* (*sing. and pl.*) type of insect (bites).
- mónəďá *n.* (= moovəďa) (*inher. poss., body part*) buttocks, bottom, anus, foundation, ancestors.
- mòvərá -ə *n.* leftover or cold mush (ďafəna).
- múbúne *n.* type of snake (viper).
- mùďámùďák *v. id.* eating soft food. See aadə.
- mùgúləgúla -ə *n.* type of plant.
- múhùrá -ə *n.* beni (sesame) seed.
- mujid *id.* See mujidə.

- mujidə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mùjíd áñə)* cut into very small pieces. See la.
 mùlhə'yá *v. id.* (possibly a noun?) smiling.
 munya *v.i. and v.t. (vn. múnyánə)* [*< F.*] be patient in suffering. See paka'a.
 múnyála -ə *n.* [*< F.*] patience, resignation.
 murəðə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mùrəð áñə)* 1. pinch between thumb and knuckle of index finger. See cidəkə. 2. pay debt in small payments.
 múrémùrá -ə *n. (pl. murəmurinə)* crumb of mush (ɗafəna) or bread.
 murats *id.* See muratsə.
 muratsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mùrətsánə)* 1. graze (of animal). 2. break off grass without pulling up roots.
 músə *adj.* (= musəsə) crowded together (of many small things, such as ants).
 muu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mùuná)* (*upper dialect*, = nwuna).
 múudənə *n.* (= moodənə) end, finish. See uudənə.
 múujùujínə *n.* bee larva (= uujinə).
 múunəné *n.* abdominal cavity, womb.
 múurəfá -ə *n.* blind person. See uurəfəna.
 múuvà -ə *n.* 1. swarm of bees. 2. epidemic, plague.
 mu'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mú'únə)* clench fist, close hand around something.
 mú'ùmá -ə *n. (pl. mu'uminə)* visitor, guest.
 mwaamwara'i *v.i. (vn. mwàamwàrà'ínə)* tantalize, tease by withholding something. (= moomorii, moomorya'i, and also moomoriigi with irregular imp. moomoriigyuu.)
 mwa'ak *id.* See mwa'akə.
 mwa'akə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mwà'ákánə)* 1. grip someone's body firmly. 2. squeeze (puss from sore).
 mwáh *v. id.* 1. cutting into something. 2. hitting.
 mwàŋ *adj. id.* large (of piece of meat only).
 mwásháshà *adj. id.* many (of sprouted seeds).
 mwats *id.* See mwatsə.

mwatsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. mwátsə́nə)* trim, cut off, slice off (hair, grass, strands of fiber). See *la*.

myáabyà -ə *n.* unripe groundnut.

mya'a *id.* 1. drinking completely. (= *shintəka'*) 2. See *mya'a*.

mya'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. myà'ánə)* twist, squeeze, ring out. See *tərədə*.

myáfà -ə *n.* syrup made from boiled *zəga* fruit.

myárə'ùsá -ə *n.* (= *mərə'usa, məruusa*).

myátəmyát *adj. id.* sharp (of an edge, not of a point).

nə *gr. form.* subject marker. See section 3.1.

nəhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nəhəná)* (*upper dialect*, = *nəngə*).

nəngə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nəngəná)* (= *nəhə*) watch, look after, take care of, stand guard over. See *tsaamə, gərə. nəngəpaa* 'greet.' *ma nyingi nyi,...*
'*I think that..., it's my opinion that...*'

nə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nə'únə)* (= *nuu*) follow. *nə'utəgi* 'track, investigate.'

na *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nəná)* 1. fill, become full. 2. ripen. See *zəga*. 3. be ready for use.

ná -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* head, top. a *nə* 'on, on top of.'

naadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. náadənə)* shave head second time to get any remaining hair. See *isə*.

nàadá -ə *n.* (= *nəədə*) algae, moss.

naana *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nəanənə)* refuse to do something, refuse to speak. See *hwaadə, busə, karee, təga*.

na'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nə'ánə)* lick.

nafa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nafənə)* [*< F.*] use, make use of, be profitable.

nahə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nəhənə)* 1. draw line. 2. mark out boundary lines, mark out foundation for building.

nasaara *n. (pl. nasaariinə)* [*< F.*] European.

náshínásh *adj.* salty tasting.

ndə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəná)* barrow. See *ndzəmə, dəmənə*.

ndəbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəbənə)* 1. drink in one draft or long swallow. See *sa, nda*. 2. beat, beat up. See *dəgə*.

ndəbəzázá *adj. n.* reddish.

ndəbuŋ *id.* See ndəbuŋə.

ndəbuŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəbúŋə)* become stuck in gum or sticky substance.
See zavə, dzəŋa.

ndəfakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəfákə)* 1. cook until soft. See gufə, usə.
2. be incurably lazy. See ənyadə.

ndəfúləŋ *v. id.* meeting someone by accident whom one wants to avoid.

ndəghə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəghəná)* 1. become hard and packed (of ground after being walked on). See mama'a. 2. wear thin (of hair on head after carrying heavy loads). See dusə.

ndəgùnwúnə *n.* young female sheep or goat which has not given birth.

ndəgurəm *id.* See ndəgurəmə.

ndəgurəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəgúrəmə)* become dull (of sharp edge). See dəgwasə, ndəkwasə, ra'umə, bwa'alhə.

ndəgwa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəgwánə)* butt with head, gore with horn. See tsəkwa.

ndəhwadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəhwáfə)* 1. brush someone on the arm with one's finger to get his attention. 2. taste something with one's finger. See təbə, təkə.

ndək *v. id. (= dək)* catching a glimpse of something and not being able to determine what one saw.

ndəkwasə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəkwasənə)* (*upper dialect*, = dəgwasə).

ndələ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndələná)* 1. string a necklace or belt of beads.
2. line up, queue up. See dzəku.

ndəndəh *adj. id.* shape of pregnant stomach.

ndənwu *id.* See ndənwu.

ndənwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndənwúnə)* lean something against something, lean on something, lay head on something. See ndiŋə.

ndərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəránə)* climb, go up, mount. ngira (motion to speaker ext.).

ndərá *n.* river bank (= magəəra, ndzaŋa).

ndərižhá *n.* type of guinea-corn.

ndəz *id.* See ndəzə.

ndəzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndəzəná)* (= təzə) light fire using flame from another fire. See hə, ka, fyakərə.

nda *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndàná)* swallow. See ndəbə.

ndáabūsə *n.* (= makurəhəmə).

ndaabə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndáabənə)* feel of something by touching, test something by touching. See təbə, uree.

ndaəŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndáəŋənə)* stop raining.

ndaarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndàarəná)* do someone else's job, do task someone else was told to do.

ndaarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndáarənə)* sharpen metal tool by pounding edge. See tala, bərə.

ndaɓakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndàɓákənə)* make very thick mush (ɗafəna). See usə, mandaɓakinə.

ndándàŋ *adj.* well, healthy.

ndáfɓáɗ *adj.* shallow (of hole or river).

ndándà'áf *adj. id.* soft (dents when pressed).

ndále *adj.* strong, hard.

ndáwá *n.* ostrich feather. See jinaka.

ndíkándík *adj.* sweet.

ndiŋ *id.* See verb.

ndiŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndiŋəná)* 1. lean against something. See ndənwu.
2. prop open, prop shut, bolt shut, button shut, plant foot firmly.

ndóo'yáne *n.* hemp (= gabeehwa).

ndúuɗà *adj. n.* white.

ndúuɗà'à *adj. n.* whitish. See nduudfa.

ndwa'afə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndwà'áfənə)* (= ndwa'afu) 1. press something soft with finger. See mbwa'afə. 2. smash flat (?) See mbəlhəbə, vwa'a.

ndwándwà' *adj.* sour.

ndzəfwá *n.* bad breath.

ndzəghə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndzəghəná)* 1. spin something (such as a top). See twalya. 2. make sticky or gooey sauce. See usə, da.

ndzəkənwúnə *n. (= cikənwunə) (pl. ndzəkənwushi'inə) (inher. poss., kin. term)* 1. sibling, cousin. ndzəkunwuci Yakubu 'brother of Yakubu.' ndzəkunwuwu 'your brother.' 2. relative. See duura.

ndzəkát *v. id.* 1. getting up quickly. 2. entering unannounced. 3. following someone.

ndzələkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndzəlákənə)* alight, land (of flying bird, plane or insect).

ndzələndzələká *n.* type of small tigernut. See mandəvi'ya.

ndzəlákádá *n.* type of woman's metal ankle ornament (= takurənə).

ndzálh *adj. id.* close.

ndzəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndzəməná)* 1. loan, borrow. See ndə, dəməna. 2. rain. kə njimə vəna. 'it rained.'

ndzəná' *v. id.* getting up quickly.

ndzəŋa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndzəŋánə) (upper dialect, = dzəŋa, tsəŋa).*

ndza *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndzānā)* 1. visit a place regularly. 2. live in a place for short time. nji (irregular completive). See particle nji.

ndzaa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndzāanə)* (note long stem vowel) ndzaa or ndzaanə (completive forms) See baa. 1. sit. 2. dwell or live in a place. 3. be, become. See zə'u.

ndzálhəkənə *n.* type of agusi melon with hard rough skin. See gyalakənə.

ndzábá *n.* clay. ndzabooda 'pot clay.'

ndzəbwábwà *v. id.* raining heavily.

ndzaku *id.* (= ndzakuḅ) See ndzaku.

ndzaku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndzəkúnə) (= ndzakuḅə)* chew tough meat. See tsəḅə.

ndzáməndzámá *v. id.* walking.

ndzaməndzam *adj. id.* 1. quick. 2. sharp (of hoe).

ndzənəbá *n.* type of vine (may be pounded to produce a gum adhesive).

ndzəŋ *adj. id.* held in hand.

ndzaŋ *id.* See ndzaŋə.

ndzəŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ndzəŋəná)* 1. fasten together permanently. See ləbə, laḃə, daḃə. 2. start at the beginning.

ndzəŋá -ə *n.* (= ndəra).

nee *v.i. and v.t. (vn. néenə)* (stem occurs only with -ee ext.) 1. see. *kə nee nyi ka Musa. 'I see Musa.'* 2. *nee ka təguunə nga... 'feel sorry for, have mercy on.'* See təguunə, tuu.

nelya *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nélyánə)* [*< F.*] send. See ləkee.

ngəətə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngəətá)* See əntə.

ngəḃə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngəḃəná)* bury.

ngəlàatá -ə *n.* (= ngəlaatə) type of water bird (large, black, has long neck, named for its cry).

ngəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngəməná)* 1. show amazement and curiosity at seeing something for the first time. 2. praise, rave over. See həŋə, ḃuunə, dala.

ngəngəḃə *n.* grey heron.

ngərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngərəná)* 1. pick up, lift. See pakə, tsadə. 2. take, carry. See kərə. 3. *ngərə minə 'marry a wife.'* *ngərə ngura 'marry a husband.'* 4. *ngərəma 'steal.'* See hərə. 5. *kə ngira vəna 'the rain came.'*

ngərəkiki *adj.* bitter.

ngərələlək *adj.* bad smelling.

ngərəná *n.* edible seed pod of locustbean tree. See rənə, mburəha.

ngərəpa *n.* type of hatchet or machete.

ngərə'wá -ə *n.* anger, being angry, suffering. *sa ngərə'wa 'have trouble.'*

nga *prep.* of.

nga *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngəná)* 1. put on (clothing or jewelry). See vyakə, ka. 2. hide. See umbə. 3. set (trap). 4. put poison in food. 5. *nga vəna 'prevent rain by witchcraft.'* 6. *ngya ma 'sprout.'* 7. *ngagərə 'drop down through.'* See dəvə, jinwa.

ŋə'a *interjection.* said to express displeasure at something.

ngaada *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngəadánə)* do something to frighten someone. See /ngwalee, gəḃə.

ngəanga' *adj. id.* much, many.

- ngaazha *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngàazhánə)* (stem occurs only with motion to speaker ext.) bring out of pot. (= tyaafa, See təfə.)
- ngá' *adj. id.* 1. good. 2. nga'a ka... 'want, desire, like, but not love.' See uudə.
- ngaḃə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngáḃánə)* (= kaḃə).
- ngáḃák *adj. id.* many (of fruit or vegetables on the ground).
- ngafə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngáfánə)* stuff mouth full and swallow without chewing (only of food that requires chewing).
- ngáh *v. id.* doing something with difficulty.
- ngálhīnə *n.* dried tears. See kīnə.
- ngáməngámá -ə *n.* mouse trap.
- ngásərá' *adj. id.* (= ngaḃak).
- ngáyákánə *n.* type of aginə fruit.
- ngàzàrà *n.* type of small drum.
- ngèeránə *n.* power, strength. (irr. affixing: ngeeriita 'that strength'.)
- ngiirə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngiirəná)* growl (of dog or leopard). See huubə, tuu.
- ngi'i *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngi'ínə)* grunt, groan (?).
- ngilá *n.* knife.
- ngilàciinə *n. (comp. from ngila + ciinə)* type of knife (small, tied to wrist).
- ngilakunwa -ə *n. (comp. from ngila + kunwa)* type of knife used to cut open calabash.
- ngilápúrəḡānə *n. (comp. from ngila + purəḡanə)* type of long knife.
- nginə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nginəná)* tie grass together in small bunches for roofing.
- ngís *adj.* having uniform length (such as a bundle of sticks).
- ngivərə -ə *n.* blacksmith's hammer.
- nguḃə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nguḃəná)* 1. plant root crop by pushing seedlings into ground. 2. transplant (trees, etc.). See læga.
- ngùḃ'əká -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* Adam's apple, larynx.
- ngùḃ'á -ə *n. (= mangudá).*

ngúf *adj. id.* 1. close. 2. easy.

ngùlámá -ə *n.* type of drum (small, sits on ground).

ngúlíngùlí *adj. id.* awake.

ngúlyà *n.* maize.

ngúmá'idèná -ə *n.* (*comp. from* ngumə + idəna) type of tree (source of medicine drunk to cure bruises).

ngùmá *n.* type of drum (tall, sits on ground).

ngúmá -ə *n.* medicine, magic, poison (in the upper dialect this word means poison only). See kuzəka.

ngungunə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngùngúnə)* mumble, babble, hum.

ngúrəəə *n.* (*abst. n. <* ngura) semen.

ngúráciinə *n.* (*comp. from* ngura + ciinə) (= nwanwuciinə) thumb.

ngúrángúrá *n.* millipede. See tandəndərəə, ədərəntanfu.

ngúrányíə *n.* water hole which dries up in the dry season.

ngúrá -ə *n.* (*pl. ngwírəə*) man, husband. (*pl. is irr. affixing: ngwíriita 'those men.'*)

ngùrá -ə *n.* hard rocky soil.

ngúrángúráh *adj.* sore and hoarse (of throat after yelling).

nguriyah *id.* See nguriyahə.

nguriyahə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngúriyáhə)* injure by accidentally scratching. See hwahwa.

ngútə *gr. form.* which. ngutə ənda? 'which person?'

ngúurà -ə *n.* large city. See vərəə.

ngúyá *n.* bush-cow, H. bauna.

ngwáah *v. id.* making marks on something.

ngwáar *irr. adj.* very big (of animate things).

ngwaarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngwáarə)* become very big. See dūunə.

ngwabə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngwábə)* grow in abundance (of fruit only). See sii.

ngwaf *id.* See ngwafə.

- ngwafə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngwáfə́nə)* 1. undress, take off clothing (not hat or shoes). 2. depose chief.
- ngwahə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngwáhə́nə)* bark (of dog).
- ngwák *adj. id.* partly full (of non-liquid).
- ngwalə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngwàləná)* 1. fear, be afraid. 2. ngwalee 'frighten.'
See ngaada, gə́ba, ghə́rəghə́rə, mangwala.
- ngwám *adj. id.* 1. sitting out in the sun. 2. exposed.
- ngwángwà' *adj.* expensive, difficult.
- ngwaŋ *id.* See ngwaŋə.
- ngwaŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngwáŋə́nə)* 1. strike head with fist. See dəgə.
- ngwárə́gwà -ə *n.* male horse, stallion. See təhwa.
- ngwarah *id.* See ngwarahə.
- ngwarahə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ngwàráhə́nə)* hoe poorly leaving patches of grass. See buďə, kwangwarə, uuza.
- ngwáryák *v. id.* looking over one's shoulder.
- ngwázámá *n.* ram, large male sheep.
- nìhànìhátá *v. id.* walking.
- níí *gr. form.* final particle marking yes/no question.
- níkù *v. id.* picking something up.
- njá́húyá' *adj.* resembling small pebbles.
- njakə́lh *id.* See njakə́lhə.
- njakə́lhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. njàkə́lhə́nə)* (= njalə́hə) smash or mash something moist. See jalə.
- njalə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. njálə́nə)* (*upper dialect*) wash and beat new cloth on rock to make it soft.
- njálh *adj. id.* rubbed with excessive oil.
- njalə́hə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. njàlhə́nə)* (= njakə́lhə).
- njámə́njám *adj.* salty tasting.
- njàvə́ďá *n.* sprout.
- njíďáŋ *having* arrowhead-shaped sprouts or leaves.

njik *id.* See njikə.

njikə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. njikə́nə)* close, cover or block opening. See pa'a.

njínjìkù *adj.* planted too close together. See verb.

njinjiku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. njínjìkúnə)* plant seeds too close together. See læga.

njínj *adj.* pressed firmly against something (of finger only).

nuu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. núunə)* (*upper dialect, = nə'u*).

nwá -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* hip(s).

nwà'á *n.* type of large agusi melon. See gyalakənə.

nwánwá -ə *n. (pl. myaminə)* chief. See arəfo, arənəfo.

nwánwúciinə *n. (comp. from nwanwa + ciinə)* thumb (= ngurəciinə).

nwánwúmábàrá -ə *n. (comp. from nwanwa + mabəra)* queen termite.

nwánwúunə *n. (action n.) (abst. n. < nwanwa)* ruling, winning. *ɸa nwanwuunə*
'win (= zəmə).'

nwányánə *n. (= moonyanə).*

nwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nwùná)* (= muu) 1. answer, respond. *kə nwi ci aciiki*
'he answered me.' 2. sound (of horn).

nwúdənə *n. (pl. nwúgìgìnə)* new mother.

nwúdà *n. (pl. nwudiinə)* person of the Kilba or Margyi tribe.

nwúgìnə *n.* gruel, H. kunu.

nwúgì'ùudá *n. (comp. from nwugi + uuda)* type of gruel containing groundnuts.

nwú'í *irr. adj.* good (to look at), pleasing.

nwúk *adv. (= nga nwuk).* long ago. *nwukənwuk* 'long long ago.'

nwùnyínə *n.* sleep. *a nwunyanə nə ci* 'he is asleep.' *nwunyiiiku* 'you are sleepy.'

nwusə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. nwúsənə)* laugh, laugh at, mock.

nwùyá -ə *n. (pl. nwuyiginə)* person not of the 'blacksmith' caste. See ənhya.

nwúzətá -ə *n.* orphan (= kəzəka).

nwúzhìnə *n.* (*inher. poss., kin. term*) co-wife (reciprocal term used by wives of the same husband).

nyálh *adj. id.* of small amount (of liquid in container).

nyi *pron.* I (1st pers. sing.).

nyí'u *id.* See verb.

nyí'u *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* nyí'únə) plug hole in container with gum.

ŋəŋá -ə *adj. n.* poorly set (of trap that won't spring).

páərí'ínə *n.* (= píiri'ínə) woven straw pot cover, H. faifai.

pəətə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* pəətə'nə) 1. comfort a crying baby, calm down an angry person. See shikushiku. 2. bring gifts to win back an estranged wife.

pə *gr. form.* special negative marker. See section 4.4.3.

pádéerənə *adv.* very early in the morning.

pəďə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* pəďə'nə) criticize someone when he is not present, talk unkindly about someone behind his back.

pəďəpəď *adj. id.* clean or sweet smelling.

pəďək *v. id.* 1. stealing all of something. 2. cutting a little.

pəf *v. id.* poking into soft object.

pəgháď *v. id.* breaking (of pot, etc.).

pəháď *adj. id.* very swollen.

pək *id.* (= puk) See pəkə.

pəkə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* pəkə'ná) (= pukə) 1. put or place by pouring (of dry particles or powder only). 2. bloom, sprout. See dəvə, jinwa. 3. pukə ha 'become morning.'

pəkənə nga ha *adv.* at sunup. See pəkə.

pələk *v. id.* landing of a bird. See ndzələkə.

pəlháď *adj.* squashed or smashed flat.

pám *v. id.* hitting.

pəpəďá -ə *n.* honey comb (without honey). See pəfəpəfə.

pər *v. id.* (= fər) flying away (of birds).

- pərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. péréne)* 1. untie, unfold, unwrap. See pitə. 2. pərə ma'yanə 'calm down, relax.'
- pérəb *adj. id.* lying down.
- pérək *v. id.* eating (tsəbə) all up.
- pérək *adj. id.* lying flat after a fall (of inanimate object).
- péralhine *n.* hoof of animal.
- pérésaná *n. (pl. pərasaniine)* Fulani, muslim.
- pérətsóová *n.* wild dog of the bush, jackel (?) See gwahyanə, mətəfatsaka.
- pəra *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pəranə)* 1. exchange, change, swap. 2. pərapaa 'pay ransom, redeem.'
- pəra'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pərá'áne)* make ground level.
- pəralh *id.* See pəralhə.
- pəralhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pərálhəne)* smash up (of beans or groundnuts between stones or with teeth.). See jalə.
- pərípəríne *n.* butterfly, moth.
- pərit *id.* See pəritə.
- pəritə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pəritəne)* slip off, slide off (such as foot off bicycle pedal, elbow off table). See lhəra'i, purəzhatə.
- pəryámyámyá'á *n.* ring-shaped metal charm worn on string or tied to clothing.
- pət *v. id.* drawing knife.
- pətəpətá *adv.* just after sunset.
- pətəká -ə *n.* antelope (?) (brown, waist-high).
- pətsəlét *v. id.* coming out quickly (of animal from hole).
- pə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pə'unə)* (= pu'u) kill many people or animals (= bəələ).
- pəvbəm *v. id.* jumping into water.
- pəyaŋ *id.* See pəyaŋə.
- pəyaŋə *v.i. (vn. pəyáŋəne)* disperse quickly, run off in different directions. See təkə.
- pa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. páne)* fight. See mbəzə.

- paara *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pàarànə)* 1. separate, sort by type. See təkə.
2. paree 'keep separate.' 3. paaratəgi 'comprehend, understand, figure out, explain, make to understand.'
- pá' *adj. id.* lying in an open hand.
- pá' *v. id.* 1. hitting of arrow. 2. swearing (= gwat) 3. trilling of voice (= vurənə).
- pa'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pá'ánə)* 1. close, cover. See njikə, bəralə, dza'a, tsəŋa, zadə. 2. help someone mount a head load.
- pád'áah *v. id.* laughing loudly.
- páhúnə *adj. n.* most probably true, likely so.
- pakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pəkəná)* lift up edge or corner of something (but not lift entire object). See ngərə.
- paka' *id.* See paka'a.
- paka'a *v.i. (vn. pəkà'ánə)* 1. strive, try hard, endure patiently. See sə'wa, zəpə. 2. shake ears (of animal).
- pəl *v. id.* 1. breaking (of stick). 2. buying for oneself.
- palə *v.i. (vn. pələná)* go. See dzə.
- pálómá *n.* type of tree (goats eat its leaves).
- pələtəm *v. id.* coming, arriving.
- pálápáléejə *n.* type of fish (white).
- palhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pálhənə or pəlhəná)* worship at pagan shrine (lhəma) or fetish (uuləma).
- pálhəkánə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* shoulder.
- pálhá *n.* large flat exposed rock. palha də naanwu 'sky.'
- pámə *adj. id.* being different.
- pámbərə *n.* type of thorn.
- pàná -ə *n.* ground, floor. a paa, 'on the ground.'
- pángárəŋ *adj. id.* 1. lying alone in the open. 2. fəzə pangaraŋ 'exactly one year.'
- pàpá *n.* seed of əzəha tree (large, flat, children make shoes of them).
- papa' *id. (= pa')* See papa'a.

- papa'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pápá'ánə)* help someone shinny up tree by pushing.
- pápámá -ə *n.* musical horn made from cow's horn.
- pápàwá -ə *n.* type of tree, H. aliliba, (Abraham: *cordia abyssinica*).
- páráláwá *n.* wooden bed without legs. See ədərə.
- pàrá -ə *n.* type of grass (used for mats).
- páráŋ *gr. form.* straight to (used with prep. a). kə gi ci paraŋ asii 'he went straight home.'
- pás *adj. id.* full.
- páshát *v. id.* (= dzət) going quickly in or out of grass (of animal).
- páshíkàndáí shape of any container with a wide mouth and a shallow interior. (= pashindaŋ).
- páshíndáŋ *adj.* (= pashikanda'i).
- pátə *gr. form.* all. makinə patə 'all the women.' patənə nga makinə 'all the women.'
- patə də ha'a *adv.* nevertheless.
- pátəpátəcū *v. id.* going with one's hands full.
- pats *id.* See patsə.
- patsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pátsənə)* 1. chop through with one blow. See burə, cilhə. 2. speak the whole truth without holding back secrets.
- pàwá -ə *n.* birth. See poo, ləmpawa.
- pàwù *v. id.* 1. diving of hawk. 2. tearing of cloth. See kwagh.
- pawutənə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pàwútənə)* (= bawutə) fan.
- páyí *v. id.* sound of slapping.
- peepid' *id.* (= pyapəd') See peepidə.
- peepidə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pèepid'ənə)* (= pyapədə) 1. make lightning. ka peepidənə nə vəna. 'rain will cause lightning.' See ngila nga vəna. 2. cause sharp pain in back. See đa, jilə, zəmə. 3. flash knife around.
- pid'əgúlh *v. id.* (= pidəku) pinching.
- pid'əkwá *n.* type of razor with triangular shaped iron blade.
- pid'ánwú *adj.* sharp-pointed.

píd'yá *n.* type of pot with small mouth (used to store seeds, used in pagan worship).

píipíi *v. id.* quick, fast.

píirá -ə *n.* wall forming compartments inside granary.

píku *v. id.* stabbing, piercing.

pilhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pìlhəná)* pluck seeds from plant one by one. See dəmə.

pílikə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pìlíkáə)* open just a little. See wunə.

pína *n.* breath, life. (= əpina) ma'a ci dee pin a makii 'he is still alive' (lit. 'he remains with breath in his mouth').

pi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pína.) (= əpina).*

pirəlhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pìrəlhəná)* force open. See wunə.

pírílh *adj. id.* very small (of size or amount).

pírínyát *v. id.* slipping of foot.

pírityá *n.* handkerchief-like cloth for carrying tobacco.

píriwá *n.* ostentatious person (especially a prostitute).

piriwaanə *n. (abst. n. < piriwa)* showing off.

pit *id.* See pitə.

pitə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pìtəná)* 1. unfasten. See pərə, yigəfə. 2. go past, pass by (= saala).

pítyá *n.* rabbit, hare.

píwú *v. id.* moving quickly.

poo *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pòoná)* give birth, give birth to. pwayi (completive form).

póomá *n. (comp. from pawu 'birth' + ma 'mouth')* talkative person.

póongənfwá -ə *n. (comp. from pawu + nga + ənfwa)* fruit.

póoshi *gr. form. (= ooshi)* not (negative marker for declarative sentences).
pooshi rəgwənə nga'a 'this road is not good.'

póoshiinə *n. (abst. n. < pooshi)* nothingness.

pòotádəgwàənə *n. (comp. from pawu + tə + dagwaanə)* first (?) male child.
See dzəma.

- pòotéràmáanə *n.* (*comp. from pawu + tə + rəmaanə*) first (?) female child. See dzəma.
- póoyànə *n.* type of mouse. See hima.
- pú'(ú) *ten.*
- púcák *v. id.* collecting together with difficulty.
- púćípúćík *adj. id.* having lots of fruit.
- púćírəf *v. id.* falling after being hit hard.
- puďə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. púďə́nə)* eat tree or plant (of insects).
- púďə́púďə́s *adj.* taste of yam or potato.
- pukə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pùkə́nə)* (= pəkə).
- pùkət *v. id.* 1. flapping of wings of large bird. 2. getting up quickly.
- púl *adj. id.* very new.
- púl *v. id.* (= pwal) bursting.
- pulə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pùlənə́)* flow, flow out. See hwii, ləvə.
- púlh *v. id.* hitting hard.
- púlhə -ə *n.* type of metal bracelet.
- púlhipúlhiḃ *adj.* fat (of cheeks). See bughəḃ
- púm *v. id.* (= bum) 1. bursting (of fallen pot, pumpkin, etc.). 2. shooting of gun.
- púpúf *adj. id.* bubbling, foaming.
- púpúgá -ə *n.* mat used in roof construction (eight inches wide by several feet long).
- púpúsə̀ə *twenty.*
- púrákə́' *v. id.* eating completely.
- púrə̀gənə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* side. a purə̀gá 'at the side.' a purə̀gə a purə̀gə, 'side by side.'
- purə̀shikə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pùrə̀shíkənə)* wrinkle one's face. See kəzha'inə, cirə̀vələ'i, ravusə.
- pùrə̀shishik *adj.* bitter (taste of soap or black coffee). See purə̀shikə.
- púrá́t *adj. id.* mixed up.

purəzhat *id.* See purəzhatə.

purəzhatə *v.i. (vn. pùrəzhátəñə)* have one's foot slip when walking or climbing.
See pəritə.

purak *id.* See purakə.

purakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pùrákəñə)* split in two, split off, chip off. See burə.

pùràsá -ə *n.* scar on back of head.

púráts *v. id.* passing feces, breaking wind.

pus *id.* See pusə.

pusə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pùsəñá)* 1. clear brush from farm.

2. remove thatched roof. 3. eat animal's head, eat big piece of meat.

pusha *v.i. and v.t. (vn. púshánə)* [*< F.*] resemble, look like.

púshí *v. id.* breaking of fallen object.

pút *v. id.* (= tuts) pull out something small.

pùtsáf *v. id.* falling into grass. See buf.

puu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pùuná)* 1. blow strongly (of wind). 2. blow on a fire.
See ədə, gə, ufə.

pu'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pù'ùná)* (*upper dialect* ?) stumble (= təkutsə).

pùyám-pùyám *adj. id.* rash, impatient, careless.

pú'yák *v. id.* breaking off a piece, biting off a piece.

púzhìnə *n.* sore on lip or mouth.

pwá' *v. id.* 1. hitting hard. 2. See verb.

pwá'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pwá'ánə)* remove bark from tree or log.

pwá'á *n.* testicles (*reg. poss.*) (= shipirinə).

pwáh *adj. id.* very white.

pwàh'á *adj. n.* light gray (tan, brown).

pwákálhá' *v. id.* eating completely.

pwál *v. id.* bursting loudly.

pwalh *id.* See pwalhə.

pwalhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pwàlhəná)* break off tree limb. See bwalə, pwatə.

pwám *v. id.* biting into hard food.

pwápwâtá -ə *n.* bat. See zəzəka.

pwat *id.* See pwatə.

pwatə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pwátəná)* 1. cut animal into pieces. See la.
2. break off tree limb. See pwalhə, bwalə.

pwatsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pwàtsəná)* eat mush (dʰafəna) without sauce. See adə.

pyáapyá' *adj. id.* tied well.

pyá' *v. id.* cutting something's throat.

pyáďəngályəŋ *adj. id.* lying in the open.

pyák *adj. id.* full.

pyapəď *id.* (= peepid) See pyapəďə.

pyapəďə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pyàpəďəná)* (= peepidə).

pyàryáryàwù *adj.* watery, thin (of liquids).

pyawur *id.* See pyawurə.

pyawurə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. pyàwúrəná)* swing something around, sling, twirl.

rəbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. rəbəná)* 1. become wet. marəbəkii 'wet.' See rəwa,
gizəná. 2. dissolve in water. 3. melt (of ice).

rəbá *n.* bed made of woven sticks. See ədəra.

rəbwárəbwá *n.* type of fish (soft, white).

rədəď *id.* See rədəďə.

rədəďə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. rədəďəná)* disappear, evaporate. See ifə.

rəgájjǐb *adj. id.* 1. limp. 2. too sick to stand up.

rəgənwá -ə *n.* sickle (= lhakwa).

rəgwá *n.* road, path.

rəgwà'ídəná *n.* (*comp. from* rəgwa + idəna) blood vein.

rəhúna *n.* snake. See ranwa, taguďa, zətətiina, kəjangərənya, kwamoomba,
mətsapa, maburəla, mbərənə, mubunə, midəna.

rəkikínə *n.* fireplace, hearth (for cooking). See gura.

- rəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. rəmənə)* 1. milk (a cow). 2. spin thread from raw cotton.
- rəmənə *n. (pl. riminə)* female adolescent, pretty girl. See daghara.
- rəmbílyá -ə *n.* 1. small hoe. 2. type of bird (small, black, builds nest of mud under eaves).
- rənə *n.* 1. locustbean tree, H. d'orawa, (Abraham: *parkia filicoidea*) See mburəha. 2. dry season (= daarənə).
- rənárənə *adj. n.* yellow. See rənə.
- rənwu *one* (form used as a noun or noun modifier. See section 2.5). See tenə.
- rəŋən *adj. id.* having just died suddenly.
- rə'únə *n.* puss.
- rə'ùshínə *n.* liver. See wurəshinə.
- rəvəđəghàràkà -ə *n. (comp. from rəvəđə + ghəraKa)* type of grass (runs like vine).
- rəvəđá -ə *n.* infant back carrier made from goat skin.
- rəwa *v.i. (vn. rəwánə)* 1. become wet or soaked. marəwakii 'wet.' 2. rəwatə 'make wet (trans.)' See rəbə.
- ra *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ránə)* 1. dig. See uuza, ənsə, badzə, buhəđə, cahwadə, dzəhu, vwazə. 2. ra kuva 'build a hut.'
- rá -ə *n.* field, farm plot. a səkə r(ə), 'in the field.'
- rə'amu *v. id.* See verb.
- rə'amu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. rə'ámúnə)* (= ra'umə).
- raara' *id.* cold. See əra, shishiwu.
- rab *id.* See rabə.
- rabə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. rəbəná)* fold, fold over, fold up.
- rəgá -ə *n.* bow.
- rəhá *n.* axe. See yahoora, cibuka, ciləŋa, dəkwa, hinə'wa, h'una.
- rəkwátá' *v. id.* moving or working slowly.
- rəndzá *n.* fringe on hem of gown.
- rənwá -ə *n.* type of snake (poisonous, long, fat, black).

raramə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ráráməná)* grope, grope for something (like a blind person).

raraŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ràráŋəná)* learn to walk, develop motor skills (of child).
See wii.

rasə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. rásəná)* hem a gown.

ra'umə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. rà'úməná)* (= ra'amu) become dull or blunt (of axe or hoe). See dəgwasə, ndəgurəmə, bwa'alhə.

ravus *id.* See ravusə.

ravusə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ràvúsəná)* wrinkle or crumple (cloth or paper). See cirəvələ'i.

rìbíə *n.* border, dividing line.

rìgədí *adj. id. (or prep. ?)* level with.

rìdzámá *n.* horse's bridle and bit.

ringəďə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ríngəďəná)* spy on, peak at. See tsaamə.

ríŋkəná *n.* long metal rod used to roll over cotton to remove seeds.

ríntá *n.* large, log-sized piece of firewood.

ríp *v. id.* 1. becoming lost. 2. arriving. See dəŋ.

rís *v. id. (= rit)* go in or out quickly.

rít *v. id. (= ris).*

rooŋ *id.* See rooŋə.

rooŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. róoŋəná)* rap on head with knuckle or stick. See dəgə.

róodà *n.* 1. type of small drum. See ganga. 2. praise song accompanied by the same drum.

rúď *v. id.* picking up a heavy object with both hands.

rúp *adj. id.* covered (of water container only).

ryákəryák *adj. id.* very black.

ryaminiya *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ryaminiyanə)* [< F.] circumcize.

ryántsá *n.* type of lizard (large like canciranə, chases chickens, 'green' back).
See gyagyalá.

ryás *v. id. (= aryas).*

sə— *n.* thing. (occurs only in compounds or with demonstrative or definite suffixes: səna 'this thing,' səkii 'the thing,' etc.) See uushi.

səba *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* səbána) 1. drive away. See lakə. 2. səba minə 'divorce wife.'

səbərə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* səbərənə) become fat and husky. masəbərəkii 'fat, husky.' See duunə.

səbərə —ə *n.* burliness, huskiness. See səbərə.

səfə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* səfəná) 1. take off clothing. 2. peel off scab, peel off skin. See təfə, wunə. 3. remove hair from hide.

səfəh *v. id.* (= fəh) swallowing (of non-liquid).

səfəjida —ə *n.* (*comp. from* səfə + jida) homespun thread that is too thin.

səfá —ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) foot, leg.

səgúdák *v. id.* (= səgudə') jumping down from a high place.

səhu *v. id.* (= səhəsəhwa) sneaking away quietly.

səkəciinə *n.* (*comp. from* səkə + ciinə) palm of hand.

səkántánfu *n.* (*comp. from* səkə + əntanfu) sky.

səkəpaa *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* səkəpaanə) (stem occurs only with -paa ext.) delay, interrupt, distract.

səkárəənə *n.* (*abst. n.*) (*comp. from* səkə 'in' + ra 'farm') help wife gives to her husband on his farm. kə nji ki ka səkərəənə 'she used to help her husband on his farm.'

səkəsəfə *n.* (*comp. from* səkə + səfə) bottom of foot. See ba'asəfə.

səká —ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) stomach, abdomen.

səkúnwá —ə *n.* guinea-corn.

səkúnwúsàŋá —ə *n.* (*comp. from* səkunwa + saŋa) type of guinea-corn.

səkùrá —ə *n.* cleverness. See səkərə 'be clever.'

səlúm *v. id.* (= təlum) falling of small object into water.

səmbəfə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* səmbəfəné) 1. smooth surface of pot with wet cloth before firing. See lərəbə, lhaadə. 2. escape or disappear while being chased. See dadə, mbərəfə.

səmbəfəm *v. id.* (= shimbəfəŋ).

- sə̀múhəsə̀múhwá *v. id.* 1. sneaking away quietly. 2. refusing to speak.
- sə̀mwá *n.* type of sickness (swelling of testicles).
- sə̀na *v.i. (vn. sənánə)* 1. be spoiled, be disobedient (of child). 2. cry and be fussy (of child). See dzarə, bəzə.
- sə̀navə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sənávə́nə)* (stem occurs only with -və ext.) be familiar with, be accustomed to, be used to. kə sə̀navə iinə da ci. 'I (or we excl.) am accustomed to him.' See shii.
- sə̀nga'adənə *n. (comp. from sə + nga + adənə)* soft food that needs little or no chewing. See zəma, adənə.
- sə̀ngáđ *v. id.* falling and becoming lost.
- sə̀ngàhà'úne *n. (comp. from sə + nga + ha'unə)* joke.
- sə̀ngàmákinə *n. (comp. from sə + nga + makinə)* menstrual flow (= uushi'inə).
- sə̀ngatsə̀bənə *n. (comp. from sə + nga + tsə̀bənə)* hard food that must be chewed. See zəma, tsə̀bənə.
- sə̀ngwát *v. id.* (= kwat) coming off, coming untied.
- sə̀nii *v.i. (vn. səníinə)* dream. See zəzəni.
- sə̀nwá -ə *n.* type of tree with edible fruit.
- sə̀pátá *n.* type of tree (used for rope).
- sə̀rə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sərəná)* 1. roast over open fire. 2. fry (dry or with oil). See usə.
- sə̀rəhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sərəhənə)* be jealous.
- sə̀ráhwá -ə *n. (reg. poss., kin. term) (pl. shirəhinə)* 1. parent-in-law. 2. child-in-law. sərəhwuminə 'mother-in-law.'
- sə̀sə̀nwá -ə *n.* rival suitor, spouse's paramour. See shanda. səsə̀nwuuna 'rivalry.'
- sə̀tə̀yá *n.* type of grass (used for mats).
- sə̀'wa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sə́wánə)* 1. be patient, endure. See paka'a. 2. mourn patiently. 3. sə̀watə 'take courage, be bold.' See sa'wa.
- sə̀yáŋ *v. id.* jump away, jumping down.

- sa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sánə)* 1. drink. 2. sa 'wanə 'nursé.' 3. sa taba 'smoke.' 4. sa taakwa 'suffer trouble.' 5. sa saka 'desire, want.' See ndəbə.
- saala *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sáalánə)* [< F.] pass by.
- saapə *v.i. (vn. saapənə)* separate cotton from seed. See təkə.
- saarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sàarəná)* go slowly, talk slowly. də saarəsaarə 'slowly, clearly.' See dəbā.
- sàatáká *n.* [< F.] public feast, party.
- saawa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sàawánə)* spoil, ruin. See bəzə, dəgwasə, yirə.
- sáa'yá (saa'i) *n.* [< F.] time. See wanyinə.
- sàbəbəbá *v. id.* (of snake) moving on open ground.
- sàbák *adj. id.* many (of fruit or vegetables on the ground).
- sàgìdá *n.* mark of ownership known only to owner.
- sakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sákənə)* 1. sakəpaa 'quiet crying child, amuse child.' See pəfə. 2. steal when no one is looking (?).
- sàkák' *v. id.* blowing back and forth in the wind.
- sákàbá *n.* (*lower dialect*, = tsakaba) temporary hut made of corn stalks (= bakasakaba).
- saku *id.* See verb.
- saku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sàkùná)* scrape out calabash with side of finger while eating. See kirəfə.
- sákwà *gr. form.* so much more so. d'ii hə ətsə irəkii sakwa nya '(if) you did it, old as you are, so much more so for me.' kə ngirə nyi sakwa badawa 'I lifted it, a strong man could much more so.'
- sáməmà *adv.* 1. sorry to hear that (= kawa'). 2. də saməma 'carefully.'
- sambalaŋə *v.i. (vn. sàmbàlənə)* walk like a drunk, walk purposelessly. (This very unusual verb incorporates a verb phrase: sa mbala 'drink beer.' See masambala.)
- sàmpúrá *n.* homemade soap.
- sáŋ *gr. form.* (not) at all. pooshi saŋ 'none at all.' pə nyi-a dzə saŋ 'I refuse to go at all.'
- sàngàrá *n.* unstrained beer. See mbala.

- sàṅá -ə *adj. n.* real, genuine, original. əndəsəŋa 'good person.'
- sàrəmáŋə *n.* type of grass (makes strong zana mats) See kuzəna.
- sasara *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sàsàránə)* behave immaturely, behave childishly.
- sáwàryà -ə *n.* [*< F.*] (*action n.*) advice, consultation.
- sáwùdá *n.* seed storage container made from guinea-corn leaves.
- sà'wá *n.* type of song (sung at chief's death, before battle, etc.). See sə'wa.
- sháarádúugə *n.* (*comp. from shaarə + də + uugə*) type of bird (large, black with two black plumes on head). (= takujigwadʒaaku).
- sháarəmètòoyá *n.* (*comp. from shaarə + mətòoya*) type of bird (large, flies at night).
- shàará -ə *n.* any large bird. See əgina.
- shàbwàǰá *n.* roofing grass (ndzadʒa) which comes apart easily because it is not sown together well enough before it goes on roof.
- sháfásháfá -ə *adj. n.* drizzle.
- shàfá *n.* 1. type of tree. 2. swearing juju. 3. name for bad things that may happen to a person.
- shakəŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. shàkánəŋə)* rinse container to get out last bits of food (done with spinning or splashing motion). See takəŋə.
- shákát *adj. id.* (with pl. subject) quiet.
- shákálá *n.* (= shakalya) type of guinea-corn.
- shákálágərə *n.* (*comp. from shakala + gərə*) type of guinea-corn.
- shàlá *n.* type of oboe-like flute.
- sháláwà *n.* type of bird, H. mikiya (Abraham: *gyps ruppellii*) (scavenger, larger than vulture, called nwanwa nga shaariinə).
- shàndá *n.* paramour, secret lover. See səsənwə. shandaanə 'having a secret lover (*abst. n.*).'
- shangəǰ *id.* See shangəǰ.
- shangəǰə *v.i. (vn. shàngəǰəŋə)* wag tail (of animal). See shawudə, tondonə.
- shankufə *v.i. (vn. shànkúfəŋə)* 1. sniffle after crying. See finkusə, hirənwu.
2. feel heartburn, feel chest pains. See tərədə.
- shápátáŋ *adj. id.* all in bloom.

- sháshâfínə *n.* guinea-corn such that its seed consists of mere shell with nothing inside.
- shàshîínə *n.* (*dead pl.*) type of firewood (soft, thin sticks, not suitable for building).
- shashinə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* shàshínə) make smooth or level, wear smooth by use. See ləṛəḃə.
- sháwúḏ *v. id.* 1. becoming temporarily forgotten. 2. See shawuḏə.
- shawuḏə *v.i.* (*vn.* shàwúḏə) 1. wag tail. See tondogə, shangəḏə.
2. swing a sling.
- shi *v.i.* (*vn.* shínə) come. shíwà (imperative sing.). shoomə (imperative pl.).
- shíḃə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* shíḃənə) suck (on candy or food, not to nurse). See sa.
- shíḃət *v. id.* spilling accidentally.
- shíḏá *n.* contents of intestine. See mbəərshíḏa.
- shífá' *adj. id.* dead (of many things in one place).
- shífá' *v. id.* running and disappearing into the grass (of animal).
- shífá'à *n.* many dead things in one place.
- shii *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* shiínə) know. See sənava.
- shíî *n.* So-and-so, this person, that person (may be used for speaker or addressee). See zana.
- shiku *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* shíkùná) point at something.
- shíkú há'à *adv.* immediately.
- shikushiku *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* shíkúshíkúnə) bounce a baby to quiet it. See paḏə.
- shík wá -ə *n.* payment for work done, one's share.
- shíláḏ *adj.* having a small narrow head (of snake, etc.).
- shímbáḏəḡ *v. id.* falling into water or grass and becoming lost.
- shinə *v.i.* (*vn.* shínə or shìnəná) blow nose. (denominal verb). See shina.
- shíná -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) nose.
- shínáí *adj.* smooth, slick. (= shinana'i, shinashina'i).
- shíndəḡ *adj.* stiff, unmovable, paralyzed (of body parts only).

- shínkínə *n.* (*reg. poss.*) hair. əndə shinkinə 'human being.'
- shíntáká' *v. id.* drinking all up.
- shíntá -ə *n.* broom.
- shinwu *id.* (= cinwu) See verb.
- shinwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. shínwú)* (= cinwu, cimú) shinwa (motion to speaker ext.).
- shípínə *n.* guinea-corn mash which is left after making beer.
- shìpìrínə *n.* (*poss. unknown, body part*) testicle (human only?) (= pwa'a).
- shíràdǎ -ə *n.* uncouth person with dirty habits.
- shíránə *n.* part of guinea-corn stalk just below the head.
- shìràŋǎ -ə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) lower leg from knee to ankle.
- shírúm *adj. id.* tall.
- shíshímá *n.* type of tree.
- shíshínə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) (stem: shi) body. shishinki 'my body', but a shiki 'on my body.' a shi 'on, against.'
- shíshìwǎ *n.* type of small brass ring many of which are tied together and worn as belt.
- shíshíwú *adj.* 1. cold. 2. slow moving. See raara'.
- shít *v. id.* pouring out completely.
- shìwǎ *n.* stirring stick.
- shíwà (*imperative form.* See shi) come here.
- shíwát *v. id.* rolling off without soaking in (of water).
- shoogi *v.i. and v.t.* (only imperative form occurs) give it to me. See və.
- shòoná (= 'mashiimə nyi') 'I do not know.'
- shòotá -ə *n.* (*action n.*) sliding down an inclined surface.
- shòotàngàyá -ə *n.* (*comp. from shoota + nga + ya*) person who forgets easily. (= shootangayi nga ənda).
- sii *v.i. (vn. siinǎ)* 1. multiply, reproduce in abundance (of plants and animals).
2. divide into parts. See təkə, ngwafə.

siiwá -ə *n.* (*comp. from sii + wa*) compound where people are in mourning.
See asii 'at home.'

silima *v.i. and v.t. (vn. sílímánə)* [*< F.*] become a Muslim.

sood *id.* See soodə.

soodə *v.i. (vn. sóodónə)* miss and pass by head (of thing thrown at someone's head).

súunà *n. (action n.)* [*< F.*] coveting, desiring (= maa'wunə).

təəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təəmənə)* fish. kyaama (motion to speaker ext.).

təəmbá -ə *n.* 1. kapok tree, H. rimi. 2. kapok.

təəmbətəəmbà *adj. n.* kapok-like, downy (of chicks). See təəmba.

təərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təərənə)* 1. look over thoroughly, examine. 2. go regularly to look at one's farm. See tsaamə.

tə *gr. form.* definite (specific) direct object marker.

təba' *id.* See təba'a.

təba'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təbà'ənə)* press flat hand against something. See dala.

təbúsəm *adj. id.* refusing to talk because of anger.

təbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təbəná)* 1. taste. 2. test. See təkə, ndəhwadə, ndaəbə.

tədə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tédənə)* 1. stretch something, stretch self. 2. pull rope. See ələ.

tədə́ *n.* bow string (= təŋa, tsənə).

tədə́yáwú *adj. id.* tall and thin (of trees only).

təfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təfənə)* 1. skin an animal. See sədə, wunə.
2. təfyagi 'cut open (an animal) and take out something.' 3. təfyagi ayiibya 'forgive a wrong someone has committed against you.' See baa. 4. tyaafa (iter. and motion to speaker ext.) 'take out (of pot).' See ngaazha. 5. eat particles or powdery substance (such as flour). See adə.

təghədə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təghədə́nə)* push with an instrument or foot (but not with the hand). See dala, takədə.

təghəsə eight.

təghəsəpu'unə eighty.

təgúunə *n.* (= təgunənə, təgugunyinə) pitifulness, that which causes pity in the observer. nəngə (= nee) təguunə nga ənda 'feel pity for a person' Mark 1:41.

təhurə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təhúrənə)* (= təkurə).

təhúrəbá *n.* type of rat (large, meat eaten).

təhwá -ə *n. (pl. tihinə)* 1. horse. See ngwarəgwa. 2. type of fish.

təhwánə *n.* small stream. a təhwa 'at the stream.'

tə'i *non-verbal pred.* there is, there are.

təkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təkánə)* 1. divide, divide up, separate. See sii, gwatə, paara, saapə, tara. təkə bəra'i 'divide in two.' mi təkəe ka tii kwa? 'what is the difference between them?' pooshi magəra ka təkənə da zala. 'no shepherd can get along without his staff.' 2. distribute portions. 3. disperse, go off in different directions. See pəyaŋə.

təkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təkəná)* taste. See təbə, ndaabə.

təkəsəsək *adj. (= kəsəkəs)* thick (of liquid).

təkulh *id.* See təkulhə.

təkulhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təkúlhnə)* tie a knot. See anyi.

təkúnə *n.* darkness. See təkutəku 'dark.'

təkurə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təkúrənə)* (= təhurə) 1. spend a lot of time in another place before returning. 2. spend a lot of time in doing something. 3. təkuree (= təhuree) 'be unable, cannot do.' See mbee.

təkúrák *adj.* round.

təkúráká'á *adj. n.* roundish. See təkurərəkə.

təkúrinə *n. (action n.)* resting chin on supporting hand. kə kii ci təkurinə 'he propped his chin up.'

təkútəku *adj.* dark. See təkunə.

təkutsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təkútsənə)* stumble, trip, stub toe. See pu'u, tsəkwa, ləda.

tələ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tələnə)* 1. make hole in something. 2. get hole in. kə tələgi yankaya. 'the trousers ripped open.'

tələbwa -ə *n.* white insect (like lice) which infests chickens.

təlhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təlhənə)* sew.

təmbədə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təmbədʔə)* strain to reach for something.

təmbúrə'i *adj.* round.

təmbúrəm *adj. id.* (= təbusəm).

təmbwáŋ *adj.* small and easy to lift.

təmbwáshí *adj.* (= timbyas) small, young (of child 1–5 years old).

təndəshí *adj.* small (of cassava only).

təŋətəŋ *adj. id.* held firmly in hand or embrace, firmly packed.

təŋəzhí *adj. id.* held firmly.

təŋá *n.* bow string (= tədā, tsənə).

təŋa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təŋánə)* 1. (usu. təŋapaa) prevent, hinder, forbid.
2. refuse to give. See naana.

təŋgúləŋ *v. id.* 1. falling (of dry log, dead tree, etc.) 2. dying.

təntənwá *n.* lower leg of cow (= cacakwa).

tənwà -ə *n.* grinding stone.

təpəcíŋ *v. id.* arriving.

təpəlám *adj. id.* completely dark.

təpəlám *v. id.* meeting unexpectedly.

tərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təránə)* (= kərə).

tərəd *id.* See tərədə.

tərədə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tərédʔə)* 1. twist (rope or hair). See mya'a, tsavədə. 2. stir something thick. See gwazə, kələbə. 3. churn or be upset (of stomach). See shankufə.

tərá'í *adj. id.* quiet.

tərálhám *adj. id.* completely closed.

tərəlhá' *adj. id.* closed (only of a door closed by horizontally stacked sticks).

tərəvus *id.* See tərəvusə.

tərəvusə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tərəvúsə)* crawl like a crippled person with paralyzed legs. See dəbarə, dabangə.

tərəzá -ə *n.* type of tree with edible red fruit.

tərasə'u *id.* (= təravus) See verb.

tərasə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təràsə'únə)* (= təravusə).

təryá'ú *adj.* (= tyá'u) narrow.

təshí *adj. id.* completely finished.

tətəyá *n.* type of tree.

tə'úts *v. id.* break off a piece of mush (ɖafəna)

tə'ülhíhík *adj.* gummy, sticky.

təwánə *n.* concave wooden block on which pots are shaped.

təzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. təzəná)* (= ndəzə).

ta *conj.* or. ta ... ta ... either ... or

ta *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tánə)* 1. pick out, choose. See taɖə. 2. burst open, crack open. See ənlhə, əɖi, tsa. 3. ta kunwanə 'go first, lead.' 4. teegi 'give it to me, give me one.' See və. 5. ta na 'become mature or wise.' See matanə. 6. pass waste. ta fiirənə 'pass urine.' ta ənvwiinə 'pass feces.' ta ənfwanə 'break wind.'

ta da ma (patə) *adv.* everywhere.

tāabíɖiwá *n. (action n.)* completing something.

tāabú'ù *adv.* (= kaabu'u) before.

taadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. taadənə)* wipe up a liquid, wipe nose, wipe away tears.

taahə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. táahənə)* 1. cut in straight line. See la. 2. stand with legs far apart. See kihə.

táakwà -ə *n.* [< F.] trouble (= ciɖa).

táangúɖá *n.* chameleon.

táanyìnyá -ə *n.* type of bird (small, dark brown, nests on ground).

taapu'unə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. taapu'unə)* 1. grind flour a second time. See əɖə. 2. chew cud (of cow).

taarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. táarənə)* 1. work together at the same task. See davəra. 2. share use of something (such as a tool). 3. pass food or drink around to be shared.

taara *v.i. and v.t. (vn. táarənə)* 1. encircle something, make circle, draw circle. See kərə'u. 2. break up a fight.

- tàariĩrĩnə *n.* (*action n.*) turning round and round until dizzy. See taara.
- taasə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. táasə́nə)* sweep. See lhəba, kwaarə.
- taaska *v.i. and v.t. (vn. taaskanə)* [*< F.*] get ready, prepare.
- táasə́nə *n.* type of plant.
- táatákùlhá -ə *n.* type of edible root, H. tumuku (Abraham: *coleus dysentericus*).
- tàatàrà'úmà *n.* wives of the chief. (This word occurred in a song).
- táatyà *n.* (*action n.*) teaching child to walk by leading it by the hands.
- tàavivìkwá *n.* dragon fly.
- tàavúvùgìnkì *n.* (*comp. from taavuvu (?) + ginə*) children's game like blind-man's bluff.
- tá'a *gr. form.* surely not? (final particle used in certain rhetorical questions). ka dzə́nə nə hə tá'a? (surely you are not going, are you?—i.e., that would be a bad thing to do)'
- tá'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tà'ànà)* 1. (usu. ta'avə) stay, remain someplace. See mbə́də. 2. tá'a da d'anə 'keep on doing.'
- tabə́d *id.* See tabə́də.
- tabə́də *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tàbəd'ə́nə)* 1. wind. See cikə, hə, tsavə́də. 2. make string.
- tábà *n.* [*< F.*] tobacco.
- tábá -ə *n.* gift for reconciliation (= mbad'a).
- táḅ *adj. id.* held firmly in hand.
- táḅsá *n.* [*< F. tasba*] type of plant (soup made from leaves). Taylor: *cassia tora*.
- tàbátàbák *adj.* gummy, sticky.
- tabee *interjection.* "ha, that serves you right."
- tàḅúsə́bús *v. id.* moving of many people or animals in a group.
- tádàdá *n.* type of fish (brown, small, not eaten).
- tadə́ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tád'ə́nə)* choose or pick out carefully (judiciously). See ta.
- təfulakə́ *v.i. (vn. tàfùlákə́nə)* be permanently weak. See kutsafə, matafulaka, zafə.

- taga *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tágánə)* [< F.] create, make. See *ɗa*.
- tàgùɗá *n.* type of snake (large, lives near water, not poisonous). See *rəhunə*.
- tàgùnàkà *n.* woman's bracelet (ivory or metal).
- tàgùrá -ə *n.* type of tree (edible baseball-sized green fruit).
- táí *adj. id.* full.
- táhú *adj.* right, proper.
- takəɗə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tàkəɗánə)* 1. press with both hands in back and forth motion (as when washing cloths or grinding). See *dala*, *təghəɗə*.
2. rub between hands (as to remove dirt). See *kuhə*. 3. rub eye.
- takənə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tàkənənə)* 1. shake head side to side to say 'no' or to express amazement. See *kəkəmə*. 2. rinse out container with splashing motion (= *shakənə*).
- tàkə̀rə̀má -ə *n.* hoe handle.
- takə̀rə́ *id.* See *takə̀rə́'a*.
- takə̀rə́'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tàkə̀rə́'ánə)* 1. roll, roll over. See *ɗalaŋə*. 2. roll into rolls or balls (of clay, mud, dough, etc.). See *kaɓə*, *ngaɓə*.
- tàkə̀rə́rəká -ə *n.* stone against which end of stick is twirled when spinning cotton thread. See *takə̀rə́'a*.
- tàkùjìgwàɗɗákù -ə *n.* type of bird (= *shaarəduugə*).
- tàkùrənə *n.* (= *ndzələkəda*).
- tàkùrəsá *n.* partridge.
- tàkùtəkùrənə *n.* type of mythical snake (said to have heads on both ends of body; seeing one is said to bring death to close relative).
- takwa *gr. form.* (= *wa*) hortative marker. See section 4.6.
- tàkwàrá *n.* fist-sized piece of meat.
- tálə̀bwáshánə *n.* type of plant.
- táləkúsh *interjection.* used when driving away animals.
- tálələlələ́inə *n.* type of grasshopper. See *ayiwa*.
- tala *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tálánə)* sharpen metal tool by pounding edge (of small tools only). See *ndaarə*, *twalya*, *ɓərə*.
- tálál *adj. id.* (= *talala*) very white.

tálála *adj. id.* (= talal).

talhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tãlhəná)* make sauce from dried leaves. See da, usə.

tãmbáŋ *adj.* crooked or lame (of foot). See verb.

tambaŋə *v.i. (vn. tãmbáŋənə)* have a crooked or lame foot.

tãmbìrədáfànə *n.* (= tãmbərìdʔyadʔyanə) type of smooth-skinned lizard.

tãmpwàlìitãmwá -ə *n.* (= tãmpwalii) tadpole.

tãmpyápyálhá *n.* gecko (= tankyalha).

tãmwá -ə *n.* 1. swelling on forehead. 2. something belonging to someone else. *kə zhimə ci tamwa* 'he stole something not his own.'

tãndəndərənə *n.* type of millipede (larger than ngurəngurənə, can cause painful inflammation of skin).

tãndãbwá *n.* type of edible leaf.

tãndzà *n.* type of bird (small, red in the rainy season, brown in the dry season).

tãngərèzhánə *n.* type of animal (like squirrel or weasel).

tãngàlá *n. (inher. poss., body part)* side. a tangala 'beside.'

tãngárá *n.* young male goat. See əhwa.

tãngudəh *id.* See tangudəhə.

tãngudəhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tãngudəhənə)* bend, bow. See gwaŋə.

tãngúlh *v. id.* skidding. See dangulh.

tãngwá'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tãngwá'ánə)* shake grain in calabash to remove chaff. See bu'u, kəca'a.

tãngwátãngwá *n.* type of thorn tree.

tãnhínhyá -ə *n.* type of bird (small, black, builds nests with cotton).

tãnkìrá *n.* type of bird (red and blue wings, long tail, short beak, many colors).

tãnkúr *adj. id.* much, many.

tãnkúr *v. id.* 1. rising of smoke or dust. 2. gathering of people.

tãnkýálhá *n.* gecko (= tãmpyápyálhá).

tãnkýárá *n.* soot. See dadanyinə, makiirənə.

tãntányínə *n.* truth. (= əntanyinə) tantanyinə ta'a 'it's true, I swear.'

tàntájá -ə *n.* bell.

taŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tàŋəná)* 1. cross, cross over. 2. run away, flee. See hwiiipaa.

tara *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tàránə)* 1. make different, distinguish, differentiate between. See təkée.

tárará'i *adj.* right, proper, good.

tàràránə *n.* good person, thing or word.

tàrí *v. id. (= dari)* 1. turning 2. changing.

tárùlétə *n.* snail, snail shell. See uudaləma, mədəbwaka.

tás *v. id.* coming untied.

táshə *n.* type of children's sickness with skin rash.

táshákwanə *n.* chicken's gizzard.

tásh *v. id.* hitting lightly.

tàtərángizá *n.* flower of the locustbean tree. See rənə.

tatarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tátárənə)* cut something so that it ends up in one long strip. See la.

táts *v. id.* cutting off completely, cutting in two.

tàwùlāwúdiinə *n.* type of leaf (used as compress to treat guinea worm).

tawurə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tàwúrənə)* 1. go repeatedly. See jikə. 2. wave sleeves of gown while dancing.

tenə (= tyənə, toonə) one (form used in counting). See rənwu.

tìbìsá -ə *n.* metal. See gwararəwa, əndzənə, ðijija.

tifi *id.* See verb.

tifi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tìfíná)* spit. See fəshi, vushi, gə, girənə.

tíinə *n.* (= kiinə).

tíisà *n.* guinea worm.

tìkátìkár *adj.* dirty.

tìkísá *n.* star.

tílháj *v. id. (= tsəlav)* dripping.

tímbílim *adj.* small (of pots only).

tímbyás *adj.* (= tãmbwashi).

tínkálhátínkálhá *v. id.* walking slowly with head swaying from side to side.

tínkís *adj. id.* many (of things close together).

tínjátínj *adj.* (= tãjãtãj, tãjãtãjã) tied well, firmly fastened.

típã *adj. id.* 1. full (of stomach). 2. embedded in something (such as thorn in flesh). 3. engaged in a task which one refuses to leave.

típ *v. id.* 1. arriving. 2. driving in completely (of nail).

típãrím *adj. id.* very swollen.

tondoŋ *adj.* having curved shape like raised tail. See tondoŋã.

tondoŋã *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tãndõŋãñã)* raise tail. See shangãdã, shawudã.

tõndõná *n.* type of ant (yellow, medium-sized, likes sugar). See kanshagya.

tõolyáh *v. id.* stepping over something.

toorã *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tãoorãñã)* pull on or pull up a running vine. See mbudã.

tõoshãgãkyã *adj. n.* neglectful of responsibilities.

tõozhõozhá *n.* person who refuses to quit a fight.

tõtõlhĩĩñã *n.* (= totõlhĩĩñã) type of musical instrument made from two mahogany seed pods tied to each end of short rope.

tsãeku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsããkũñã)* encourage someone to fight against a third party.

tsããmã *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsããmãñã)* gather many things into one place. See fãdã, dzaadza, tsãkã.

tsãærã *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsããrãñã)* 1. tear, strip off. See tsa. 2. cut channel by erosion (of water).

tsããrà -ã *n. (lower dialect, = tsiira).* hoe. See takãrãma.

tsãbúk *id.* in a squatted position. See tsãbukã.

tsãbukã *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsãbũkãñã)* squat.

tsãbã *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsãbãñã)* eat (hard food that must be chewed). See adã, ndzaku, zãmã.

tsãbúk *adj.* collected into a plie.

- tsəfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəfə́nə)* lie in wait for prey, wait in hiding. See dəkə, maaba, umbə.
- tsəfəku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəfəkú́nə)* pound (esp. food or grain) in mortar or on grinding stone. See dægə, tsəraku.
- tsəfákə *n.* early morning (approx. 4–6 a.m.).
- tsəfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəfə́nə)* 1. tsəfə ma'ínə 'heat water.' matsəfəkii 'hot (of water.)' See əbwa. 2. tsəfə nwunyínə 'sleep.' See baa.
- tsəghə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəghə́nə)* wash. See kuḃə, ḃəzə, tsəghə, yíḃə.
- tsəgwee *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəgwéenə)* (stem occurs only with –ee ext.) do quickly, be quick, hurry. See kwasə, wadə.
- tsəkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəká́nə)* 1. gather together, collect. See dzaadza, fəḃə, tsəmə. 2. tsəkəgi ciiínə 'strike hands together to express anger.'
- tsəkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəkə́nə)* 1. collect tax. 2. pay tax (?).
- tsəkám *v. id.* encountering someone unexpectedly.
- tsəká –ə *n.* tax. luu tsəkə 'collect tax.'
- tsəká' *adj. id.* 1. untouched, unused, just as it was left. 2. standing straight.
- tsəkúfínə *n.* (= tsəkufínə) foam, froth.
- tsəkut *id.* See tsəkutə.
- tsəkutə *v.i. (vn. tsəkútə́nə)* protrude up from the ground (of tree stump, termite hill, etc.).
- tsəkútsəkúwá *v. id.* following someone.
- tsəkwa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəkúwánə)* 1. pack full by pounding (usu. with the hand). See dægə. 2. butt heads together. See ndəgwa. 3. bump foot accidentally, stub toe. See ləḃə, təkutsə.
- tsəkúwá' *adj.* shaped like a 'block of salt' (round and elongated).
- tsəkúwák *adj. id.* unable to see.
- tsəkúwálhə –ə *n.* small hill of rocks.
- tsəkúwárá –ə *n.* metal tipped digging stick.
- tsəlál' *v. id.* dripping.
- tsəláká –ə *n.* toy reed whistle.

- tsəma *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsámánə)* pound on a hard object placed on a hard surface. See dəgə, dza, bwamə.
- tsánə *n.* bow string (= təda, təŋa).
- tsəŋa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsəŋánə)* 1. (= dzəŋa, ndzəŋa). 2. make a way impassable, block (road or stream). See pa'a.
- tsəp *adj. id.* closed firmly, completely covered.
- tsəpənə *n.* half of a calabash, pumpkin, or gourd.
- tsə̀rə̀húf *adj. id.* overlapping, very close.
- tsərəku *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsə́rəkú)* 1. pound in mortar. 2. remove husk from grain. See dəgə, tsə́fəku.
- tsərəngumu *id.* See verb.
- tsərəngumu *v.i. (vn. tsə̀rə̀ngúmə́nə)* curl up body (of snake, cat, etc.). See jigudəfə.
- tsə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsə́'únə)* keep in good repair (of house, farm, etc.).
- tsəva *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsə̀vánə)* 1. tie tightly, sew tightly closed. See anyi, tsə'a. 2. stretch skin over top of drum.
- tsəvu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsə̀vúná)* 1. cool liquid by pouring from container to container. See əpi, lərə. 2. start fight between two other people.
- tsəwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsə́wúnə)* castrate.
- tša *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsánə)* 1. tear. See tsəərə. 2. crack. See ta. 3. fence off, fence in. See tsanə.
- tsá *n.* place underneath anything. a tša 'under.'
- tsáá'ítsáá'yà *v. id.* (= dzaa'udzaa'wa) sound of grinding quickly.
- tsàakərá *n.* payment given to medicine man for services.
- tšaamə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsáamənə)* look at, watch. See ringədə, nəŋə, təərə, nee.
- tsàaná *n. (comp. from tsaa + na)* back of upper neck (= gərəntədənə).
- tsàanwá -ə *n.* east, "the direction rain comes from".
- tša' *id.* tied tightly. See tsə'a.
- tsə'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsə́'anə)* tie tightly, tighten something already tied. See anyi, tsəva.

tsa'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsà'áná)* hang on something protruding. (such as a nail).

See wahə.

tsaβəne *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsáβəne)* bite lower lip to express sorrow or grief.

tsáβá *n.* type of grass (tall, used to make mats, grows near water, reed?)
(= dzəβwa).

tsad *id.* See tsadə.

tsadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsádəne or tsàd'əná)* 1. bunch together with hands or arms and pick up. 2. pick up handful of particles or powder. See ngərə.

tsádádà -ə *n.* type of animal (like civet cat).

tsáfá -ə *n.* house in good repair in which no one lives.

tsah *id.* See tsahə.

tsahə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsàhəná)* 1. hoe or cultivate between sprouted plants. See budə, uuzə. 2. shave part of face leaving beard. See isə.

tsahu *id.* See verb.

tsahu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsàhúne)* 1. fashion from wood by carving or chopping. See burə. 2. knock off protruding part of stone.

tsakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsàkəne)* 1. increase. 2. take more. 3. tsakə akunwa 'proceed, go forward.' 4. help. See vala.

tsákárá'u *adj.* tall.

tsákátsák *v. id.* running quickly.

tsákàbá *n.* (= sakaba).

tsáláhà *v. id.* smiling.

tsalh *id.* See tsalhə.

tsalhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsálhəne)* trim, even up or smooth edge of something. See hərəsə.

tsámá *n. (comp.?)* daytime corral for goats.

tsáne *n.* fence (usually of thorns or sticks).

tsànfwá -ə *n. (comp. from tsa + ənfwa)* shade (of a tree). See məzangu'inə.

tsánj *adj. id.* being apart from the rest.

tsànkáyá *n.* magic needle said to be used by a witch to kill from a distance.

tsát *v. id.* grabbing and taking away quickly.

- tsàtsàrá -ə *n.* farm in which untilled space is left between rows.
- tsá'ú *v. id.* 1. do partly. 2. See verb.
- tsa'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsá'únə)* prune to improve shape (trees, plants, etc.). See la.
- tsav *id.* See tsavə.
- tsavə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsávəná)* pour small amount of liquid into container, add small amount of water or oil to cooking food. See əji, cirə, gə.
- tsavəf *id.* See tsavəfə.
- tsavəfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tsavəfənə)* 1. tangle, entangle. 2. twist two ropes together. See tərəfə. 3. wind up rope or string. See cirə, hə, tabəfə.
- tsèekwá *n.* type of bird (white and brown, long tail).
- tsót *v. id.* coming out quickly.
- tsúp *adj. id.* inverted, mouth down (of container).
- tswá' *v. id.* chopping.
- túdzəŋ *adj. id.* with a small amount remaining yet to be cut (of field of corn, hair on head, etc.).
- túfáləyí *adj. id.* very many.
- tufə five.
- tufəpu'unə fifty.
- túl *adj. id.* covered with dust.
- túl *v. id.* dust rising. See gudələ.
- tum *adv.* [*< F.*] always.
- túntúlhá -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* ankle.
- túp *adj. id.* sitting down.
- túts *v. id.* (= put) pull out something small.
- tuu *gr. form.* particle marking direct quotation. tə'i mainə a gəərə tuu bii Yada. 'what Yada said was quote, "there is water in the well".'
- tuu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. túunə)* kiwu (completive form). kiwa (motion to speaker ext.). 1. cry, weep. 2. have pity on someone (= nee ka təguunə). 3. howl (of animal). See ngiirə. 4. drip, seep. See kiinə, ləvə.

- túuzhíh *v. id.* turning around and going back.
- twálh *v. id.* 1. hitting of thrown object. 2. cracking knuckles.
- twalya *v.i. and v.t. (vn. twályànə)* 1. beat to sharpen (= tala). 2. throw spinning top onto back of hand. See ndzəghə.
- twátwà'àlínə *n.* seed of the baobab tree. See kuku'unə.
- tyá' *adj. id.* crowded (of a place).
- tyáfátyáf *v. id.* falling of light rain.
- tyák *adj. id.* (with negative) not at all.
- tyákwá *n.* coughing disease of children.
- tyál *adj. id.* firmly packed, stuffed.
- tyal *v. id.* sound of metal striking against metal.
- tyálátyál *adj. id.* 1. ripe and hard (of certain types of fruit). 2. very black.
- tyálh *adj. id.* of small amount (of liquid in container).
- tyálh *v. id.* 1. snapping of stick. 2. See tyalhə.
- tyalhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tyàlhánə)* 1. dip liquid from container. 2. transfer liquid from container to container by dipping. See gə, kəmbatsə, katsə.
- tyàlhyálhyà *adj. id.* very white.
- tyándéryá' *adj. id.* alone, being the only one.
- tyándéryályámə *adj. id.* very hard and dry.
- tyándíryáŋ *adj. id.* full (of stomach or tire).
- tyántyánwá *n.* musical instrument used at funerals consisting of a small hoe (rəmbilhya) and a pounding stone (mətsəma) which are struck together.
- tyánwú *v. id.* (= ndyanwu).
- tyáŋátyáŋ *adj. id.* (= təŋətəŋ).
- tyárátyár *adj. id.* (= tyalətyal) very black.
- tyás *adj. id.* finished completely.

tyatəryalh *id.* See tyatəryalhə.

tyatəryalhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. tyátəryálhəná)* make crackling sound (of fire or of food frying).

tyátyá' *adj. id.* many.

tyá'ú *adj.* (= tərəya'u) narrow.

ùcìká *n.* type of mouse or rat.

udzə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùdzəná)* dance. See kətsarə.

uf *id.* See ufə.

ufə *v.i. (vn. úfəná or ùfəná)* 1. rot or decay (of damp leaves). See bəlhə.
2. blow with force. See puu.

ùfínə *n.* (= uufinə) old vacant compound. səkə ufinə 'area of old compound.'

ùlá'ùlá *n.* type of insect (small, eats banciina and okra leaves, classed as davuranga).

úlh *adj. id.* very short.

umbə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùmbəná)* 1. hide. See dəkə, milhi, maaba, tsədə.
2. set on eggs (of hen). See cacalhə.

unə *pron.* you (2nd pers. pl.).

ùncítámínə *n.* (*comp. from* unci (?) + tə + minə) (*pl.* uuji makinə) young girl (under 15 years old).

ùndálh *adj.* short in length (of things, not of people).

ùndyáŋəundyáŋə *v. id.* digging in search of something.

ùndzə *irr. adj.* small. (*pl.* uuji).

ùndzədàadə *n.* (*comp. from* undzə + daadə) (*inher. poss. or reg. poss., kin. term*) parent's younger male sibling or cousin.

ùndzəyáyí *n.* (*comp. from* undzə + yaayi) (*inher. poss. or reg. poss., kin. term*) parent's younger female sibling or cousin.

unee *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùnéenə)* (stem occurs only with -ee ext.) leave, quit, stop doing. See bwasee, vuŋə.

únérədyá -ə *n.* [*< F.*] mortar (= indzəra).

untsə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùntsəná)* have sexual intercourse.

- ùntsá *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) penis.
- ùntsáləmánə *n.* (*comp.?*) kidney. Also called sə nga gayinə.
- upaa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. úpàanə)* (stem occurs only with -paa ext.) get, obtain. See luu.
- ùrəlákánə *n.* type of tree with edible red fruit.
- ùrəngálhénə *n.* (*comp. from urə + nga + alhinə*) sprained or turned ankle.
- uree *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ureenə)* touch. See ndaaḃə.
- ùrìŋá *n.* (= uuriŋa) type of mouse or rat.
- usə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. úsánə)* cook (esp. mush). See da, lhəkərə, mbəsə, sərə, yangələ, talhə, ndəḃakə, ndaḃakə, ndzəghə.
- ùsárá *n.* (= uusəra) 1. sun, sunshine. 2. day.
- ùsánə *n.* private parts of the body (called ha nga ayinə ashi ənda.)
- usatə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. úsátənə)* (stem occurs only with -tə ext.) keep on pestering, reminding or begging.
- utə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. útənə)* warm oneself. utə gunə 'warm oneself by the fire.' utə usəra 'warm oneself in the sun.' See ḃəraŋə.
- utərə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùtə̀rənə)* spread something out to dry. See ləkutə, huurə.
- utə'utə *adj. id.* warm. See utə.
- ùtá *n.* parasite of sheep and goats (like guinea worm).
- uudə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùudəná)* finish. kə uugi 'it's finished.' See moodənə, zəpə.
- ùudə̀fá -ə *n.* turtle, tortoise.
- ùudə̀má -ə *n.* spear.
- ùudə̀v́á -ə *n.* fig tree.
- ùudá *n.* pot. See pid'ya, fahuura, jaala, gəra, kwafa, doosa, kələra, da'afa, dadzəgudá, ḃura, dzəgara. óodà (< a + uuda) 'in the pot.'
- uudaŋə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùudáŋənə)* foolishly desire something small and unimportant. See suuna.
- uudə́ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùudə́ńá)* want, like, love. See nga'a, maa'u, moo.
- ùudə́fá -ə *n.* 1. center of tree. 2. (?) area of solar plexus. See modə́fa.

- ùdǎ̀lámá -ə *n.* type of snail shell (used as musical instrument, blown when jika is ripening). See taruletə.
- úug -ə *n.* (citation form ends in consonant) foreign village or region. a uug 'to a foreign village'. də uug 'from a foreign village.'
- uu'i *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùu'ínə)* say, tell. (used only as verbal noun or with complete aspect, but never occurs with aspect marker kə). uu'i Musa... 'Musa said...'. See ba, ənki.
- ùujínə *n.* 1. bee larva (= muujuujinə). 2. the coils of a snail shell.
- ùulámá -ə *n.* (*pl.* uuliminə) household fetish.
- uula *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùuláná)* fall over (of wall or hut only). See kula.
- ùulháká -ə *n.* (*upper dialect*, = ənlhaka) mouse's nest.
- uunə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùunəná)* (*lower dialect only?*, = wunə) open. moonəkii 'open.' See pilikə, pirəlhə.
- ùunəv́á -ə *n.* lake, swamp (This term applies only to the place called gəree-gəb near Lamurde).
- ùunkínə *n.* stalk of the guinea-corn plant.
- uurə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. úuránə or ùurəná)* 1. throw. uurəpaa 'throw down.' See ka, gudələ, vavə, vugədə. 2. find guilty (in court). 3. uurəgi agyanəkii 'he does not know what to do, he is at wits end.'
- uurəfə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. ùuráfánə)* become blind, be blind, make blind. moorəfəkii 'blind.' See muurəfa, wurəkə.
- ùuráfánə *vn.* blindness. See uurəfa.
- ùurá *n. (inher. poss., body part)* 1. neck, throat. 2. voice, language. (*reg. poss.*) uura ədiinə 'meaningless speech.' uura badawaanə 'careless irresponsible living.' See furəga.
- ùurámáyà -ə *n. (comp. from uura + ma + ya)* door of a compound, area before door of compound.
- úusérábwayiínə *n. (comp. from usəra + bwayiínə)* cloudy "red" weather.
- uusha *v.i. and v.t. (vn. uushanə)* hate, have contempt for someone, act arrogantly. See bəra.
- ùushànwu -ə *n. (comp. from uushi + a + nwa)* back ache.
- ùushàsákə -ə *n. (comp. from uushi + a + səkə)* stomach ache.
- úushi *n. (pl. uushi'inə)* thing. See sə.

- ùushígínə *n.* (*dead pl.?*) firewood. See shashi'inə, rinta.
 ùuvá *n.* (*pl.* uuviinə) a person of the Kanuri tribe.
 ùuvínə *n.* the Fali area of Vimtim, the people of Vimtim.
 ùu'yánə *n.* switch, whip made from branch. See kurəpa.
 ùuzánə *n.* (*pl.* manjeevinə) (*reg. poss., kin. term*) child. manjeevi asəngwəŋa
 'children of the hyena.' (note variant: manjeeviniya (from a story)).
 ùuzánátánwà -ə *n.* (*comp. from* uuzənə + tənwa) small grinding stone.
 uuza *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* ùuzáná) hoe, farm. See badzə, budə, kwangwarə,
 ngwarahə, tsahə, vahə, ra.
 ùuzànvwá -ə *n.* (*comp. from* uuza + ənvwa) communal farming
 (= əndzanə).
 ùvwá -ə *n.* tamarind tree, H. tsamiya.
 ùyá -ə *n.* (*pl.* uyiginə) sore, ulcer. əndə uyi kuzəna 'leper.'
 və *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vəná) (= vii) give. See dəecii, hwangi, shoogi, teegi.
 vədə da uusəra *adv.* night and day.
 vəd'əvəd'á *adv.* (= da vədə) at night, during the night.
 vədəhə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vəd'əhənə) get up from sleep. See madə.
 vəd'á -ə *n.* night.
 vələmá -ə *n.* traditional festival held in certain villages.
 vəlyànwá -ə *n.* type of insect (found inside groundnuts).
 vəná -ə *n.* rain.
 vərát *v. id.* gathering all up.
 vəránə *n.* village, hamlet, neighborhood.
 vərivəriginə *n.* (*comp. from* vərivəri + ginə) eyelash.
 vərív'ərinə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) eyebrow.
 va *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vəná) 1. grab or snatch at something, snatch and run
 away. See vaava, əsə, kəla, kətsa'u. 2. throw person or animal down by
 grabbing a foot and pulling. See uurə.
 vaana *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vāanánə) vomit.
 vāvá *n.* (*action n.*) scramble for something (= vaavanə). See va.

- vahə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* váhónə) make hill of earth (as when planting potatoes).
- vák *v. id.* grasping quickly with both hands.
- vala *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* valanə) [*< F.*] help. See tsakə.
- vasə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vásónə) 1. smoke animal out of hole. 2. operate bellows.
- vavərə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vavərənə) embrace someone. See əsə.
- váwú *adj.* wide and flat (of places).
- váwú *v. id.* pouring much liquid.
- váyí *adj. id.* full to top and level (of non-liquid).
- vbúb *v. id.* hitting one blow.
- vbyawu *v. id.* 1. hitting with whip. 2. melting of fat.
- vbá' *v. id.* hitting with long cornstock.
- vii *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* viinə) (= və) give. (This stem does not change for completive, takes no suffix for imperative, and never occurs with extensions.)
- viizəná *n.* owl.
- viliku *id.* See verb.
- viliku *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* viíikúnə) poke, poke eye. See dzəðə, jiku.
- vinda *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vindanə) [*< F.*] write.
- virəli'u *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* virəli'únə) (= viri'u).
- virít *adj. id.* tightly tied.
- virí'u *id.* See verb.
- virí'u *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* virí'únə) (= virəli'u) draw up, purse up, shrink up (of eyes closed tightly, old person's mouth, cut when it heals, etc.). See cimú'u.
- vítəvít *v. id.* stitching.
- víú *v. id.* drink all in one drought.
- vízəgúnə *n.* (*comp. from vizə + gunə*) place where the grass has been burned.
- vovər *id.* See vovərə.
- vovərə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vòvəránə) partly singe (of hair, leaves, etc.). See vuu.

vuci *id.* (= wuci) See verb.

vuci *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vùcínə) (= wuci).

vugəd *id.* See vugədə.

vugədə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vugədənə) throw far away. See ka, uura.

vugədəgədəgəd *v. id.* See vugədə.

vúh *v. id.* 1. pulling (of stick from bundle). 2. dragging heavy object a short distance.

vuj *id.* See vujə.

vujə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vujənə) leave, run away from home. See bwasee, unee.

vùḡəvùḡá *n.* type of insect (large *davuraḡa*).

vúr *v. id.* (= vuz) moving through the air (of a thrown stone).

vúrə́nə *n.* 1. type of tree (with thorns and poisonous fruit used to take hair from hides). 2. (*action n.*) trill of voice made by women. See wa.

vùrə́shínə *n.* liver. See wurə́shínə.

vùrávùráđ *adj. id.* wide open or protruding (of eyes only).

vús *v. id.* (= lus).

vushi *id.* See verb.

vushi *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vùshínə) 1. spit out mouthful of something. 2. be blown in (of rain). See fəshi, tifi, wuci.

vút *adj. id.* held firmly. See vutə.

vutə *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vùténə) hold something firmly with hands (such as when holding a chicken so that it does not get away).

vù'únə *n.* type of root crop (like *taatəkulha*).

vuu *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vúunə) singe hair from meat before cooking, singe leaves from guinea-corn stalk. See vovə́ə, hənə, ətsa.

vù'yák *v. id.* taking a large bite.

vúz *v. id.* (= vur).

vwáđà -ə *n.* swelling on a tree.

vwa'a *v.i. and v.t.* (*vn.* vwà'ánə) (= mbə́lhaḃə) 1. squash flat (?). See ndwa'afə. 2. dent. See mbwa'afə.

vwás *v. id.* moving through the air (of a stone thrown lightly). See **vur**.

vwaz *id.* See **vwazə**.

vwazə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. vwàzəná)* push back dirt like a rodent digging. See **vwazhinə, ra**.

vwàzhí *adj. id.* bent over with bare bottom exposed.

vwàzhinə *n.* dirt which has been pushed out of a hole by animal. See **vwazə**.

vyágúrágúr *adj.* thin, sparse (of hair or grass).

vyakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. vyákəná)* put on (tie on) loin covering (**bantyaara**). See **nga**.

vyaku *adj. id.* hot (?).

vyályáwá *n.* type of walking stick (used by old men, has small fork at top).

vyánə *n.* rainy season (= **deevyanə**).

vyàŋá *n.* animal whisker.

vyàwá -ə *n. (action n.)* swinging.

wa *gr. form.* (= **takwa**) hortative marker. See section 4.6.

wa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wánə)* yell out, make noise with voice. See **vurənə, kawawanə, wazə**.

wá -ə *n.* death, funeral, corps. See **kawa**.

wáandù *n.* [**< F.**] red monkey. See **aɗaya, dangwara, maabwa**.

wàaŋá -ə *n.* type of hornless antelope-like animal.

wa' *id.* See **wa'a**.

wa'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wà'áná)* 1. sow by broadcasting seed. See **ləga, giira**.
2. throw particles. See **wuci**.

wabə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wàbəná)* speak. See **ba**.

wáɓəná *n.* speech, word. See **wabə**.

wabəwaba *interjection.* used when straining to lift something.

wádyàlyá -ə *n.* (non-final form: **wadyalə**) bolt of woven cotton cloth (four inches wide by many feet long).

wadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wáɗəná)* work quickly. See **tsəgwee, kwasə**.

wágəná *n.* type of ant (small, stings).

- wáh *adj. id.* hanging over something. See wahə.
- wahə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wàhəná)* hang clothing over a line. See tsa'a, baarə.
- wàhá *n.* having relatives who supply one's needs and give one gifts.
- wàjìhəminə *n. (= wajihya) (action n.)* sneeze.
- wak *id.* See wakə.
- wakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wákəná)* open up by pushing apart (such as grass or hair). See wunə.
- wàkədákínə *n. (action n.)* making a mistake in ignorance.
- wànə *adv.* this year.
- wánə *n.* traditional festival held at the end of harvest.
- wàngá' *adj. id.* dry (of trees or grass).
- wánjäləbēetə -ə *n.* mythical animal (used to scare children).
- wányínə *n.* time, era, epoch. See saa'ya.
- wárəwár *v. id.* 1. coming untied. 2. sound of snake moving.
- wàríjəríj *adj.* translucent, thin enough to be seen through.
- wátà *gr. form. (= gwata)* only. wata bagiinə makə 'only three sheep.'
- wáv *v. id.* splashing water on self while bathing.
- wáwá' *adj. id.* talkative. See wa.
- wáyí *gr. form.* surely, certainly. See weewee.
- wazə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wàzəná)* make noise (of any kind for some duration), shout at someone repeatedly. See wa, vurənə.
- wázá *n.* victory song sung after battle.
- wéewée *gr. form. (= wayiwayi)* it is certain that.... See kurəsə, wayi.
- wii *v.i. (vn. wíinə)* walk. waya (motion to speaker ext.). See dəba, mbərə, rarəgə.
- wiigə'i *v.i. (vn. wiigə'inə) (= wiigii)* (only used as vn. ?) go for a walk, stroll.
See wii.
- wù *gr. form.* who. nga wu 'whose.'
- wuci *id.* See verb.

- wuci *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wùcíná)* (= vuci) throw particles, spray liquid. See wa'a, giirə, uurə, gudələ, kutələ.
- wudə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wúďónə)* 1. take oath on a fetish. 2. undergo trial by fetish. See jidə, lhəma, uuləma.
- wúďá -ə *n.* formal oath (usu. sworn on a lhəma fetish). See wudə.
- wuk *v. id.* leaving someone alone.
- wúkənə *n.* type of bird (size of dove).
- wulh *id.* See wulhə.
- wulhə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wúlhnə)* 1. get off the road, leave the path. 2. make way for someone on the road.
- wúlíz *adj. id.* very red.
- wunə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wúnənə)* (= uunə) 1. open. See pilikə, pirəlhə, wakə. 2. turn container right side up. 3. remove bark from tree. See sədə, təfə.
- wùpyá *n.* type of bird (white, nocturnal, easy to catch).
- wúr *gr. form.* indeed, there is no doubt about it (sentence final particle). See hawur.
- wurə *v.i. (vn. wùrəná)* go somewhere or go do something early in the morning.
- wurək *id.* See wurəkə.
- wurəkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wùrəkənə)* become temporarily blind from glare of bright light. See uurəfə.
- wurəna *v.i. and v.t. (vn. wúrənənə)* give food to animals or people, feed. See adə.
- wùrəshínə *n.* (= vurəshinə, urəshinə, rə'ushinə) liver (*reg. poss.*).
- wùrəwùrém *adj.* hard (of food that is not cooked enough).
- wúralálà *v. id.* (= gəra'alala) sound of stone wall falling down.
- wyáa' *v. id.* vomiting.
- 'wa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. 'wánə)* call to someone. See ba.
- 'wə' *adj. id.* very bright.
- 'wa' *v. id.* breaking into laughter.
- 'wáí *v. id.* cracking open.

'wàlhyák *adj. id.* very white.

'wánə *n.* (*inher. poss., body part*) breast, milk.

'watə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. 'wátánə)* start, begin. See əsə, fudə.

'wâtá -ə *n.* bean, beans.

'wá'wá *n.* (= 'wya'wya) type of fish (catfish?).

'wá'wíinə *n.* (*dead pl.*) small bell worn on clothing or string.

'wíikùzəná -ə *n.* (*comp. from uyi + kuzəna*) leprosy.

ya *prep.* (= yada) without.

yá -ə *n.* compound.

yaafa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yáafánə)* [*< F.*] forgive. See təfə, baa.

yaamə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yáamánə)* 1. wash and rinse (of guinea-corn, rice, etc.). See kuḃə. 2. search in water with hand. See alə.

yàaŋá -ə *n.* type of fish, H. tarwadə, (Abraham: 'African catfish,' *claria*).

yada *prep.* (= ya) without.

yádà *n.* name given to twelfth child.

yadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yadənə)* 1. harvest by cutting or chopping down (esp. guinea-corn). See burə, lhaamə. 2. fall out (of hair), fall off (of tree blossom). See kula.

yahəra'a *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yáhərà'ánə)* experience pain in the eye caused by the presence of a foreign object. kə yahəra'a ginki tə nyi. 'my eye hurts (me).' See ḏa, jilə, zəmə.

yáhóorá *n.* small axe used by women. See rəha.

yá'ì *interjection.* eureka! (said when one finds something).

yàkwá (= ya saŋa)

yangələ *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yángəlánə)* 1. cook meat until tasty. See da, mbəsə, usə. 2. refine oil by heating.

yángóyáŋ *adj. id.* lying on back.

yànkáyá *n.* trousers.

yàsàŋá *interjection.* (= ya kwa) said when about to address someone.

yata *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yátánə)* [*< F.*] thank.

- yávə̀nà *n.* (*comp. from ya + və̀na*) person who is able to make rain.
- yì *gr. form.* (= yitə, yitiitə, i, itə, itiitə) See *i*.
- yíḃə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yíḃə́nə)* 1. bathe. See kuḃə. 2. lose all leaves (of tree).
See gwahə.
- yidə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yídə́nə)* become scattered, scatter (of animals or people).
See yirə, gudələ, kuzhidə.
- yífá *n.* distended stomach.
- yigəḏ *id.* See yigəḏə.
- yigəḏə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yigəḏə́nə)* turn many things loose. See pərə, pitə, mbərəḏə.
- yirə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yírə́nə)* 1. become scattered (= yidə). 2. spoil, ruin, do poor quality work. See bəzə, saawa.
- yiləm *v. id.* putting something into liquid.
- yinwa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yinwá́nə)* (= yinwu) 1. dip into (= cinwu, cimu'u, shinwu). 2. rinse after washing (?). See kuḃə.
- yínwá -ə *n.* cave.
- yinwu *id.* See verb.
- yinwu *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yinwú́nə)* (= yinwa).
- yip *id.* See yipə.
- yipə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. yípə́nə)* submerge in water. See lipə, ciləpə.
- yír *adj.* all living (said of a family in which no children have died).
- yíráŋ *adj. id.* transparent.
- yivu *v. id.* sound of steady trickle of water.
- yóonà -ə *n.* type of bird (black, smaller than dove).
- 'ya *v.i. and v.t.* See ḏa, i.
- 'ya'a ḏaya *interjection.* "you don't expect me to believe that do you!"
- 'yángóláŋ *v. id.* (= 'yangəlas) falling down (of people and animals).
- 'yángólás *v. id.* 1. (= 'yangəlaŋ). 2. dried up.
- 'yàràfúkà *n.* person who gets mad when teased.
- 'yá'yàh *adj.* lazy, slow.

- 'yà'yímə *interjection*. said to express dismay at misfortune.
- zəgəðdānā -ə *n.* (*lower dialect*) rare or mythical animal (like leopard).
- zəgám *adj. id.* very big (of gown).
- zəgá *n.* type of tree, H. d'inya, (Abraham: *vitez cienkowskii*), or its fruit. See myaḏa.
- zəh *adj.* egg-shaped.
- zəkutə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zəkútánə)* (= zənkutə) nod head when sleepy. See kəkəmə.
- zəkù'i *gr. form.* (= zəku'u) used in ma'a zəku'i 'not yet.'
- zəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zəməná)* 1. eat. See adə, tsəḃə. 2. win (= ḏa nwanwuunə). 3. cheat someone, neglect to pay debt. 4. extract payment from someone. 5. inherit. See mazəməya.
- zəmə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zəmánə)* experience pain. See ḏa, bərakə, jilə, peepiḏə, yahəra'a, zərəkə.
- zəmə -ə *n.* food. See zəmə.
- zəmakə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zəməkánə)* hunt (= alə ləwa). See məzəməka.
- zəmbwáŋ *adj. id.* long and protruding (such as the mouth of a dog).
- zənə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zənánə)* 1. smell something, perceive odor. See fa. 2. have an odor (good or bad). mazənəkii 'having an odor.'
- zəndáh *adj.* big, fat (of stomach or bag).
- zəndárəŋ *adj.* long, large and wide.
- zənkutə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zənkútánə)* (= zəkutə).
- zəŋa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zəŋánə)* begin growing, undergo earlier stages of growth or development. See na.
- zəp *id.* See zəpə.
- zəpə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zəpánə)* 1. make an all out effort to finish a task. See paka'a. 2. finish, complete. See uudə.
- zərə'i *adj. id.* many.
- zərək *id.* (= zərəkəka'a) See zərəkə.
- zərəkə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zərákánə)* throb with pain. See ḏa, jilə, zəmə.
- zərázərə *n.* mat awning or shed. See ədzawa, kwapata.

- zətətīiná -ə *n.* type of snake (brown and green, harmless).
- zə'u *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zə'únə)* (= zh'i) 1. turn. 2. turn into, become. See ndzaa. 3. translate.
- zəvwá *n.* man with only one testicle.
- zəvwá -ə *n.* grove, place where there are lots of trees.
- zə'wá -ə *n.* rope.
- zázək *adj.* heavy. *da zázək* 'test the weight (of something).'
- zəzəká *n.* type of bat (large, lives in trees). See pwapwata.
- zəzəni *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zəzəniinə)* make noises in sleep (not talking). See səni.
- za *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zánə)* 1. become lost, disappear, lose. *kə zii daraaki* 'my hat is lost.' 2. die. See əntə. 3. forget. *kə zaanə* (= zee, = zii) *ka ci* 'he forgot (lit. it became lost to him).' 4. *zavə* 'become stuck.' See dzəŋa.
- zaanə *v.i. and v.t.* See za.
- záanwánə *n.* 1. large net for catching animals. 2. spider's web.
- zaarə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. záarənə)* get tired, be tired. *zaariiku kwa?* 'are you tired?' See zafə.
- zàará -ə *n.* long pole.
- zaawa *v.i. and v.t. (vn. záawánə)* go around something.
- zábá -ə *adj. n.* (= zaβ) 1. useless, vain. 2. free.
- zadə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zádəənə)* 1. thatch a roof. See əndzadə. 2. cover. See pa'a.
- zafə *v.i. and v.t. (vn. záfənə)* become very weak, become very tired. See zaarə, tafalakə.
- zəgənyínə *n.* (occurs only in pl.) the traditional village elders: kaigama, lhyadima, birima, kadalafərə.
- zálá *n.* club, heavy stick used as weapon.
- záláwáandù *n.* (*comp. from zala + waandu*) type of tree with long fruit like a zala.
- záná *n.* So-and-so (male). (= dagwaana) See əndzəgənə, gee, sh'i.
- zár *adj. id.* (= zarawu) long and thin (of rope or thread).
- záráwu *adj. id.* (= zar).

záwú *adj.* long and straight.

zàzálkwà *n.* (*phonologically irr.*, also zàzálókwà) cowrey shell.

zàzèná *n.* (= zaazəna) worm.

zha *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zhánə)* do again, repeat. (stem always occurs with motion to speaker ext. and with some form of ənə) ənə ka zha (= ənə ka zhatə). ga ha ənə ka zha sətə d̄ii hə ma'a 'do not repeat what you did any more.' See ənə, jikə.

zhàmú *adj. id.* sitting on someone to hold him down.

zhàtàná -ə *n.* salt. See ßurəzhatana, kərəbə'wa.

zhàtànásárà *n. (comp. from zhatanə + nasara)* white salt.

zhìgwá *n.* placenta (= məhwīnə).

zhìiná *n.* squirrel.

zhìi *v.i. and v.t. (vn. zhì'ínə)* (= zə'u).

zhìkwàngá *n.* type of bird (black, smaller than crow).

zhìmèká -ə *n.* woman's storage hut.

zhìmbèḏá -ə *n. (inher. poss., body part)* 1. naval. 2. umbilical cord.
3. handle on doosa. See Kwazhimbəḏa.

zhìnwùná *n.* type of bird (large, black, large beak).

zhìnyínə *n.* 1. bark of giwa tree (used in sauce). 2. type of plant (sticky like bark of giwa, used to harden dirt floors).

zhír *adj.* inclined, slopped.

zhìrá *n.* hawk.

zhìzhim *adj. id.* (= zhizhigəm) many (of people or monkeys sitting).

zīi *adj. id.* many (of things spread out in disarray).

zòovəná *n.* guinea fowl.

zùuvá -ə *n.* pool or pond surrounded by large trees.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Abraham, R.C. 1962. *Dictionary of the Hausa Language*, 2nd edition. London: University of London Press.
- Anonymous. 1970. *Wanyana nga Gude (Gude Songbook)*. Kaélé, Cameroun: Église Fraternelle Luthérienne. (mimeo.)
- Anonymous. 1974. *Dzəgunuu Janganə (Learn to Read in Gude)*, 3 books with teachers notes. Jos, Nigeria: Institute of Linguistics.
- Anonymous. 1974. *Lingiila daciai Markus (The Gospel of Mark in Gude)*. Jos, Nigeria: Scriptures Unlimited and Wycliffe Bible Translators.
- Bargery, G.P. 1934. *A Hausa-English Dictionary*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Burquest, Donald. 1972. *A Grammar of Angas*. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, UCLA.
- Carnochan, Jack. 1970. 'Categories of the verbal piece in Bachama'. *African Language Studies* 11:81-112.
- Donegan, Patricia J. 1978. *On the Natural Phonology of Vowels*. *Ohio State University Working Papers in Linguistics*, No. 23.
- Greenberg, Joseph H. 1963. *The Languages of Africa*. The Hague: Mouton and Co.
- Greenberg, Joseph H. 1977. 'Niger-Congo noun class markers: prefixes, suffixes, both or neither.' *Studies in African Linguistics*, Supplement 7: 97-104.
- Gundel, Jeanette. 1977. *The Role of Topic and Comment in Linguistic Theory*. Bloomington: Indiana University Linguistics Club.
- Hoffmann, Carl. 1963. *A Grammar of the Margi Language*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Hoffmann, Carl. 1971. 'Provisional check list of Chadic languages.' *The Chadic Newsletter*, special issue (Marburg).
- Hoffmann, Carl. 1972. 'Some aspects of palatalization in Mapuda'. *University of Ibadan* (mimeo.).

- Hoskison, James T. 1974. 'Prosodies and verb stems in Gude'. *Linguistics* 141: 17-26.
- Hoskison, James T. 1975a. 'Focus and topic in Gude'. *Proceedings of the Sixth Conference on African Linguistics. OSU Working Papers in Linguistics* 20:227-233.
- Hoskison, James T. 1975b. *Notes on the Phonology of Gude*. Unpublished M.A. thesis, OSU.
- Hoskison, James T. (forthcoming) 'Ideophones in Gude'. *Proceedings of the 12th West African Languages Congress (1976)*. Ife, Nigeria: University of Ife.
- Keenan, Edward, and Robert D. Hull. 1973. 'The logical syntax of direct and indirect questions'. *You Take the High Node and I'll Take the Low Node*. Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society.
- Kirk-Greene, A.H.M. 1958. *Adamawa Past and Present*. London: International African Institute.
- Kraft, Charles H. 1981. *Chadic Wordlists*, (3 volumes). Berlin: D. Reimer.
- Kuno, S. 1972. 'Functional sentence perspective: a case study from Japanese and English'. *Linguistic Inquiry* 3:269-320.
- Meek, C.K. 1931. *Tribal Studies in Northern Nigeria*, Vol. 1:293-300. London: Kegan Paul; Trench, Trubner and Co., Ltd.
- Newman, Paul. 1970. *A Grammar of Tera*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Newman, Paul. 1972. 'Study Kanakuru, understand Hausa'. *Harsunan Nijeriya* 2:1-13.
- Newman, Paul. 1974. *The Kanakuru Language*. Leeds: Institute of Modern English Studies.
- Newman, Paul, and Roxana Ma. 1966. 'Comparative Chadic: phonology and lexicon'. *Journal of African Languages* 5:218-251.
- Newman, Paul, and Roxana Ma Newman. 1977. *Modern Hausa-English Dictionary*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Rosser, Heather. 1979. 'Pregnancy and childbirth among the Gude'. *Midwives Chronicle* 92:1094:76-78.
- Schachter, Paul. 1973. 'Focus and relativization'. *Language* 49:19-46.
- Schuh, Russell G. 1972. *Aspects of Ngizim Syntax*. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, UCLA.
- Schuh, Russell G. 1981. *A Dictionary of Ngizim*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

- Shala, [Dawuda] David S. 1972. *Ma shi uusha ðii Gude. (Gude Folktales)*. Zaria, Nigeria: Institute of Linguistics. (mimeo.)
- Shala, David S. (ed.). 1973. *Dareewalə nga Ma shi uusha ðii (Gude Folktales)*. Mubi, Nigeria: Gude Literature Committee. (mimeo.)
- Stampe, David. 1979. *A Dissertation on Natural Phonology*. Bloomington: Indiana University Linguistics Club.
- Stennes, Leslie H. 1967. *A Reference Grammar of Adamawa Fulani*. East Lansing: Michigan State University.
- Strümpell, Friedrich. 1922. 'Wörterverzeichnis der Heidensprachen des Mandara-Gebirges (Adamawa)'. *Zeitschrift für eigenborene Sprachen* 13:47-74, 109-149.
- Taylor, F.W. 1932. *A Fulani-English Dictionary*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Trubetzkoy, N.S. 1969. *Principles of Phonology*. Tr. C. Baltaxe. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Westermann, Dietrich, and M.A. Bryan. 1952. *The Languages of West Africa. Handbook of African Languages, Part II*. London: International African Institute.